

中等职业教育课程改革规划新教材配套教学用书
普通高校对口招收中等职业学校毕业生考试备考丛书

对口升学考试 专题强化训练与解析·英语

对口升学考试备考丛书编写委员会 编

電子工業出版社

Publishing House of Electronics Industry

北京·BEIJING

内容简介

本书是为中职学生参加对口升学考试而编写的一本专题强化训练复习用书。本书以对口升学考纲要求为依据,以应考强化训练为目的。全书针对于对口升学考试中出现的题型和知识点,给出了相应的专题练习题,并对题目中出现的知识点进行了详细的解析,力求做到以点带面。全书以题量大、解析全面、针对性强的特点呈现给备考学生。

本书可以与《对口升学考试总复习精要》《单元同步测试卷》《对口升学考试模拟试卷》系列复习用书配合使用,是对此系列丛书内容的补充。针对每个知识点,本书设计了“考纲要求”、“考题回顾”、“强化训练”3个模块,较为全面地涵盖了对口升学考试涉及的知识点,是中职学生复习应考较为实用的参考材料。

为方便考生复习,本书还配有完备的相关知识点《备考知识》精讲,请有此需要的读者登录华信教育资源网(www.hxedu.com.cn)免费下载使用。

本丛书具备很强的指导性,适合中等职业学校学生使用,是普通高校招收中等职业学校毕业生考试复习必备指导用书。

未经许可,不得以任何方式复制或抄袭本书之部分或全部内容。

版权所有,侵权必究。

图书在版编目(CIP)数据

对口升学考试专题强化训练与解析·英语/对口升学考试备考丛书编写委员会编. —北京:电子工业出版社, 2015.3

(普通高校对口招收中等职业学校毕业生考试备考丛书)

ISBN 978-7-121-25518-2

I. ①对... II. ①对... III. ①英语课—中等专业学校—升学参考资料 IV. ①G634

中国版本图书馆CIP数据核字(2015)第027653号

策划编辑:关雅莉 罗美娜

责任编辑:郝黎明

印 刷:

装 订:

出版发行:电子工业出版社

北京市海淀区万寿路173信箱 邮编 100036

开 本:787×1 092 1/16 印张:17.5 字数:781.6千字 黑插:10

版 次:2015年3月第1版

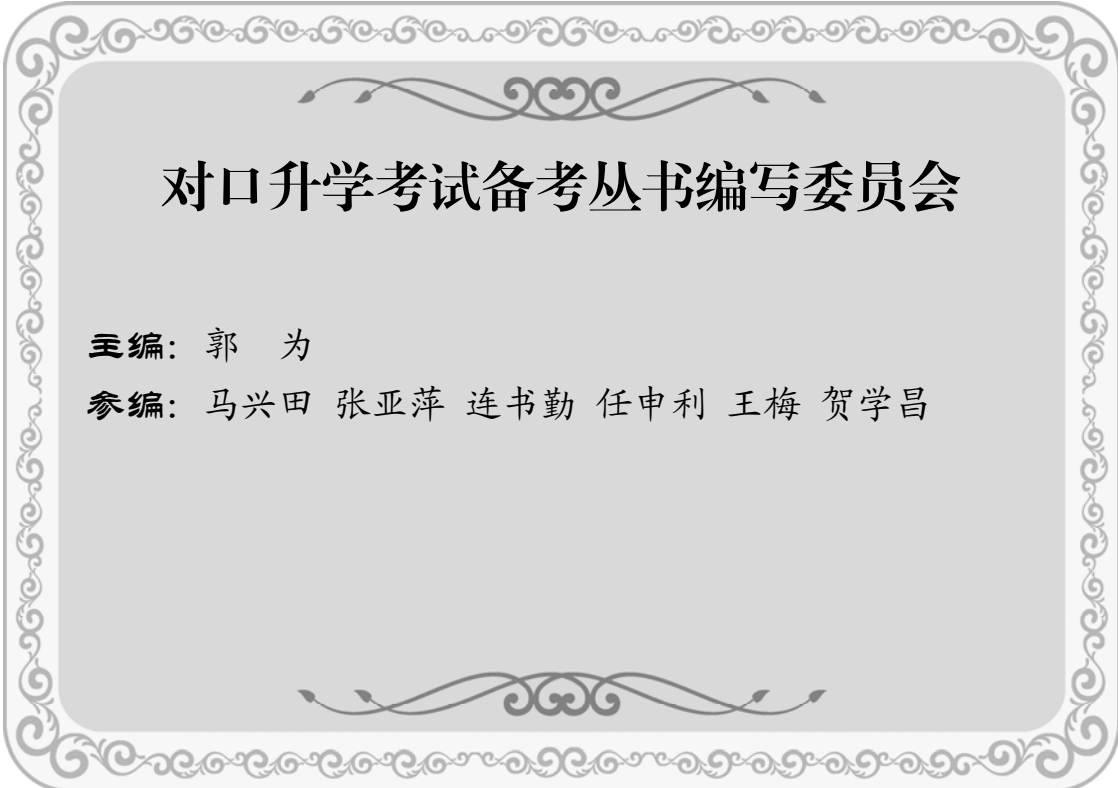
印 次:2015年3月第1次印刷

定 价:39.80元(附模拟试题)

凡所购买电子工业出版社图书有缺损问题,请向购买书店调换。若书店售缺,请与本社发行部联系,联系及邮购电话:(010)88254888。

质量投诉请发邮件至 zltts@phei.com.cn, 盗版侵权举报请发邮件至 dbqq@phei.com.cn。

服务热线:(010)88258888。



对口升学考试备考丛书编写委员会

主编：郭 为

参编：马兴田 张亚萍 连书勤 任申利 王梅 贺学昌

前 言



普通高校招收中等职业学校毕业生考试已经进行十余年，但是参加这类考试的考生所需的复习资料相对较少，且选择面较窄。为了帮助参加普通高校对口招收中等职业学校毕业生考试的广大考生全面、系统、快速、高效地复习备考，我们邀请了一批资深教研员，国家级重点职业学校的具有丰富对口高考复习教学工作的一线教师，参加过对口高考命题、改卷或新考纲制订的骨干教师及长期进行职业教育研究的科研人员，在学习、研究考纲和集体认真研讨的基础上，严格按照《普通高校对口招收中等职业学校毕业生考试纲要》要求，精心编写了**对口升学考试专题强化训练与解析系列教材**，包含语文、数学、英语3册，供参加普通高校招收中等职业学校毕业生考试的考生复习备考之用。

本丛书具有如下特点：

编委阵容强大：作者均系资深教研人员和国家级中职改革发展示范校建设学校及国家级重点中等职业学校的一线骨干教师，具有丰富的对口高考复习教学经验，并常年研究对口高考命题方向。

编写体系成熟：严格按照最新对口高考大纲进行编写，分析了近几年的对口高考试卷，并且根据新的考试动向进行对口高考试题预测。为提高本套丛书质量，特聘请资深专家严格把关。

编写内容齐全：内容涵盖了最新普通高校招收中等职业学校毕业生考试大纲中要求掌握的全部内容，且题目新颖，具有很强的导向性。

本书是为中职学生参加对口升学考试而编写的一本专题强化训练复习用书。本书以对口升学考纲要求为依据，以应考强化训练为目的。全书针对于对口升学考试中出现的题型和知识点，给出了相应的专题练习题，并对题目中出现的知识点进行了详细的解析，力求做到以点带面。全书以题量大、解析全面、针对性强的特点呈现给备考学生。

本书可以与《对口升学考试总复习精要》《单元同步测试卷》《对口升学考试模拟试卷》系列复习用书配合使用，是对此系列丛书内容的补充。针对每个知识点，本书设计了“考纲要求”、“考题回顾”、“强化训练”3个模块，较为全面地涵盖了对口升学考试涉及的知识点，是中职学生复习应考较为实用的参考材料。

为方便考生复习，本书还配有完备的相关知识点《备考知识》精讲，请有此需要的读者登录华信教育资源网（www.hxedu.com.cn）免费下载使用。具体内容如下。

第一部分 语音

第二部分 词汇

（一）单词拼写

（二）名词

（三）代词

（四）冠词

（五）介词

（六）连词

（七）数词

（八）形容词和副词

（九）动词

(十) 情态动词

(十一) 动词的时态

(十二) 被动语态

(十三) 非谓语动词

第三部分 句子与语法

(一) 感叹句

(二) 反义疑问句

(三) 句子的种类

(四) 句子成分

(五) 简单句的五种基本句型

(六) 名词性从句

(七) 定语从句

(八) 状语从句

(九) 主谓一致

(十) 倒装句

(十一) 虚拟语气

(十二) 强调句

第四部分 模拟试题

普通高校对口招收中等职业学校毕业生考试模拟试题 (五)

普通高校对口招收中等职业学校毕业生考试模拟试题 (六)

本书由郭为担任主编,参编的老师有马兴田、张亚萍、连书勤、任申利、王梅、贺学昌。

由于编写时间短促、水平有限,在编写过程中,难免有不妥之处,恳请同行专家不吝指正,并欢迎工作在教育第一线的广大教师和参加复习迎考的学生在使用本套丛书过程中,提出宝贵意见,并将此综合信息反馈到电子工业出版社(guanyl@phei.com.cn),以便再版时及时修正。

编 者

2015 年 2 月

目 录



第一单元 英语基础知识	1
第一部分 语音	1
第二部分 词汇	7
第三部分 句子与语法	90
第二单元 完形填空	148
第三单元 阅读理解	190
第四单元 短文改错	222
第五单元 书面表达部分	249

第一单元 英语基础知识

第一部分 语 音



考 纲 要 求

1. 正确运用国际音标识读单词
2. 掌握元音字母在重读开音节和闭音节中的读音
3. 掌握常见元音字母组合的发音
4. 掌握常见元音字母组合和辅音字母组合的读音
5. 掌握附加词尾（规则动词过去式，名词复数形式）的读音
6. 掌握句子重音、句子的基本语调



考 题 回 顾

从 A、B、C、D 选项中找到其画线部分与所给单词的画线部分读音相同的选项。
(单招 2013 年)

- | | | | | |
|---------------------------|-----------------------------|-----------------------------|--------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <u>b</u> etter | A. <u>l</u> esson | B. <u>b</u> efore | C. <u>f</u> ine | D. <u>ch</u> icken |
| 2. <u>br</u> ush | A. <u>bu</u> ry | B. <u>bu</u> sy | C. <u>p</u> pil | D. <u>ru</u> bb <u>er</u> |
| 3. <u>cu</u> st <u>om</u> | A. <u>mea</u> s <u>ure</u> | B. <u>up</u> stair <u>s</u> | C. <u>re</u> spect | D. <u>s</u> ugar |
| 4. <u>fo</u> rget | A. <u>or</u> di <u>nary</u> | B. <u>ma</u> jo <u>r</u> | C. <u>ho</u> rs <u>e</u> | D. <u>re</u> po <u>rt</u> |
| 5. <u>head</u> ache | A. <u>ch</u> ur <u>ch</u> | B. <u>te</u> chnology | C. <u>ma</u> chine | D. <u>ch</u> arge |

解析:

- | | | | | | |
|--------------|-----------------|------------------|---------------|--------------|------|
| 1. ['betə] | A. ['lesn] | B. [br'fɔ:] | C. [faɪn] | D. ['tʃɪkɪn] | 故选 A |
| 2. [brʌʃ] | A. ['beri] | B. ['bizi] | C. ['pju:pl] | D. ['rʌbə] | 故选 D |
| 3. ['kʌstəm] | A. ['meɜ] | B. [ʌp'steəz] | C. ['rispekt] | D. ['ʃugə] | 故选 C |
| 4. [fə'get] | A. ['ɔ:di:nəri] | B. ['meɪdʒə] | C. [hɔ:s] | D. [ri'pɔ:t] | 故选 B |
| 5. ['hedeɪk] | A. [tʃə:tʃ] | B. [tek'nɒlədʒi] | C. [mə'ʃɪ:n] | D. [tʃɑ:dʒ] | 故选 B |

(单招 2012 年)

- | | | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|--------------------|---------------------|--------------------|
| 1. <u>ch</u> alk | A. <u>ca</u> lm | B. <u>w</u> alk | C. <u>ph</u> ysical | D. <u>ar</u> rival |
| 2. <u>breath</u> e | A. <u>healt</u> h | B. <u>clothe</u> s | C. <u>eigh</u> th | D. <u>mo</u> uth |

- | | | | | |
|------------|-----------|------------|-----------|-----------|
| 3. shout | A. famous | B. group | C. found | D. touch |
| 4. started | A. landed | B. grasped | C. forced | D. stayed |
| 5. cut | A. rude | B. ruler | C. cute | D. shut |

解析:

- | | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|------|
| 1. [tʃɔ:k] | A. [kɑ:m] | B. [wɔ:k] | C. ['fɪzɪkl] | D. [ə'reɪvl] | 故选 B |
| 2. [bri:ð] | A. [hleθ] | B. [kləuðz] | C. [etθ] | D. [mauθ] | 故选 B |
| 3. [ʃaut] | A. ['feɪməs] | B. [gru:p] | C. [faund] | D. [tʌtʃ] | 故选 C |
| 4. ['sta:tɪd] | A. ['lændɪd] | B. [gra:spt] | C. [fɔ:st] | D. [steɪd] | 故选 A |
| 5. [kʌt] | A. [ru:d] | B. ['ru:lə] | C. [kju:t] | D. [ʃʌt] | 故选 D |

(单招 2011 年)

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-----------|--------------|-----------|---------------|
| 1. moon | A. good | B. book | C. cool | D. look |
| 2. with | A. that | B. bath | C. think | D. truth |
| 3. bike | A. fish | B. direct | C. family | D. write |
| 4. touch | A. cough | B. couple | C. bought | D. shout |
| 5. question | A. nation | B. attention | C. action | D. suggestion |

解析:

- | | | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|------------------|------|
| 1. [mu:n] | A. [gud] | B. [buk] | C. [ku:l] | D. [luk] | 故选 C |
| 2. [wið] | A. [ðæt] | B. [[ba:θ] | C. [θɪŋk] | D. [truθ] | 故选 A |
| 3. [baɪk] | A. [fɪʃ] | B. [di'rekt] | C. ['fæmɪli] | D. [raɪt] | 故选 D |
| 4. [tʌtʃ] | A. [kɔ:f] | B. ['kʌpl] | C. [bɔ:t] | D. [ʃaut] | 故选 B |
| 5. ['kwɛstʃən] | A. ['neiʃn] | B. [ə'tenʃn] | C. ['ækʃn] | D. [sə'dʒɛstʃən] | 故选 D |

(单招 2010 年)

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|------------|----------------|
| 1. map | A. class | B. thank | C. game | D. again |
| 2. car | A. farmer | B. popular | C. regular | D. rectangular |
| 3. please | A. bread | B. head | C. thread | D. teacher |
| 4. birthday | A. although | B. there | C. thread | D. that |
| 5. conceal | A. receive | B. crocodile | C. cook | D. Carbon |

解析:

- | | | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|-----------------|---------------|-------------------|------|
| 1. [mæp] | A. [cla:s] | B. [θæŋk] | C. [geɪm] | D. [ə'geɪn] | 故选 B |
| 2. [ka:] | A. ['fa:mə] | B. ['pɒpjulə] | C. ['regjulə] | D. [rek'tæŋgjulə] | 故选 A |
| 3. [pli:z] | A. [bred] | B. [hed] | C. [θred] | D. ['ti:tʃə] | 故选 D |
| 4. ['bɜ:θdi] | A. [ɔ:l'dəu] | B. [ðeə] | C. [θred] | D. [ðæt] | 故选 C |
| 5. [kən'si:l] | A. [ri'si:v] | B. ['krɒkədail] | C. [kuk] | D. ['ka:bən] | 故选 A |

(单招 2009 年)

- | | | | | |
|--------------|------------|-----------|-----------|--------------|
| 1. honest | A. had | B. hour | C. happy | D. happen |
| 2. chemistry | A. church | B. chance | C. check | D. character |
| 3. sugar | A. general | B. gene | C. change | D. single |
| 4. music | A. put | B. autumn | C. rule | D. Tuesday |
| 5. appear | A. abroad | B. area | C. sand | D. age |

解析:

1. ['ɒnɪst] A. [hæd] B. [aʊə] C. ['hæpɪ] D. ['hæpən] 故选 B
2. ['kɛmɪstrɪ] A. [tʃə:tʃ] B. [tʃa:ns] C. [tʃɛk] D. ['kærəktə] 故选 D
3. ['fʊgə] A. ['dʒenərəl] B. [dʒɪ:] C. [tʃeɪndʒ] D. ['sɪŋɡl] 故选 D
4. ['mju:zɪk] A. [put] B. ['ɔ:təm] C. [ru:l] D. ['tju:zdi] 故选 D
5. [ə'piə] A. [ə'brɔ:d] B. ['eəriə] C. [sænd] D. [eidʒ] 故选 A

语言部分《备考知识》详见本书配套电子资料包(详见前言)。



强化训练

语音单选(从 A、B、C、D 选项中找出划线部分与所给单词的划线部分读音相同的选项)

1. bank A. travel B. strange C. table D. safety
2. area A. parent B. channel C. vacation D. final
3. palace A. state B. lack C. make D. ask
4. ancient A. anyone B. apartment C. answer D. basin
5. alive A. ananything B. ancient C. almost D. alone
6. serious A. zero B. gesture C. prepare D. athlete
7. little A. flight B. kind C. history D. mind
8. kick A. provide B. file C. bicycle D. resident
9. unite A. piano B. blind C. beatiful D. strict
10. done A. song B. wrong C. among D. along
11. tonight A. second B. worried C. tongue D. nothing
12. wonder A. both B. monitor C. wrong D. above
13. rush A. sugar B. dull C. push D. put
14. quarter A. regular B. hard C. warning D. large
15. hear A. earth B. clear C. early D. heart
16. surround A. sound B. enough C. cousin D. touch
17. short A. work B. word C. sport D. worst
18. honour A. hotel B. hour C. happy D. behind
19. juice A. club B. tobacco C. cancer D. comfortable
20. type A. day B. year C. duty D. July
21. future A. introduce B. supply C. result D. study
22. break A. tea B. lead C. great D. dead
23. shops A. films B. areas C. evenings D. books
24. service A. never B. prefer C. other D. sweater
25. war A. dark B. warm C. park D. large
26. plan A. also B. able C. around D. apple
27. room A. book B. foot C. food D. good

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|-----------------------|
| 28. rough | A. <u>ou</u> t | B. <u>cou</u> nt | C. <u>enough</u> | D. <u>abou</u> t |
| 29. <u>addi</u> tion | A. <u>add</u> | B. <u>dad</u> | C. <u>blan</u> ket | D. <u>add</u> ress |
| 30. <u>sno</u> w | A. <u>cow</u> | B. <u>now</u> | C. <u>tomor</u> row | D. <u>flow</u> er |
| 31. <u>kn</u> ow | A. <u>ban</u> k | B. <u>bric</u> k | C. <u>loo</u> k | D. <u>kn</u> ife |
| 32. <u>clothe</u> s | A. <u>bath</u> room | B. <u>thi</u> ngs | C. <u>thre</u> e | D. <u>the</u> n |
| 33. <u>physi</u> c | A. <u>bus</u> y | B. <u>st</u> one | C. <u>lo</u> se | D. <u>hou</u> ses |
| 34. <u>do</u> ctor | A. <u>dro</u> p | B. <u>open</u> ing | C. <u>oc</u> cure | D. <u>co</u> ver |
| 35. <u>exc</u> iting | A. <u>ex</u> ist | B. <u>ex</u> cept | C. <u>ex</u> act | D. <u>ex</u> cellent |
| 36. <u>accou</u> nt | A. <u>boug</u> ht | B. <u>cloud</u> y | C. <u>thoug</u> ht | D. <u>enough</u> |
| 37. <u>per</u> mit | A. <u>mild</u> | B. <u>crim</u> e | C. <u>wine</u> | D. <u>partic</u> ular |
| 38. <u>curr</u> ent | A. <u>quiet</u> ly | B. <u>plan</u> et | C. <u>reg</u> ard | D. <u>rele</u> ase |
| 39. <u>chil</u> d | A. <u>stoma</u> ch | B. <u>mach</u> ine | C. <u>chick</u> en | D. <u>Ch</u> ristmas |
| 40. <u>tusk</u> | A. <u>juic</u> e | B. <u>trun</u> k | C. <u>supp</u> ort | D. <u>pull</u> |
| 41. <u>point</u> ed | A. <u>moved</u> | B. <u>fill</u> ed | C. <u>died</u> | D. <u>count</u> ed |
| 42. <u>tear</u> | A. <u>year</u> | B. <u>lear</u> n | C. <u>earn</u> | D. <u>heart</u> |
| 43. <u>pret</u> ty | A. <u>melt</u> | B. <u>lect</u> ure | C. <u>remo</u> te | D. <u>geni</u> us |
| 44. <u>real</u> ize | A. <u>heal</u> th | B. <u>feat</u> ure | C. <u>weath</u> er | D. <u>idea</u> |
| 45. <u>trou</u> ble | A. <u>you</u> ng | B. <u>althoug</u> h | C. <u>found</u> | D. <u>accou</u> nt |
| 46. <u>bloo</u> d | A. <u>foot</u> ball | B. <u>good</u> | C. <u>flood</u> | D. <u>loose</u> |
| 47. <u>thirteent</u> h | A. <u>farth</u> er | B. <u>thoug</u> h | C. <u>think</u> | D. <u>their</u> |
| 48. <u>wid</u> ely | A. <u>inv</u> ite | B. <u>chick</u> en | C. <u>abili</u> ty | D. <u>direct</u> |
| 49. <u>wall</u> et | A. <u>wand</u> er | B. <u>water</u> | C. <u>bath</u> | D. <u>photogr</u> aph |
| 50. <u>vehic</u> le | A. <u>women</u> | B. <u>rece</u> ive | C. <u>secret</u> | D. <u>select</u> |
| 51. <u>poli</u> ce | A. <u>mach</u> ine | B. <u>thick</u> | C. <u>mistake</u> | D. <u>im</u> agine |
| 52. <u>salt</u> | A. <u>chalk</u> | B. <u>calm</u> | C. <u>almost</u> | D. <u>half</u> |
| 53. <u>rece</u> ive | A. <u>ceiling</u> | B. <u>neither</u> | C. <u>eight</u> | D. <u>either</u> |
| 54. <u>pers</u> on | A. <u>prefer</u> | B. <u>center</u> | C. <u>offer</u> | D. <u>summer</u> |
| 55. <u>report</u> er | A. <u>worm</u> | B. <u>forget</u> | C. <u>airp</u> ort | D. <u>world</u> |
| 56. <u>stoma</u> ch | A. <u>reach</u> | B. <u>chem</u> istry | C. <u>change</u> | D. <u>cheap</u> |
| 57. <u>sure</u> | A. <u>ensure</u> | B. <u>pleas</u> ure | C. <u>meas</u> ure | D. <u>treas</u> ure |
| 58. <u>suggest</u> ion | A. <u>quest</u> ion | B. <u>popul</u> ation | C. <u>oper</u> ation | D. <u>stat</u> ion |
| 59. <u>decis</u> ion | A. <u>discuss</u> ion | B. <u>express</u> ion | C. <u>televis</u> ion | D. <u>possess</u> ion |
| 60. <u>desig</u> n | A. <u>drink</u> | B. <u>bank</u> | C. <u>Eng</u> lish | D. <u>ten</u> |

解析:

1. 【答案】A。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项的画线部分都读[ei], 故选 A。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】: 本题主要考查元音字母 a 在 r 前, 而且后面有其他元音字母时的读音。通常在
这种情况下, a 常读[ə], 故选 A。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 B 选项单词的画线部分都读[æ], 故选 B。
4. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 D 选项单词的画线部分都读[ei], 故选 D。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 D 选项单词的画线部分都读[ə], 故选 D。
6. 【答案】A。【解析】: 本题主要考查, 元音字母 e 在 r 前, 而且后面有其他元音字母时的读音, 此时,

e 常读[iə], 故选 A。

7. 【答案】C。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 C 选项单词的画线部分都读[i], 其他三个选项中的字母 i 都读[ai], 特别是 ind 字母组合时, i 常读[ai], 故选 C。

8. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 D 选项单词的画线部分都读[i], 其他三个选项中的字母 i 都读[ai], 故选 D。

9. 【答案】B。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 B 选项单词的画线部分都读[ai], 其他三个选项中的字母 i 都读[i], 故选 B。

10. 【答案】C。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 C 选项单词的画线部分都读[ʌ], 其他三个选项中的字母 o 都读[ɔ], 故选 C。

11. 【答案】A。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[ə], 其他三个选项中的字母 o 都读[ʌ], 故选 A。

12. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 D 选项单词的画线部分都读[ʌ], 而 A 选项单词中 o 读[əu], B C 选项中字母 o 都读[ɔ], 故选 D。

13. 【答案】B。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 B 选项单词的画线部分都读[ʌ], 其他三个字母 o 都读[u], 故选 B。

14. 【答案】C。【解析】: 本题考查字母组合 ar 在 w, qu 后读[ɜ:], 故选 C。

15. 【答案】B。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 B 选项单词的画线部分都读[iə], 而 A, C 选项中字母组合都读[ɜ:], 注意 D 选项中 ear 读[a:], 故选 B。

16. 【答案】A。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[au], 其他三个选项中都读[ʌ], 故选 A。

17. 【答案】C。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 C 选项单词的画线部分都读[ɜ:], or 组合一般在 w 后读[ɜ:], 所以其他三个选项中都读[ɜ:], 故选 C。

18. 【答案】B。【解析】: 本题主要考查字母 h 不发音的情况, 给出单词 h 不发音, 故选 B。

19. 【答案】C。【解析】: 本题主要考查字母 c 的读音, 给出单词和 C 选项中字母 c 读[s], 而 A、B、D 选项中字母 c 读[k], 故选 C。

20. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 D 选项单词的画线部分都读[ai], y 在 A 和 C 选项中读[i], 在 B 选项中读[j], 故选 D。

21. 【答案】A。【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[ju:], 而 u 在其他选项中都读[ʌ], 故选 A。

22. 【答案】C。【解析】: 本题主要考查 ea 的发音, ea 在单词中发[ei]时并不常见, 主要是 break, great 和 steak 这三个单词, 故选 C。

23. 【答案】D。【解析】: 本题考查的是名词 + s 变复数后单词的读音, 根据“清对清、浊、元对浊”, 即 s 在清辅音后读清辅音[s], 在浊辅音或元音后读浊辅音[z]的读音规则, 故选 D。

24. 【答案】B。【解析】: 本题主要考查字母组合 er 的读音, er 在重读音节中读[ɜ:], 在非重读音节中读[ə], 故选 B。

25. 【答案】D。【解析】: 这道题和前面的 14 小题考查相同的知识点。故选 B。

26. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据读音, D 选项和给出单词画线部分读音相同, 都读[æ]。故选 D。

27. 【答案】C。【解析】: 本题考查字母组合 oo 的读音。一般情况下, oo 读[u:], 但在 ood, ook 结构中读[u]。特别注意 food [u:], foot [u]这两个特殊词的发音, 故选 C。

28. 【答案】C。【解析】: 本题主要考查字母组合 ou 的读音, 在单词中 ou 组合常读[au]或[ʌ], 给出单词和 C 选项的画线部分 ou 都读[ʌ], 在其他三个选项中读[au], 故选 C。

29. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据读音, A、B、C 选项画线部分读音都为[æ], 只有 D 读[ə], 故选 D。

30. 【答案】C。【解析】: 本题主要考查字母组合 ow 的发音。ow 在重读音节中读[au], 在重读或非重读音节中读[əu]。根据读音, 给出的单词和 C 选项的画线部分都读[au], 在其他选项中都读[əu], 故选 C。

31. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题主要考查字母 k 的不发音, 故选 D.
32. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题主要考查字母组合 th 的读音. 根据读音, 给出单词和 D 选项的画线部分都读[ð], 而在其他选项中都读[θ], 故选 D.
33. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 B 选项单词的画线部分都读[s], 在其他三个选项中画线部分都读[z], 特别注意 houses ['haʊzɪz]在变为复数读音的变化, 故选 B.
34. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[ɔ], 故选 A.
35. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题主要考查字母组合 ex 的发音. ex 在 exciting 中读[ik], 在 exist 中读[ɪgz], 在 except 中读[ik], 在 exact 中读[ɪgz], 在 excellent 中读[ek], 故选 B.
36. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 B 选项单词的画线部分都读[au], 故选 B.
37. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 D 选项单词的画线部分都读[i], 在其他三个选项中都读[ai], 故选 D.
38. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[ə], 在其他三个选项中都读[i], 故选 A.
39. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本题主要考查 ch 的读音, ch 在一般情况下读[tʃ]或[k], 但也有读[ʃ], 如 machine、Chicago, 根据读音, 给出单词和 C 选项的画线部分都读[tʃ], 故选 C.
40. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 B 选项单词的画线部分都读[ʌ], 故选 B.
41. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题主要考查词尾 ed 的读音. 在清辅音后读[t], 在浊辅音和元音后读[d], 在[t], [d] 后读[id], 故选 D.
42. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词都读[iə], B、C 选项的画线部分读音为[ə], D 选项的画线部分为[a:]. 故选 A.
43. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 D 选项单词画线部分都读[i:], 故选 D.
44. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 D 选项单词画线部分都读[iə], 故选 D.
45. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词画线部分都读[ʌ], 故选 A.
46. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 在 lood 中 oo 读[ʌ], 故选 C.
47. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 C 选项单词的画线部分都读[θ], 故选 C.
48. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[ai], 故选 A.
49. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[ɔ], 注意 water 中 a 的读音为长音[ɔ:]. 故选 A.
50. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 C 选项单词的画线部分都读[i:], 故选 C.
51. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[i:], 故选 A.
52. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本题考查字母组合 al 在单词中的发音. al 在词中一般读[ɔ:], 但在 salt 中读[ɔ:l], 在 calm, half 中读[a:], 在词首重读时读[ɔ:l], 故选 C.
53. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[i:], 故选 A.
54. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 本题主要考查字母组合 er 的读音, er 在重读音节中读[ɜ:], 在非重读音节中读[ə], 故选 A.
55. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本题主要考查字母组合 or 的读音, or 在重读音节中读[ɔ:], 在非重读音节中读[ə], 在 w 后读[ɔ:], 故选 C.
56. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题主要考查 ch 的读音, ch 在一般情况下读[tʃ]或[k]. 给出单词和 B 选项单词的画线部分都读[k], 故选 B.
57. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据单词的读音, 给出单词和 A 选项单词的画线部分都读[jə], 在其他三个选项中都读[ʒə], 故选 A.
58. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 本题考查 tion 的读音. tion 在一般情况下读[tʃən], 在字母 s 后读[tʃə], 故选 A.
59. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本题考查 sion 的读音. sion 在元音字母后读[tʃən], 在辅音字母 s 后读[ʒən], 故选 C.
60. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考查字母 n 的读音. n 在一般情况下读[n], 在[k], [g]前读[ŋ], 故选 D.

第二部分 词 汇

(一) 单词拼写



该题包括 10 个小题，每小题 0.5 分，满分 5 分。要求根据句子及汉语注释，在句子右边的横线上写出空缺处各单词的正确形式。该题目主要考查考生正确拼写单词的能力。



1. 如需填名词，要注意单复数形式。

【例 1】(单招 2009 年) He made some _____ (错误) in pronunciation in his composition.

答案: mistakes

【例 2】Television is one of the most wonderful _____ (发明) of the 20th century.

答案: inventions

2. 如需填形容词或副词，要注意形容词和副词的等级。

【例 3】(单招 2009 年) Perhaps you are the _____ (幸运的) one of those who have been there.

答案: luckiest

【例 4】The more often you speak, the _____ (容易的) it will become for you to express yourself in English.

答案: easier

3. 如需填动词，要注意动词的时态、语态以及第三人称单数形式。

【例 5】(单招 2009 年) He was _____ (批评) for what he did in class. (被动语态)

答案: criticized

【例 6】(单招 2008 年) There are 50 students in the class, _____ (包括) 8 from the North.
(分词作状语) 答案: including

【例 7】(单招 2007 年) I _____ (认出) Mike the moment I saw him. (过去时)

答案: recognized

4. 注意所填词的首字母是否需要大写。

【例 8】We all celebrate _____ (国家的) Day on October 1st.

答案: National

【例 9】_____ (海岸) is the area where the land meets with the sea.

答案: Coast



考 题 回 顾

(单招 2010 年)

1. Please take that _____ (报纸) to your sister, she wants to get some information about the fashion.
2. Have you been to the nearest zoo? How many kinds of _____ (动物) are there?
3. There is a _____ (美丽的) park in the city. People enjoy relaxing there.
4. They _____ (分享) their experience of success with one another in the meeting which was held yesterday.
5. If he doesn't have enough money to buy the book, I will _____ (借给) him some.
6. I usually go to the school _____ (图书馆) to get some useful books to read.
7. We haven't seen each other _____ (最近) on campus.
8. Perhaps you are the _____ (幸运的) one of those who have been there.
9. You shouldn't _____ (抽烟) in public.
10. Why do British people always talk about the _____ (天气)?

参考答案:

- | | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|--------------|----------|-------------|
| 1. newspaper | 2. animals | 3. beautiful | 4. share | 5. lend |
| 6. library | 7. recently | 8. luckiest | 9. smoke | 10. weather |

(单招 2009 年)

1. Language is closely _____ (联系) to culture.
2. We have looked at various TV sets, but decided to buy this one for its _____ (质量).
3. He made some _____ (错误) in pronunciation in his composition.
4. In the city we can enjoy _____ (方便的) shopping and traveling.
5. He likes to writes his comments on the _____ (空白的) pages of his books.
6. She isn't _____ (可能) to attend the meeting.
7. Man and animals can live _____ (和平地).
8. He was _____ (批评) for what he did in class.
9. You are too tired, so you should stop to _____ (放松) yourself.
10. The students all went _____ (直接) home.

参考答案:

- | | | | | |
|------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. related | 2. quality | 3. mistakes | 4. convenient | 5. blank |
| 6. likely | 7. peacefully | 8. criticized | 9. relax | 10. straight |

(单招 2008 年)

1. To my _____ (惊奇), the little girl knows so many things.
2. It is sometimes hard to _____ (翻译) a very simple sentence from Chinese into English.
3. He has formed the habit of drinking and smoking _____ (逐渐).
4. There are 50 students in the class, _____ (包括) 8 from the North.
5. In modern societies people prefer _____ (健康的) diet.

6. The water that moves on the ____ (表面) of the earth forms rivers.
7. Francis Bacon once said that knowledge was ____ (力量) .
8. There are ____ (各种各样的) books in his study.
9. This bike does not look smart. ____ (此外) , it's too expensive.
10. Are you ____ (满意) with your working conditions?

参考答案:

- | | | | | |
|-------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. surprise | 2. translate | 3. gradually | 4. including | 5. healthful |
| 6. surface | 7. power | 8. various | 9. Moreover | 10. satisfied |

(单招 2007 年)

1. Don't ____ (浪费) your money on silly things.
2. The wind turned my ____ (伞) inside out.
3. I ____ (认出) Mike the moment I saw him.
4. Do you know the ____ (平均) monthly rainfall in this area?
5. Sleep is ____ (必要) to health.
6. This bus can carry 60 ____ (乘客) .
7. In 1949, Chairman Mao ____ (宣布) the founding of the People's Republic of China.
8. She looks familiar to me, but I don't ____ (记住) her name.
9. What is the best-known chain of fast-food ____ (餐馆) in the world?
10. They lived in London until quite ____ (最近) .

参考答案:

- | | | | |
|--------------------------------------|----------------|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. waste | 2. umbrella | 3. recognized/recognised | 4. average/mean |
| 5. necessary/essential/indispensable | 6. passengers | 7. declared/announced | |
| 8. remember | 9. restaurants | 10. recently/lately | |



1. Failure is the mother of ____ (成功) .
2. ____ (知识) is power.
3. You'd better put on your ____ (雨衣) , It's raining outside.
4. The wetter ____ (气候) in the south would be good for her health.
5. Pay ____ (注意) to what the teacher is saying.
6. She ate little in order to lose ____ (体重) .
7. My father has to work hard to ____ (养活) a family of four.
8. I ____ (租用) a room from her last month.
9. We go swimming in the nearest ____ (体育馆) every Sunday.
10. He will have an ____ (面试) next Tuesday for a job on the New York Times.
11. I don't like my job because I'd like to do something ____ (有创造力的)
12. Do you feel ____ (舒服的) when the plane is taking off?
13. People who are on a ____ (节食) mustn't have chocolate.

14. The doctor _____ (建议) me to take more exercise.
15. I've eaten too many sweets these days and now I have a _____ (牙疼).
16. Sorry, but I've no _____ (现金) on me. Can I pay by check?
17. I sometimes _____ (下载) music from the Internet.
18. I think "www.crazyenglish.com" is a good _____ (网站) to learn English.
19. We should take good care of those _____ (顾客), or we will lose them.
20. I won't buy it at such high _____ (价格).
21. I _____ (介绍) my best friend to my parents yesterday.
22. Columbus _____ (发现) America in 1492.
23. When was the mobile phone _____ (发明)?
24. All his efforts were _____ (浪费), and had no result.
25. The Spring Festival is the most important _____ (节日) in China.
26. She bought apples in the end because she _____ (喜欢) apples to bananas.
27. John is busy now, for he is _____ (准备) for the final examination.
28. He _____ (存入) lots of money in the bank yesterday.
29. I want to _____ (提取) 5000 RMB from an ATM.
30. Students can take any _____ (课程) they like.
31. She _____ (抱怨) that the exam was hard.
32. Anyone can break down under high _____ (压力).
33. Can anything _____ (代替) a mother's love?
34. We'll _____ (组织) an speaking contest.
35. I want to _____ (提高) my English.
36. Reading and writing are different _____ (技能).
37. I am afraid the idea would never work in _____ (实践).
38. You should _____ (申请) immediately, in person or by letter.
39. She has a strong _____ (个性).
40. He is _____ (有经验的) in looking after children.
41. Don't miss this _____ (机会) because it may never come again.
42. The twins have _____ (相似的) taste in music.
43. That's the most serious _____ (事故) that I have ever seen.
44. This watch _____ (属于) to my grandfather.
45. A good designer should have _____ (国际的) knowledge about fashion.
46. There will be press conferences and lectures on fashion _____ (趋势).
47. You should study hard for your future _____ (事业).
48. The most important _____ (回报) for my work is enriching myself.
49. The nurse took care of the patients with _____ (耐心).
50. I'd like to _____ (预定) a single room.
51. The meeting reached a _____ (决定) that a subway would be built in Xi'an.
52. Football is my _____ (最喜欢的) sport.
53. The old man has a _____ (习惯) of exercising in the open air.

54. Please _____ (重复) what you said. I didn't hear clearly.
 55. These animals were returned to _____ (自然界).
 56. I'd like to write him a letter, but I don't know his _____ (地址).
 57. _____ (现代的) agriculture has many advantages than traditional agriculture.
 58. Greece is a _____ (欧洲的) country with a very long history.
 59. Football is a _____ (受欢迎的) game in many countries.
 60. Children are taught to _____ (尊重) their teachers in the kindergarten.

参考答案:

- | | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------------|---------------|-----------------|-------------------|
| 1. success | 2. Knowledge | 3. raincoat | 4. climate | 5. attention |
| 6. weight | 7. support | 8. rented | 9. gym | 10. interview |
| 11. creative | 12. comfortable | 13. diet | 14. advised | 15. toothache |
| 16. cash | 17. download | 18. website | 19. customers | 20. price |
| 21. introduced | 22. discovered | 23. invented | 24. wasted | 25. festival |
| 26. preferred | 27. preparing | 28. deposited | 29. draw | 30. courses |
| 31. complained | 32. pressure | 33. replace | 34. organize | 35. improve |
| 36. skills | 37. practice | 38. apply | 39. personality | 40. experienced |
| 41. opportunity/chance | 42. similar | 43. accident | 44. belongs | 45. international |
| 46. trends | 47. career | 48. rewards | 49. patience | 50. book/reserve |
| 51. decision | 52. favourite/favorite | 53. habit | 54. repeat | 55. nature |
| 56. address | 57. Modern | 58. European | 59. popular | 60. respect |

(二) 名 词



考 纲 要 求

名词的数、名词的可数与不可数、名词的所有格和专有名词。



考 点 指 向

名词辨析、可数名词的复数形式、名词作定语、名词的格及惯用搭配。



例 题 解 析

1. (2013年7小题) Sandy didn't tell her parents that she was going home because she wanted to give them a_____.

- A. gift B. call C. surprise D. note

解析: 根据题意“Sandy没有告诉她父母她要回家,因为她想给他们一个惊喜”,又根据抽象名词赋予了具体或特定含义时可与不定冠词连用,答案选C。

2. (2013 年 9 小题) You can get any further _____ about the World Expo on the Internet.

- A. map B. picture C. ticket D. information

解析: 根据题意“通过互联网你可以进一步得到关于世博会的信息”, 又因 information 为不可数名词中的抽象名词, 答案选 D。

3. Father went to his doctor for _____ his heart trouble.

- A. an advice B. some advice C. advices D. the advices

解析: advice 是不可数名词, 没有复数形式, 则不能用 an 修饰, 而应说 a piece of advice 或 some advice。答案选 B。

4. Shortly after the accident, two _____ police were sent to the spot to keep order.

- A. dozen of B. dozens C. dozen D. dozens of

解析: dozen 是可数名词, 其前有具体数字或与此相同的词语时且后面接的是复数名词时, 不加 s。答案选 C。

5. What I am worried about is how many _____ are there in your hospital.

- A. woman doctors B. women doctor
C. woman doctor D. women doctors

解析: 由 man 和 woman 构成的复合名词的复数形式应将前后名词变为复数形式。答案选 D。

6. This postcard is sent by _____.

- A. a friend of my father B. a friend of father's
C. my father friend D. my father friend's

解析: 名词的双重所有格由“限定词 + 名词 + of + 名词所有格/名词性物主代词”构成。答案选 B。

7. This is _____ to an end.

- A. means B. a mean C. a means D. some mean

解析: 本题明显考查 mean 作为名词的用法, 根据题意判断, 意为“这是达到目的的手段”。means 单复数同形, 即 a means 表示 a method。答案选 C。



知识要点

名词部分《知识要点》详见本书配套教学资料包(详见前言)。



强化训练

1. Where are _____?

- A. the teachers' rooms B. the teacher's rooms
C. the teacher's room D. the room of the teachers

2. Is your teacher _____?

- A. a man or woman B. man or woman
C. a man or a woman D. men or women

3. How wonderful! The _____ is made of _____.

- A. house;glass B. house;glasses C. houses;glass D. houses;glasses
4. June 1st is _____ Day.
A. Child B. the Children C. Children's D. Childrens'
5. I can't get on the bus, because there is _____ on it.
A. not any rooms B. no rooms C. little room D. few room
6. The vegetable market is _____ walk from our school.
A. a quarter of an hours' B. a quarter—of—an—hour's
C. a quarter of an hour's D. a quarter—of—an—hours
7. I want to make _____ with you.
A. a friend B. friend C. the friend D. friends
8. Have you got _____?
A. enough the breads B. enough bread
C. enough of the bread D. enough the bread
9. It's about _____ walk from my home to the park.
A. two hours B. two hour's C. two hours' D. two of hours
10. Mr Smith told me that he had got _____ to do at the moment.
A. enough thing B. enough C. much enough D. thing enough
11. I'm not feeling very well now. I've got _____.
A. headache B. a headache C. the headache D. cold
12. Those books in the classroom are _____.
A. Jim and Dick B. Jim's and Dick's
C. Jim's and Dick D. Jim and Dick's
13. Near our school there are two _____.
A. shoe shops B. shoes shops C. shoe's shops D. shoes' shops
14. Everyone is speaking _____ the man who has given his life to our country .
A. in the praise of B. in praise for
C. in praise of D. in the praise for
15. When Mr. Brown came yesterday, his family _____ having supper.
A. is B. are C. was D. were
16. —Where is your father?
—At _____.
A. Mr. Black's B. Mr. Black C. the Mr. Black's D. the Mr. Black
17. Here is _____ for you.
A. a good news B. a piece of news
C. so good news D. many good news
18. I will give you a _____. Have a good journey home.
A. two months time B. two-month time
C. two month's time D. two month time
19. _____ cold weather it was when we were in England!

- A. What B. What an C. How D. What a
20. Look! There _____ a bag of apples on the ground.
A. is B. are C. were D. was
21. We met some _____ in England.
A. Japaneses B. the Japanese C. Japanese D. Japan
22. Three years _____ since my brother joined the army.
A. has passed B. have passed C. passed D. passes
23. 4000 dollars _____ enough for me .
A. is B. are C. do D. does
24. There _____ two minutes left.
A. are B. is C. have D. has
25. I haven't got any _____ with me.
A. change B. changes C. pay D. pays
26. There isn't _____ in the glass.
A. a lot of waters B. much water
C. much waters D. many water
27. She had _____ for breakfast.
A. three piece of bread B. three pieces of bread
C. three piece of breads D. three pieces of breads
28. This is _____ ball, you should return it to him at once.
A. the boys B. the boy C. the boys' D. the boy's
29. There was _____ in the room.
A. a box banana B. a box of bananas
C. some boxes of bananas D. a box bananas
30. I have _____.
A. three box of pen B. three boxes pens
C. three boxes of pens D. three box pens
31. Please bring us a glass of milk and _____.
A. four piece of bread B. four piece of breads
C. four pieces of bread D. four pieces of breads
32. They got much _____ from those new books.
A. ideas B. pictures C. information D. stories
33. Pass me _____, will you ?
A. two papers B. two piece paper
C. two pieces of paper D. two pieces of papers
34. The doctor had saved many _____ of the SARS patients before he lost his own _____.
A. left; life B. lives; life C. lifes; life D. life; lives
35. There are _____ in the garden.
A. a kind of flower B. all kinds of flowers

- 15

52. The e-mail is sent by _____.
 A. a friend of my father B. a friend of my father's
 C. my father friend D. my father friend's
53. Miss Lee is in the next room. I can hear her _____.
 A. sound B. voice C. noise D. mouth
54. There are some new books in the school library. They are _____ books.
 A. child's B. child's C. children's D. children
55. Three _____ visited our school yesterday.
 A. Englishman B. Englishmen C. Englishmans D. Englishmens
56. I went to my _____ yesterday and had a good time there.
 A. aunts' B. aunts C. aunt's D. aunt
57. He had _____ for breakfast.
 A. two piece of bread B. two pieces of bread
 C. two piece of breads D. two pieces of breads
58. There are five _____ in our company.
 A. woman driver B. women driver
 C. woman drivers D. women drivers
59. An ant has two _____ in its body.
 A. stomachs B. stomachs C. stomach D. stomachs
60. What big _____ the tiger has!
 A. teeth B. tooth C. tooth D. toothes
61. The hospital is a bit far from here. It's about forty _____ walk.
 A. minutes's B. minute's C. minutes D. minutes'
62. Yesterday I saw _____ uncle at _____.
 A. Charles'; the James' B. Charles; James'
 C. Charles's; the James D. Charles'; the James's
63. The _____ of the building are covered with lost of _____.
 A. roofs; leaves B. rooves; leafs C. roof; leaf D. roofs; leafs
64. I'm sure Wendy will be able to find the post office. She has a good _____ of direction.
 A. idea B. feeling C. experience D. sense
65. The _____ of his wife was a great blow to him.
 A. lose B. lost C. loss D. losses
66. Our school has a very good headmaster who is willing to listen to others' _____.
 A. suggestions B. advices C. informations D. knowledges
67. The man by the window is _____.
 A. Tom and Mary teacher B. Tom's and Mary's teacher
 C. Tom and Mary's teacher D. Tom's and Mary teacher
68. We need to clear away these books to make _____ for our new students.
 A. area B. place C. space D. room

69. _____ were sitting at the table.
A. Turner B. The Turners' C. Turners D. The Turners
70. We had _____ at the party last night.
A. a fun B. great funs C. a lot of fun D. lots of funs
71. He was paid last week, but he can't remember the exact _____ of the money.
A. number B. amount C. quality D. percent
72. They say that the meeting will be _____.
A. of very important B. great importance
C. of great importance D. great important
73. He left _____ with my Secretary that he would call again in the afternoon. He said he would keep _____.
A. words; his words B. word; his word
C. word; word D. the word; his words
74. We have worked out the plan and now we must put it into _____.
A. fact B. reality C. practice D. deed
75. Julie went to the _____ to buy a pair of shoes.
A. shoes store B. shoe's store C. shoe store D. shoes' store

答案:

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|--------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1~5 ACACC | 6~10 CDBCC | 11~15 BBACD | 16~20 ABBA | 21~25 CAAAA |
| 26~30 BBDBC | 31~35 CCCBB | 36~40 CBDDDB | 41~45 ABCCC | 46~50 ABBCB |
| 51~55 BBBCB | 56~60 CBDBA | 61~65 DAADC | 66~70 ACDDC | 71~75 BCBCC |

(三) 代词



考纲要求

掌握人称代词、物主代词、指示代词、反身代词、不定代词、疑问代词等。



考点指向

考点集中在人称代词、物主代词、不定代词、one、it 和 that 的区别及 it 的用法上。



例题解析

1. (2010 年第 17 小题)

—could you please tell me _____ in today's newspaper?

—sorry.

- A. something special; special something. B. special something; special nothing
C. special something; anything special D. something special; nothing special

解析: 形容词修饰 something, anything, nothing 等复合不定代词时需要后置。答案选 D。

2. (2011 年第 12 小题) I found _____ difficult to work out the problem.

- A. this B. / C. that D. it

解析: 此处考查 it 作形式宾语的用法。答案选 D。

3. (2013 年第 7 小题)

—Look, that's Mike, Tom's brother.

—Yes, let's go and say hello to _____.

- A. him B. he C. her D. hers

解析: To 为介词, 后跟人称代词宾格形式, 而此处指的是 Tom's brother. 答案选 A。

4. (2013 年第 10 小题)

—Have you finished your report yet?

—No, I'll finish it in _____ ten minutes.

- A. another B. other C. more D. less

解析: another 表示“另外的”、“其他的”时, 后接“数词 + 名词”, 答案选 A。也可为 ten more minutes。

5. (2013 年第 19 小题) Look! There is _____ in today's newspaper.

- A. new anything B. something new
C. anything new D. new something

解析: 形容词修饰 something, anything, nothing 等复合不定代词时需要后置。且肯定句中应用 something。答案选 B。



知识要点

代词部分《知识要点》见本书配套参考资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. Jake, Please pass _____ the glasses. I want to read the newspapers.

- A. you B. me C. him D. her

2. The English passage is quite easy for you. There are _____ new words in it.

- A. a little B. little C. a few D. few

3. —Do you want _____ sandwich?

—Yes, I usually eat a lot when I'm hungry.

- A. other B. another C. others D. the other

4. The doctors and nurses are doing their best to fight against Ebola virus(埃博拉病毒). They think more of others than _____.

- A. they B. them C. themselves D. theirs
5. —Which do you prefer, a bottle of orange or a bottle of milk?
—_____, thanks. I'd like a cup of tea.
- A. Either B. Neither C. Both D. None
6. —Oh! I came in a hurry and forgot to bring food.
—Never mind. You can have _____.
A. us B. ours C. you D. yours
7. He didn't make _____ clear when and where the meeting would be held.
A. this B. that C. it D. these
8. —How are you going to improve _____ this term?
—Work harder than last term.
A. ourselves B. myself C. himself D. yourself
9. —Could you tell me _____ she is looking for?
—Her cousin, Susan.
A. that B. whose C. who D. which
10. —Is _____ here?
—No. Li Lei and Han Mei have asked for leave.
A. everybody B. somebody C. anybody D. nobody
11. Paul has _____ friends except me, and sometimes he feels lonely.
A. many B. some C. few D. more
12. If you want to book a round-trip ticket, you'll have to pay _____ \$ 30.
A. more B. other C. the other D. another
13. I don't think _____ good to eat so much meat.
A. this B. that C. it D. /
14. —who is singing in the next room?
—_____ must be Tim.
A. It B. She C. This D. He
15. Who taught _____ English last term? Was _____ Mr. Smith?
A. you; it B. you; he C. your; it D. your; that
16. Jim sold most of his things. He has hardly _____ left in the house.
A. anything B. everything C. nothing D. something
17. We decided to go for a field trip with some friends of _____.
A. us B. our C. ours D. ourselves
18. —Is there a bus to the zoo?
—I'm afraid there's _____ bus to the zoo.
A. no B. any C. some D. none
19. You forgot your dictionary? You may have _____.
A. me B. my C. mine D. myself
20. —There is still a copy of the book in the library. Will you go and borrow _____?

- No, I'd rather buy _____ in the bookstore.
A. it;one B. one; one C. one; it D. it; it
21. The teacher asked the boy many questions, but he only answered _____ of them.
A. some B. lots C. each D. few
22. —Which do you prefer, tea or coffee?
—_____ is OK. I don't care.
A. Either B. Neither C. Both D. all
23. —Who teaches _____ English?
—No one. I teach _____.
A. you; myself B. your; myself C. you; me D. your; mine
24. Two places of interest in Beijing are well-known to people from home and abroad. One is the Great Wall, _____ is the Summer Palace.
A. the other B. another C. other D. others
25. —Wow! You've got so many skirts.
—But _____ of them are in fashion now.
A. all B. both C. neither D. none
26. —Have you brought _____ with you? We won't have time to come back.
—Don't worry. All the things we need are here, in this big bag.
A. something B. anything C. nothing D. everything
27. —Would you like to have _____ cake?
—No, thanks. I've had two. That's enough.
A. other B. others C. another D. the other
28. —Help _____ to some cakes, Jim.
—Thank you.
A. you B. your C. yourself D. yourselves
29. It's difficult for me to decide which one to choose, because _____ of them are good.
A. neither B. both C. either D. each
30. I don't want to read this book. There is _____ in it.
A. something interesting
B. nothing interesting
C. interesting something
D. interesting nothing
31. —When shall we go to the museum, this afternoon or tomorrow morning?
—_____ is OK. I'm free these days.
A. Both B. All C. Either D. Neither
32. —Oh, you're reading a newspaper. Is there _____ in it?
—I don't know. I read it just now.
A. new something B. anything new
C. something new D. new anything

33. —Who is Mr Xu?
—He is _____ teacher and he teaches _____ PE.
A. our; us B. our; our C. ours; our D. ours; us
34. —Do you know everyone from Class One?
—Er..., I know some of _____.
A. they B. their C. theirs D. them
35. —Is this your sweater, Joy?
—No, It's not _____ sweater. _____ is yellow.
A. my; My B. my; Mine C. mine; Mine D. mine; My
36. Maybe the disaster can destroy our homes, but _____ can destroy the love in our people.
A. something B. everything C. anything D. nothing
37. How is your father? Please say hello to _____ for me.
A. she B. him C. it D. her
38. I'm expecting a pet dog for long, but mom has no time to buy _____ for me.
A. it B. one C. this D. that
39. —Jim, Tom is looking for his English book. Is this _____?
—No, that is _____. I don't know where his is.
A. his; mine B. he; mine C. him; mine D. his; my
40. —Where is my notebook?
—I don't know. It isn't here. Maybe _____ took it away by mistake.
A. everybody B. nobody C. anybody D. somebody
41. I don't understand the story though there are _____ new words in it.
A. few B. little C. a few D. a little
42. As the busiest woman in Norton, she made _____ her duty to look after all the other people's affairs in that town.
A. this B. that C. one D. it
43. —Tell me _____ about Brother Sharp, please.
—He was a beggar (乞丐). He became a blue-eyed boy (红人) on the Internet because of his cool appearance and dressing style.
A. nothing B. anything C. something D. everything
44. —Susan, go and join your sister cleaning the yard.
—Why _____? John is sitting there doing nothing.
A. him B. he C. I D. me
45. Some of the stamps belong to me, while the rest are _____.
A. him and her B. his and hers C. his and her D. him and hers
46. —Is your camera like Bill's and Ann's?
—No, but it's almost the same as _____.
A. her B. yours C. them D. their
47. Kate and her sister went on holiday with a cousin of _____.

- A. their B. theirs C. her D. hers

48. —Who called me this morning when I was out?

—A man calling _____ Robert.

- A. him B. himself C. his D. 不填

49. If you can't decide which of the two books to borrow, why don't you take _____? I won't read them this week.

- A. all B. any C. either D. both

50. I'm moving to the countryside because the air there is much fresher than _____ in the city.

- A. ones B. one C. that D. those

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】根据句意: 请把眼镜递给我, 我想读报纸, 应选 me.
2. 【答案】D. 【解析】根据句意: 这篇英语文章对你来说很简单, 里面几乎没有生词。few 修饰可数名词, 意为几乎没有。little, a little 修饰不可数名词; a few 修饰可数名词, 意为有一些。
3. 【答案】B. 【解析】根据句意: 你还再想要一支火腿肠吗? another 为另一个。
4. 【答案】C. 【解析】根据句意: 他们为别人考虑的比为他们自己考虑得多。
5. 【答案】B. 【解析】根据句意: “两者都不” 为 neither.
6. 【答案】B. 【解析】根据句意: 你可以吃我们的食物。应选 ours. 相当于 our food.
7. 【答案】C. 【解析】根据句意: it 做形式宾语, 代替真正的宾语从句 when and where the meeting would be held.
8. 【答案】D. 【解析】根据句意: 你打算这学期怎样提高你自己? 应选 yourself.
9. 【答案】C. 【解析】根据句意: 你能告诉我她正在找谁? 应选 who.
10. 【答案】A. 【解析】根据句意: 每一个人都到齐了吗? 应选 everybody.
11. 【答案】C. 【解析】根据句意: Paul 除了我几乎没有朋友。应选 few.
12. 【答案】D. 【解析】根据句意: 如果你要订一张往返票, 就要另付 30 美元。another 指的是另一个, 另外的; other 指的是其他的; the other 一般跟 one 连用构成 one...the other 指的是两个中的一个; more 指的是更多的。
13. 【答案】C. 【解析】it 做形式宾语代替不定式 to eat so much meat.
14. 【答案】A. 【解析】It 可指代不明身份的人或物。
15. 【答案】A. 【解析】根据句意: 上学期谁教你英语? 第一空应选人称代词的宾格 you, 第二空应选 it 指代不明身份的人或物。
16. 【答案】A. 【解析】根据句意, anything 用于疑问句、否定句、条件句中, 意为“任何事(物), 什么事(物)”, 根据所提供的情景“Jim sold most of his things.”可判断出他房子里几乎没有什么东西了。hardly 意为“几乎不”, 构成否定句; everything 意为“每件事物, 万事”; nothing 意为“(什么也)没有, 没有什么东西(什么事)”; something 意为“某物, 某事”。此处干扰项为 nothing, 因为句中有否定词 hardly, 故不能再否定词 nothing.
17. 【答案】C. 【解析】这个题目考查双重所有格。双重所有格的形式为“名词 + of + 名词的所有格/名词性的物主代词”, 答案选 C.
18. 【答案】A. 【解析】no 是具有形容词的性质, 只能作定语表示, 意思是“没有”, 修饰可数名词(单数或复数)或不可数名词。如: There is no time left. Please hurry up. 没有时间了, 请快点。They had no reading books to lend. 他们没有阅读用书可供借出。none 只能独立使用, 在句子中可作主语、宾语和表语, 意思是

“没有一个人(或事物)”,表示复数或单数。如: None of them is/are in the classroom. 他们当中没有一个在教室里。I have many books, but none is interesting. 我有很多书,但没有一本是有趣的。结合句意,答案选 A。

19. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 此处表示我们的词典,应用 mine (my dictionary)。

20. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 第一个空选 it, 指的是上文提到的 a copy of the book (一本书), Will you go and borrow it? 我们去(图书馆)借(那)一本书好吗; 而第二个意思是说(我宁可去书店买一本)。one 表示的意思是同类事物中的一个,也就是说“我要去买那种类型的书中的一本”。

21. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据句意,但是他只回答了其中的一些。应选 some。

22. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据句意,因为最后一句说他没有什麼偏爱,所以应该两者都可以,就是在茶和咖啡中可以任选一种。应选 either。

23. 【答案】A. 【解析】: teach 后应跟人称代词宾格作宾语,故第一空应选 you; 第二空意为“我教我自己”,故用反身代词 myself。

24. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 固定句型 one...the other, 意为“一个……另一个”。

25. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为: 但是没有一个裙子流行。应用 none 表示没有一个。

26. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查不定代词。something 用于肯定句; nothing 表示否定, anything 用于否定句和一般疑问句, 译为一些东西, 而本句中的意思是所有的一切东西, 因此答案为 D。

27. 【答案】C. 【解析】: another 表示: 再, 又, 另一个。

28. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 固定句型: help oneself to sth.

29. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据句意: 此处表示两者都很好。故用 both。而 neither 表示两者都不, either 表示两者中的任何一个, each 为每一个。

30. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据句意, 我不想读这本书, 书中没有什么有趣的东西。又因为形容词修饰不定代词要后置, 应选 B。

31. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 根据句意, both 用于复数, 后面是 is, 所以用 either。neither 表示否定, all 用于三者或三者以上。

32. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 此处为疑问句, 故应用 anything。排除选项 A 和 C。又因为形容词修饰不定代词要后置, 应选 B。

33. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据句意, ~~我们的~~老师”, 第一空应用形容词性的物主代词 our, 第二空为 us 做间接宾语。

34. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 他们中的一些, some of them。

35. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据句意, 第一空为“我的”, 用形容词性的物主代词 my, 第二空为“我的毛衣”, 故用名词性的物主代词 mine 表示 my sweater。

36. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据句意, 此题考查几个不定代词的含义。something 某事/某物; everything 每件事 anything 任何事; nothing 没有什么。题意: 灾难也许能破坏我们的家园, 但没有什么东西破坏人们之间的爱。故答案选 D。

37. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据句意, 此处应用 him 代替前面的 your father。

38. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 此处用 one 表示 a dog。one 表示同一类, it 指同一个。

39. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据句意, Tom 正在找他的英语书。这是他的吗? 不, 那是我的英语书。两个空都应该用名词性的物主代词。只有 A 选项符合。

40. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据句意, 也许某人误拿了。某人应用 somebody。

41. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 句意为: 故事中几乎没有生词。few 很少, 几乎没有, 表示否定含义, 修饰可数名词复数; a few 几个, 表达肯定含义, 修饰可数名词复数; little 很少, 几乎没有, 表达否定含义, 修饰

不可数名词; a little 一点, 表达肯定含义, 修饰不可数名词。此处用 few。

42. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考查 it 指代不定式做形式宾语的用法。一般在句子中用 it 指代句子、不定式或动词的 ing 结构; 而 that 或 this 常常指代具体的事。one 常用作泛指“一个”, 故应用 it。

43. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意, 请告诉我关于犀利哥的一些事情, 他是个乞丐, 他因很帅的外表和穿戴在网上成为名人, nothing 没什么; anything 用于否定句; something 某事; everything 每件事, 故答案选 C。

44. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 感叹疑问句或省略句中用人称代词的宾格。答案选 D。

45. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 在句中作表语, 指“他的邮票和她的邮票”用 his and hers (his stamps and her stamps)。答案选 B。

46. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 与 it(my camera)相应的是 your camera, 与“形容词性物主代词+名词”相当的应是名词性物主代词, yours=your camera。答案选 B。

47. 【答案】B. 【解析】: of 要与名词性物主代词一起作定语, 排除 A 和 C 选项; 又因 Kate and her sister 是复数, 排除 D 选项。答案选 B。

48. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查反身代词。因为“call sb./oneself+ 某名”就是“叫某人/自称某名字”; 句意是“一个自称罗伯特的人”, 用 himself。答案选 B。

49. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由前后语境来看, 应是建议对方将两本书都拿去看。答案选 D。

50. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 在比较状语从句中, 指代前文的可数名词单数形式用 that 或 the one, 复数形式用 those, 或 the ones, 泛指时用 one 或 ones; 而不可数名词则用 that。这里比较的是 air, 所以用 that。

(四) 冠词



考纲要求

定冠词和不定冠词的基本用法。



考点指向

不定冠词 a/an 的区别、冠词的特指和泛指、零冠词的用法、冠词的习惯搭配等。



例题解析

1. (2012 年 8 小题) _____ Browns were having dinner when the telephone rang.

A. A B. An C. The D. /

解析: 姓氏复数前加定冠词 the 表示某人一家或夫妇二人, 答案选 C。

2. (2013 年 15 小题) Why not take _____ friend with you? Then you can share _____ cost of the car.

A. a; a B. the; the C. a; the D. the; a

解析: 根据题意“为啥不带一个朋友, 然后你们可以承担车的费用”, friend 以辅音开头

前用 a, cost 前用 the 特指车费, 答案选 C。

3. Do you think it is _____ useful dictionary?

- A. the B. of C. an D. a

解析: dictionary 是可数名词的单数形式, 且在句中表示泛指词典中的一本。所以必须用不定冠词修饰。因为它前面有限定词 useful 为辅音音素开头, 答案选 D。

4. She took the girl by _____ hand.

- A. the B. a C. one's D. an

解析: 本题考查冠词的习惯搭配。当身体的某部位接受外来的动作时, 常以人为宾语, 其后接介词 + the + 身体部位。答案选 A。

5. I'll have to buy _____ trousers.

- A. a B. two C. a pair of D. pair

解析: trousers 无单数意义, “一条裤子”应是一 pair of trousers。答案选 C。

6. _____ time we had that the party.

- A. What wonderful B. what a wonderful
C. How wonderful D. How a wonderful

解析: have a wonderful time 是“玩得高兴”的意思, 感叹句中修饰名词时(此句中是修饰 time)用 what 开头。答案选 B。

7. You'll find _____ girl in black. She is _____ teacher.

- A. a, the B. the a C. a, a D. the, the

解析: “穿黑衣服的女孩”是定语“她是一名教师”, 只说明她的职业或身份。答案选 B。



知 识 要 点

冠词部分《知识要点》见本书配套教学参考资料包。



强 化 训 练

1. My uncle told me he was going to visit _____.

- A. the United State B. the United States
C. United States D. United State

2. They failed six times, but they decided to try _____.

- A. seven times B. the seven time
C. a seventh time D. the seventh time

3. Who are those boys? One is my brother and _____.

- A. the big boy is Mike B. a big boy is Mike
C. the big boy is a Peter D. a big boy is a Peter

4. You will find _____ girl in black. She is _____ teacher.

- A. a; the B. the; a C. a; a D. the; the

5. _____ birds can fly very high in _____ sky.

- A. The; the B. The; a C. An; the D. A; the
6. I'm not looking at _____.
A. sun B. sky C. the sun D. some sky
7. The little boy wishes to be _____.
A. Lei Feng B. the Lei Feng C. this Lei Feng D. a Lei Feng
8. _____ have studied English in our school.
A. Most of students B. The most students
C. Most of the students D. Most student
9. Tom's brother hit Bob on _____ nose.
A. his B. the C. its D. a
10. We are going to have an exam _____.
A. in the class B. in a class C. at the class D. in class
11. We have had _____.
A. good dinner B. a good dinner C. the good dinner D. good dinners
12. _____ fine weather we have today! Let's go swimming.
A. What a B. How C. What D. How a
13. There's _____ apple tree behind _____ house.
A. an; the B. a; a C. an; a D. the; the
14. We can see the sun in _____ daytime, but we can't see it at _____ night.
A. a; the B. the; / C. a; / D. an; /
15. I saw _____ old man walking across the street and _____ old man looked worried.
A. an; an B. the; the C. an; the D. the; an
16. What _____ it is!
A. a heavy rain B. heavy rain
C. a heavy rain D. heavy rains
17. _____ time we had at the party!
A. What wonderful B. What a wonderful
C. How wonderful D. How a wonderful
18. _____ tallest building in the town is _____ Bank of China.
A. The; the B. A; a C. The; a D. A; the
19. Little Tom looked at the big shark _____.
A. in the surprise B. in surprised
C. in surprise D. at a surprise
20. _____ more carefully you ride, _____ fewer falls you'll get.
A. The; the B. A; the C. The; a D. A; a
21. He has made _____ decision that he will be _____ inventor some day.
A. a; the B. a; an C. the; an D. the; the
22. —We haven't seen for _____ long time. Where have you been? —I have been for holiday with my parents. —Have _____ nice time! —Thank you.

A. a; the; a B. the; a; a C. a; a; a D. a; the; the

23. —Excuse me, can you tell me _____ way to _____ Xinhua Bookstore?—Go along this road, and then turn to _____ right at _____ first crossing, at _____ end of the street, you can find it.

A. the; a; the; the; the B. a; the; the; a; the
C. the; the; the; a; the D. the; the; the; the; the

24. Why not take _____ friend with you? That's _____ good idea.

A. a; the B. the; the C. a; a D. the; a

25. Take the medicine three times _____ day.

A. a B. the C. an D. /

26. English is _____ language. It is _____ important tool.

A. a; a B. a; an C. the; an D. a; /

27. Meimei has _____ high fever and his mother is looking after her.

A. a B. the C. an D. /

28. Lucy takes _____ walk after supper every day.

A. the B. a C. / D. an

29. Paper is made of _____ wood.

A. a B. the C. / D. that

30. _____ February is the second month of the year.

A. The B. A C. / D. an

31. We have no classes on _____ Sundays.

A. the B. a C. an D. /

32. I studied _____ English in _____ England.

A. /; / B. an; the C. an; an D. /; the

33. We go to school by _____ bus.

A. / B. a C. the D. an

34. These boys play _____ football after class.

A. a B. the C. an D. /

35. There is _____ bridge over the river. _____ bridge is made of stone.

A. a; A B. a; The C. the; The D. the; A

36. Sunday is _____ first day of the week.

A. the B. / C. a D. an

37. _____ Greens were having breakfast at seven this morning.

A. A B. An C. / D. The

38. She is one of _____ most popular teachers in this school. Every student loves her.

A. a B. the C. an D. /

39. There is _____ 800-metre-long bridge over the river.

A. a B. an C. the D. /

40. _____ number of students are playing _____ basketball on the playground.

- A. A; a B. The; the C. The; a D. A; /
41. I used to work in _____ university, but now I work for _____ government.
A. an; / B. an; the C. a; / D. a; the
42. He wants to be _____ actor when he leaves school.
A. a B. the C. / D. an
43. —Where is _____ nearest post office, please?
—There's one at _____ end of the street.
A. the; an B. a; the C. a; an D. the; the
44. —Do you often listen to _____ radio?
—No. In fact I haven't got _____ radio.
A. the; the B. a; a C. the; a D. /; a
45. The guard caught him by _____ arm.
A. an B. / C. a D. the
46. _____ number of girls are playing _____ piano in the classroom.
A. A; a B. A; / C. The; a D. The; the
47. _____ Great Wall is _____ symbol of Chinese ancient civilization.
A. /; the B. The; a C. The; / D. /; the
48. Jason had _____ quick breakfast before he left _____ home.
A. a; the B. a; / C. a; a D. the; a
49. He went to Shanghai _____ plane but came back _____ train.
A. by; on B. by; on a C. by a; on a D. on; by
50. I earn 10 yuan _____ hour as _____ supermarket cashier.
A. a; an B. the; a C. an; a D. an; the
51. Han Meimei is _____ Chinese girl. Lucy is _____ English girl.
A. a; a B. an; an C. a; an D. an; a
52. This is _____ interesting book and it is also _____ useful one.
A. an; an B. an; the C. an; a D. a; a
53. My mother and I usually go out for _____ walk after _____ supper.
A. a; / B. /; the C. a; a D. the; a
54. Mary ordered _____ book some time ago and now _____ book has arrived.
A. a; a B. the; a C. the; the D. a; the
55. This is _____ most interesting novel.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
56. _____ Yellow River is _____ second longest river in China.
A. A; a B. The; a C. The; the D. /; /
57. As _____ earth goes around _____ sun, we have four seasons.
A. a; a B. an; a C. the; the D. /; /
58. When he left _____ college, he got a job as _____ reporter in a newspaper office.
A. /; a B. /; the C. a; the D. the; the

59. We all know _____ young are fond of _____ basketball.
A. a; a B. the; / C. the; the D. /; /
60. _____ worker and _____ poet was invited to the party the other day.
A. A; a B. /; the C. The; the D. The; /
61. The policeman caught the thief by _____ arm.
A. a B. an C. the D. /
62. My uncle's coming back on the deep night of a rainy day gave us _____.
A. great surprise B. a great surprise
C. great surprises D. the great surprise
63. For a long time they walked without _____ word. Jim was the first to break _____ silence.
A. the; a B. a; the C. a; / D. the; /
64. She looks best in _____ of that color.
A. dressing B. a dress C. dress D. the dress
65. _____ Mr. Jones called while you were out (neither of us knows this man). He was in _____ very bad temper.
A. /; a B. A; / C. The; the D. A; a
66. This area experienced _____ heaviest rainfall in _____ month of May.
A. /; a B. a; the C. the; the D. the; a
67. For him _____ stage is just _____ means of making a living.
A. a; a B. the; a C. the; the D. a; the
68. After 4 years, Mary turned _____ teacher but Tom turned _____ good doctor.
A. a; a B. a; / C. /; a D. /; /
69. Many people have come to realize that they should go on _____ balanced diet and make _____ room in their day for exercise.
A. a; / B. the; a C. the; the D. /; a
70. The cakes are delicious. He'd like have _____ third one because _____ second one is rather too small.
A. a; a B. the; the C. a; the D. the; a
71. It is _____ world of wonders, _____ world where anything can happen.
A. a; the B. a; a C. the; a D. /; /
72. The workers in this factory are paid by _____.
A. an hour B. the hour C. hours D. hour
73. Now I'm on _____ diet. I'm trying to lose _____ weight.
A. a; / B. the; a C. /; the D. a; a
74. I want an assistant with _____ little knowledge of French and _____ experience of office routine.
A. the; a B. the; an C. a; / D. a; an
75. —Could you tell me the way to _____ Johnson, please?
—Sorry, we don't have _____ Johnson here in the village.

- A. the; the B. the; a C. /; the D. the; /
76. Be careful, you missed _____ -e" and _____ -s" in spelling the word -success".
- A. a; a B. an; an C. a; an D. an; a
77. There is _____ -m", _____ -i", two -s" in the word -miss".
- A. a; an B. an; an C. an; a D. an; the
78. _____ bad weather !
- A. What a B. What C. How a D. How
79. The United States fought in _____.
- A. the World War II B. World War II
- C. World War the II D. Second World War
80. Every day people throw away a lot of _____ rubbish. How to get rid of _____ rubbish is _____ big problem.
- A. the; /; a B. /; the; / C. /; the; a D. /; the; the

答案:

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1~5 BCABA | 6~10 CDCBD | 11~15 BCABC | 16~20 ABACA |
| 21~25 BCDCA | 26~30 BABCC | 31~35 DAADB | 36~40 ADBBD |
| 41~45 DDDCD | 46~50 BBBBC | 51~55 CCADC | 56~60 CCABD |
| 61~65 CBBDD | 66~70 CBCAC | 71~75 BBACB | 76~80 CBBBC |

(五) 介词



考纲要求

掌握常用介词的基本用法。



考点指向

1. 考查介词的词义辨析。
2. 介词与其他词性的搭配辨析。
3. Beside 和 except 的用法也是考查重点。



例题解析

1. (2010 年第 8 题) Please write _____ me and tell me _____ yourself.
- A. with; for B. to; about C. to; to D. to; for

解析: write to sb 意为给某人写信; about yourself 意为关于你的情况, 应选 B。

2. (2012 年第 7 题) Sally is very happy. There is a big smile _____ her face.

- A. on B. to C. in D. at

解析: 后句意为笑容呈现在脸上, 应选 A。

3. (2013 年第 11 题) —Peter, can you tell me the differences _____ these two word?

—Sorry, I don't know. You may go and ask the teacher.

- A. between B. among C. for D. on

解析: between 表示两者之间, among 用于三者或三者以上, 由 these two word 可知应选 A。

4. (2013 年第 18 题) The food _____ my hometown is quite different _____ that there.

- A. in; from B. to; from C. from; in D. in; like

解析: in my hometown 在我的家乡; be different from 与...不同, 应选 A。



知 识 要 点

介词部分《知识要点》详见本书配套教学资料包。(详见前言)



强 化 训 练

1. —Thank you _____ the beautiful flowers!

—Not at all.

- A. in B. on C. at D. for

2. Look _____ the map _____ China _____ the wall, please.

- A. after; of; in B. at; of; in C. after; in; on D. at; of; on

3. The twins got on well _____ their classmates.

- A. to B. in C. with D. about

4. Let's hurry, or we'll be late _____ school.

- A. to B. at C. with D. for

5. He couldn't work out the maths problem _____ your help.

- A. without B. under C. for D. with

6. The manager was very satisfied _____ his work.

- A. in B. on C. about D. with

7. John hit Jack _____ face.

- A. on the B. in the C. on his D. in his

8. I was born _____ the night _____ September 15, 1978.

- A. in; on B. at; on C. at; in D. on; of

9. It's good manners to wait _____ line.

- A. in B. on C. at D. with

10. —Has the teacher given you any advice _____ your English study?

—Yes, he has.

- A. from B. with C. on D. in

11. I'm earlier today. I came here ____ his car.
A. by B. in C. on D. of
12. Do you have the key ____ the door?
A. to B. of C. for D. in
13. He is good ____ skating.
A. for B. to C. at D. from
14. Do you know the girl ____ red?
A. on B. in C. to D. of
15. Japan is ____ the east of China.
A. in B. on C. to D. of
16. I am writing ____ a piece of chalk on the blackboard while the students are writing ____ ink in exercise books.
A. with; in B. in; with C. in; in D. with; with
17. The worker can make chairs ____ wood, and also can make paper ____ wood.
A. from; of B. of; from C. of; of D. from; from
18. The teacher is not only strict ____ his pupils but also strict ____ his own work.
A. with; with B. in; in C. in; with D. with; in
19. If you run ____ two hares, you will catch neither.
A. into B. after C. off D. out of
20. This is a common mistake ____ students.
A. between B. over C. among D. about
21. My father began to work ____ a bus driver when he was twenty years old.
A. for B. to C. at D. as
22. The window is never opened ____ in summer.
A. besides B. except C. except for D. but for
23. It happened ____ the Long March.
A. during B. in C. at D. for
24. We go to school ____ a bike.
A. in B. on C. by D. over
25. It's very kind ____ you to repair the bike ____ me.
A. for for B. of; of C. of; for D. for; of
26. Fresh air is good ____ your health.
A. at B. for C. of D. to
27. The boy is waiting ____ his sister.
A. for B. on C. to D. in
28. The group is made up ____ five students. And they are studying hard to make up ____ the lost time.
A. of; of B. for; for C. of; for D. for; of
29. He will come ____ three days.

- A. before B. after C. in D. later
30. He went to Beijing and returned ____ three days.
A. in B. before C. later D. after
31. Did you have any trouble ____ the post office?
A. to have found B. with finding C. to find D. in finding
32. Do you agree ____ this plan?
A. at B. with C. on D. to
33. Finally they agreed ____ the terms of the contract.
A. on B. to C. with D. at
34. Do you often hear ____ your brother?
A. of B. from C. out of D. about
35. I heard ____ the book long ago, but I have never read it.
A. out B. from C. of D. with
36. The trees ____ front of the house are ____ the charge of Mr. Li.
A. in; in B. at; in C. in; by D. from; in
37. Does John know any other foreign languages ____ French?
A. except B. but C. besides D. beside
38. He looked quite healthy ____ he was ____ the age of seventy.
A. when; at B. because; in C. if; for D. though; at
39. —How long has the bookshop been in business? ____ 1982.
A. After B. In C. From D. Since
40. Something must be done to prevent our city ____ by thick smoke.
A. to be polluted B. from polluting
C. from being polluted D. polluting
41. You'd sound a lot more polite if you make a request ____ a question.
A. in search of B. in the form of
C. in need of D. in the direction of
42. It saves time in the kitchen to have things you use a lot ____ easy reach.
A. near B. upon C. within D. around
43. Try on this red skirt; you will look great ____ it.
A. on B. by C. in D. for
44. He invited me to a dance after the show ____ Christmas Eve.
A. at B. on C. in D. by
45. I guess we've already talked about this before but I'll ask you again just ____.
A. by nature B. in return C. in case D. by chance
46. Tired, Jim was fast asleep with his back ____ a big tree.
A. in B. below C. beside D. against
47. We give dogs time, space and love we can spare, and ____, dogs give us their all.
A. in all B. in fact C. in short D. in return

48. Sean has formed the habit of jogging _____ the tree-lined avenue for two hours every day.
A. between B. along C. below D. with
49. The dictionary is what I want, but I don't have enough money _____ me.
A. by B. for C. in D. with
50. Would you mind not picking the flowers in the garden? They are _____ everyone's enjoyment.
A. in B. at C. for D. to

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】D. 【解析】: thank sb for sth. 因……向某人表示感谢。
2. 【答案】D. 【解析】: look at 为“看”, of China 表示所属关系, 而 on the wall 为“在墙表面挂着”, 而 in the wall 则是“在墙内”, 如: There is hole in the wall. 墙上有个洞。
3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: get on well with sb 和某人相处很好。
4. 【答案】D. 【解析】: be late for school 上学迟到。
5. 【答案】A. 【解析】: without your help 没有你的帮助。
6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: be satisfied with 对……满意。
7. 【答案】B. 【解析】: hit sb in the face. 打在某人脸上。
8. 【答案】D. 【解析】: on 指在某一天或某一天的上午, 下午, 晚上, 如: on Monday, on Sunday afternoon, on July 1, 1999. of 表示所属关系。
9. 【答案】A. 【解析】: in line 排成行。
10. 【答案】C. 【解析】: on 表示关于。
11. 【答案】B. 【解析】: in his car 坐在他的车里。
12. 【答案】A. 【解析】: the key to the door. 门上的钥匙。相关的有: 问题的答案: the answer to the question.
13. 【答案】C. 【解析】: be good at 擅长
14. 【答案】B. 【解析】: in red 穿着红色的衣服。
15. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 表示地理位置的 in, on, to. in 表示在某范围内, on 指与什么毗邻, to 指在某环境范围之外。如: Changchun is in the northeast of China./ Mongolia is on the north of China./ Japan is to the east of China. (助记口诀: 内 in 外 to on 相邻)。
16. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 表示工具的“用”, 用 with, 而表示材料、方式、方法、度量、单位、语言、声音等的“用”, 用 in。
17. 【答案】B. 【解析】: of 是能看出原材料, 一般属物理变化; from 是看不出原材料, 一般属化学变化。
18. 【答案】D. 【解析】: be strict in, in 后加事物, 如: We should be strict in (doing) our work. 对工作我们应该严格要求。而 be strict with, with 后加人, 如: His father is strict with him. 他父亲对他严格要求。
19. 【答案】B. 【解析】: run after 追赶。句意为: 一心二用将一事无成。
20. 【答案】C. 【解析】: between 表示两者之间, among 用于三者或三者以上的中间。
21. 【答案】D. 【解析】: work as 做……工作, 从事……职业。
22. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 除夏天外, 这扇窗户从不打开。besides 指“除了……还有, 表加上”。如: All went out besides me; except 指“除了, 表减去”。如: we go to school every day except Saturday and Sunday; except for 表示“如无……就, 只是”, 是对细节加以修正, 往往表示除去一些美中不足的地方。如: His diary is good except for a few spelling mistakes. except that 表示“除了”, 后跟从句。It is a good restaurant except that

it is small. but for 表示要不是, 如果没有等意。

23. 【答案】A. 【解析】: during 表示在……期间。此句为: 这件事发生在长征期间。

24. 【答案】B. 【解析】: by 后面直接加交通工具。而 on/in 等要先加修饰词, 再加交通工具。如 by bike = on a/the bike, by car = in a/the car 没有 by a bike 这种形式。

25. 【答案】C. 【解析】: It's very kind of you to do sth. 你这样做真是太好了。第二空为 for, 意为: 为我修自行车。

26. 【答案】B. 【解析】: be good for 对……好。

27. 【答案】A. 【解析】: wait for 等待。

28. 【答案】C. 【解析】: be made up of 由……组成, 如: The special group is made up of 5 experienced engineers. make up for 补偿; 弥补; 补救。

29. 【答案】C. 【解析】: in 加时间段, 用于将来时, 表示将来一段时间后。而 after 加时间段, 用于过去时, 表示从过去某个时间点算起一段时间后。另外, after 还可接时间点, 既可用于将来时也可用于过去时。例: He will be back in two days. (或 in two days' time) 他两天后会回来的。He came back after two days. 他两天后回来了。He came back after two o'clock. 他两点后回来了。He will come back after two o'clock. 他两点后会回来的。

30. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句子时态为过去时。after 加时间段, 用于过去时。

31. 【答案】D. 【解析】: have trouble (in) doing sth. 在做某事上遇到了麻烦 I have trouble (in) parking the car. have trouble with sth 在…有麻烦或困难。如: I hope you won't have any trouble with the work. 我希望你做这项工作不会出什么问题。

32. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意: 你赞同这项计划吗? agree with 同意; 赞成; 与……一致; (气候, 食物) 适合。agree to 同意; 赞成 (提议、安排、计划等) agree on 对……取得一致意见 (主语往往是协商一件事的人们或单位), agree to do sth 同意做某事。

33. 【答案】A. 【解析】: agree on 对……取得一致意见。句意为: 他们最后就合同的条文达成了协议。

34. 【答案】B. 【解析】: hear from 接到……的信; hear about/of 听说。

35. 【答案】C. 【解析】: hear of 听说。此句意为: 我很久以前听说过这本书。

36. 【答案】A. 【解析】: in front of 在……前面; in the charge of 由……负责。

37. 【答案】C. 【解析】: besides: 除了……还包括, 如: He has another car besides this. 除了这辆车外, 他还有一辆。(表示两辆车都有)。but 与 except 同义, 表示除了, 但 but 多用在 every, any, no 等和由这些词构成的复合词, 如: everything, anywhere, nobody 等词以后及 all, none 之后, 如: They are all gone but me. There is no one but me. beside 表示在……旁边。

38. 【答案】D. 【解析】: at the age of 在某人多少岁时。句意为: 尽管他已经 70 岁, 但他看起来很健康。

39. 【答案】D. 【解析】: since 和现在完成时连用。

40. 【答案】C. 【解析】: prevent...from 阻止做某事。此处为被污染, 故 from 后应跟动名词的被动式。应选 C。

41. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 如果你把请求用问题的形式提出来, 听起来会有礼貌得多。A. in search of 是搜索的意思, 在这里不适用; C. in need of 需要; D. in the direction of 在……方向, 只能用 B. in the form of 以……形式。

42. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意, 厨房中把常用的物品放在够得着的地方能节省时间。本题考查介词搭配: within easy reach 在容易达到……的地方; 在……的附近。

43. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查介词的用法。Sth be on sb. “衣服穿在某人身上”; sb be in sth “某人穿着什么颜色衣服”。由此可知答案为: C。

44. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 在具体某一天用介词 on。

45. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本题考查介词短语。分析四个选项的意思: by nature 天生地; in return 作为回报, 作为交换; in case 万一, 以防; by chance 偶然地。句意: 我想我之前已经跟你谈论过这件事, 但是以防万一, 我再问你一次。

46. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查介词。句意为: “累了, 吉姆背倚着树, 很快就睡着了。” against 此处意为: “倚着, 靠着”; below “在……的下方”; beside “在……的旁边”; in “在……的里面或时间……之后”。

47. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 介词短语辨析 in return 作为回报; in all 总共, 共计, in fact 事实上; in short 简言之。句意: 我们把抽出来的时间、空间和爱都给了我们的狗, 作为回报, 狗把他们所有的都给了我们。

48. 【答案】B. 【解析】: along 沿着, between 在两者之间。below 在……下面; with 用; 随着; 和……在一起。根据句意 “Sean 已经形成了每天沿着绿荫大道慢跑两小时的习惯”, 表示 “沿着” 时, 应该选 B。

49. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查介词。I don't have enough money with me 意思是我没有随身带那么多钱。

50. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考察介词。句意为: “不要摘花园里的花好吗? 它们是供大家欣赏的。” 此处表示目的, “为了” 的意思, 故用介词 for。

(六) 连词



考纲要求

中职教材词汇表中所列连词的基本用法。



考点指向

从句中连词的选择。



经典题析

1. (2010 年 9 小题) He asks me _____.

A. why do I like tigers

B. why I like tigers

C. when will I see the tigers

D. where can he see the tigers

解析: 本题考查宾语从句, 宾语从句要用陈述句语序, 且根据题意, 答案选 B。

2. (2010 年 11 小题) —Does Mike like apples _____ pears?

—He likes pears.

A. so

B. and

C. or

D. but

解析: 根据下句推断出上句为选择疑问句, 答案选 C。

3. (2010 年 14 小题) He still wants to walk the dog, _____ it is raining hard outside.

- A. if B. since C. though D. when

解析: 根据前句意思推断出后句为让步状语从句, 故选 C。

4. (2011 年 14 小题) We didn't start to have our lessons _____ the teacher came back to school.

- A. until B. if C. when D. because

解析: 本题考查 not...until “直到……才”, 根据题意, 答案选 A。

5. (2011 年 18 小题) The weather is _____ that we want to go camping in the mountains.

- A. such nice B. too nice C. so nice D. how nice

解析: 本题考查 so...that... “如此……以致于……”, 引导结果状语从句且根据题意, 答案选 C。

6. (2012 年 9 小题) —Is everyone here today?

—No, Tom is at home _____ he has got a bad cold.

- A. because B. if C. until D. unless

解析: 根据上下句意思判断为原因状语从句, 答案选 A。

7. (2012 年 18 小题) Your T-shirt is so cool. Could you tell me _____?

- A. where you buy it B. where do you buy it
C. where you bought it D. where did you buy it

解析: 本题考查宾语从句, 宾语从句要用陈述句语序, 且根据题意, 答案选 C。

8. (2012 年 19 小题) Mr Smith will make the opening speech in the meeting, so we won't start the meeting _____ he arrives.

- A. when B. until C. as D. after

解析: 本题考查 not...until “直到……才”, 根据题意, 答案选 B。

9. (2013 年 17 小题) Tom has been in the factory _____ he left school.

- A. when B. since C. as soon as D. whether

解析: 从题意可知本题考查时间状语从句, 答案选 B。

10. Study hard, _____ you'll make great progress.

- A. or B. and C. while D. but

解析: 前面祈使句, 后面由 and 或 then 连接一个陈述句, 相当于含 if 条件状语从句的复合句, 此句相当于 If you study hard, you'll make great progress, 如果表达的意义是“否则”“要不然”则用 or 连接。答案选 B。

11. —I don't like running _____ climbing.

—I don't like running _____ I like climbing very much.

- A. and; and B. and; but C. or; but D. or; and

解析: 否定句中的并列成分由 or 连接, 意义上表转折用 but, 答案选 C。

12. He was about to tell me the secret _____ someone patted him on shoulder.

- A. as B. until C. while D. when

解析: 此句的意思是“他正准备告诉我那个秘密, 这时有人拍了拍他的肩膀”, when 此时相当于 at the very moment. 答案选 D。

13. We won't give up _____ we should fail ten times.

- A. even if B. since C. whether D. until

解析：“即使失败十次我们也不会放弃”引导让步状语从句，只能选 even if，答案选 A。

14. Jack was very tired _____ he played tennis all afternoon.

A. if B. as soon as C. because D. before

解析：前面“很累”是由后面的“整下午打网球”所导致，即后面是原因状语，答案选 C。



知识要点

连词部分《知识要点》详见本书配套教学资料包。（详见前言）



强化训练

1. He tried hard _____ he was unsuccessful.

A. but B. so C. and D. or

2. It must be snowing, _____ it is so bright outside.

A. but B. for C. and D. or

3. You may do it yourself, _____ ask someone else to do it.

A. but B. for C. and D. or

4. _____ Lily _____ Lucy may go with you because one of them must stay at home.

A. Not only; but also C. Neither; nor
C. Both; and D. Either; or

5. Mike is good at playing basketball _____ Bruce does well in football.

A. when B. until C. since D. while

6. Helen spends a lot of money on books _____ she is not rich.

A. if B. though C. when D. because

7. Mother was worried because little Alice was ill, especially _____ Father was away in France.

A. when B. that C. during D. if

8. _____ the answer is right is unknown.

A. Whether B. That C. / D. What

9. You may use my dictionary _____ you don't keep it too long.

A. as long as B. as soon as C. because D. while

10. _____ I did to money, you still want it.

A. No matter when B. No matter what
C. No matter how D. No matter where

11. We will surely succeed in the end _____ we stick to the project.

A. as long as B. as soon as C. as well as D. as far as

12. _____ he has worked in the school for several years is known to everyone.

A. What B. That C. When D. Where

13. The reason _____ he made up was obviously false

- A. which B. why C. for which D. on which
14. The teacher had left _____ I had time to ask him this question.
A. since B. after C. before D. until
15. He didn't know the news _____ his parents told him about it.
A. as soon as B. until C. after D. when
16. _____ you do it _____ I do it. Anyhow it must be done.
A. Neither; nor B. Either; or C. Both; and D. Not only; but also
17. We must get up early tomorrow, _____ we'll miss the first bus to the Great Wall.
A. so B. or C. but D. however
18. Betty will go to see the film _____ she is busy.
A. unless B. but C. until D. if
19. It's raining heavily, _____ you have to take the umbrella.
A. and B. but C. so D. or
20. They did not invite Dr Smith to the medical conference, _____ did we.
A. either B. so C. neither D. and
21. I am not interested in _____ you'll come or not.
A. if B. that C. whether D. how
22. I'm reading a newspaper _____ Mr. Zhang is writing a letter.
A. so B. while C. when D. or
23. He is over forty, _____ he insists on learning another foreign language.
A. and B. so C. or D. still
24. We must do _____ our teacher tell us.
A. that B. if C. as D. which
25. —I don't like chicken _____ fish.
—I don't like chicken, _____ I like fish very much.
A. and; and B. and; but C. or; but D. or; and
26. —Why was he late for school? — _____ he got up too late.
A. Because B. Since C. As D. For
27. _____ it is so hot, let's go swimming.
A. Because B. Since C. As D. For
28. _____ I got home, he was having supper.
A. Since B. While C. As D. When
29. I often visited the British Museum _____ I was staying in London.
A. while B. during C. until D. because
30. Gary didn't recognize his old classmate _____ he was told her name.
A. when B. unless C. so D. until
31. Peter was so excited _____ he received an invitation from his friend.
A. that B. why C. while D. when
32. —I wonder how much you charge for your services.

- The first two are free _____ the third costs \$30.
A. while B. and C. so D. for
33. A small car is big enough for a family of three _____ you need more space for baggage.
A. once B. because C. if D. unless
34. _____ the passage carefully _____ you will understand it well.
A. Read; and B. Reading; or C. To read; and D. Read; but
35. The oil must be out, _____ the lamp has gone out.
A. so B. because C. therefore D. for
36. It wasn't long _____ I forget it all.
A. when B. then C. after D. before
37. Tom did quite well in the final exam, _____, he could have done better.
A. although B. but C. however D. instead
38. I'm sorry, _____ I won't be able to come tonight.
A. for B. and C. but D. then
39. He was not an actor, who often appeared on stage, _____ a writer writing stories.
A. but B. and C. then D. so
40. Father made a promise _____ I passed the examination he would buy me a computer.
A. that B. that if C. if D. whether
41. _____ it was early, she turned off the radio and went to bed.
A. Because B. Though C. Since D. As
42. Which shirt is more expensive, the white one _____ the green one?
A. and B. or C. but D. so
43. Work hard, _____ you'll learn English well.
A. and B. but C. for D. or
44. You may go _____ you clean the classroom.
A. before B. because C. as soon as D. after
45. He is a teacher _____ I'm a farmer.
A. or B. so C. but D. while
46. I like autumn _____ I can have a lot of fruit.
A. but B. if C. though D. because
47. _____ Jim _____ Kate has come. I don't know when they will come.
A. Both...and B. Not only...but also
C. Neither...nor D. Either...or
48. He's at home these days. You may come _____ today _____ tomorrow.
A. either...or B. both...and
C. not only...but also D. neither...nor
49. My grandma is old _____ strong.
A. and B. or C. but D. so
50. The boy is clever, _____, he often makes mistakes.

- A. and B. however C. when D. or
51. You'd better put on more clothes, _____ it's very cold outside.
A. for B. and C. because of D. or
52. _____ I went into the classroom, the students were talking about the film.
A. While B. After C. When D. before
53. We'll go back to the fields _____ the snow stops.
A. as soon as B. because C. but D. and
54. The plane flew so high _____ it looked very small.
A. that B. why C. whether D. that if
55. I didn't get up _____ father came back from the factory.
A. when B. until C. while D. because
56. I don't know _____ or not we'll have an exam tomorrow.
A. if B. when C. whether D. that if
57. Please look after the children _____ I am out.
A. though B. so that C. that D. while
58. Please speak aloud _____ I can hear a little better.
A. though B. so that C. such that D. as
59. Ring me up _____ you come to my house.
A. though B. as C. before D. than
60. More people came _____ I expected.
A. as if B. so that C. since D. than
61. You must do _____ I told you.
A. after B. before C. where D. as
62. Class One is _____ large _____ Class Two.
A. so; that B. as; as C. such; that D. so; as
63. They will be thankful for _____ you have done.
A. what B. that C. which D. who
64. I will write to you _____ I get there.
A. while B. as soon as C. as D. since
65. _____ he is old, he can walk very fast.
A. If B. Although C. Since D. Because
66. We'll go to visit the Great Wall _____ it rains tomorrow.
A. since B. as soon as C. when D. unless
67. You must get up early tomorrow, _____ I will go there alone.
A. or B. and C. yet D. for
68. It was raining hard, _____, the peasants went on with their work.
A. but B. and C. however D. although
69. Do you know _____ Jane is getting on well with her classmates?
A. what B. how C. that D. which

70. He is a football player_____.
A. but also plays the piano B. but the pianist
C. but play the piano as well D. but a famous pianist
71. It's such an interesting story_____everybody likes it.
A. as B. that C. so that D. which
72. I don't like him.I'd rather_____in than_____to play with him.
A. to play; to go B. stay; go C. go play; go D. stay; to go
73. He is very old, _____he still works very hard.
A. if B. when C. and D. but
74. Mrs.Smith likes music_____her husband likes sport.
A. while B. or C. for D. so
75. _____Tom_____Mary is free.You'd better play with others.
A. Both; and B. Not only; but also
C. Neither; nor D. Either; or
76. They didn't start to work_____the boss arrived.
A. so B. as soon as C. while D. until
77. _____you're all here, we can work out a solution.
A. Because B. Though C. Since D. for
78. The child is clever_____healthy.
A. as soon as B. as good as C. as well as D. as tall as
79. We must set off now, _____we'll miss the last train.
A. and B. while C. then D. or
80. Can you name three countries_____Chinese is used as one of their languages?
A. that B. which C. where D. there
81. Mr Smith comes from Australia, but he has worked in China for five years.So you can talk with him_____.
A. either in English or in Chinese B. not in Chinese but in English
C. just in English, not in Chinese D. neither in Chinese, not in English
82. The box is_____heavy_____I can't carry it.
A. so; that B. too; to C. such; that D. very; that
83. We have lived here_____five years ago.
A. when B. since C. before D. after
84. Liu Mei studied hard, _____she passed the exam.
A. or B. so C. but D. when
85. Though he was tired, _____he went on working.
A. but B. or C. / D. so

答案:

- | | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1~5 ABDDD | 6~10 BAAAB | 11~15 ABACB | 16~20 BBACC | 21~25 CBDCC |
| 26~30 ABDAD | 31~35 DADAD | 36~40 DCCAB | 41~45 BBADD | 46~50 DCACB |

51~55 ACAAB

56~60 CDBCD

61~65 DBABB

66~70 DACCD

71~75 BBDAC

76~80 DCCDC

81~85 AABBC

(七) 数词



考纲要求

掌握基数词和序数词的基本用法。



考点指向

1. 重点考查倍数的表达法。
2. 考查数词与 another 及 more 连用时的顺序问题。



例题解析

1. (2013 年 10 题)

—Have you finished your report yet?

—No, I'll finish it in _____ ten minutes.

- A. another B. other C. more D. less

解析: 此题关键词为 ten, 考查了数词与 another 及 more 连用时的顺序问题。数词位于 another 之后, 若和 more 连用, 位于 more 之前。答案选 A。也可为 ten more minutes.

2. The new house is _____ the old one.

- A. twice larger as B. twice as large as
C. as large as twice D. as twice large as

解析: 此题考查倍数的表达法。倍数的表达公式为: (1) 倍数 + as + 形容词/副词 (原级) + as; (2) 倍数 + 形容词或副词的比较级 + than; (3) 倍数 + the + size/length/weight/height/width... + of. 答案为 B.

3. _____ the students usually surf the Internet and get information.

- A. 60 percents of B. 60 percent C. 60 percent of D. 60 percents

解析: 百分数的表示法为“基数词 + percent”, percent 用单数, 后接名词时需用介词 of. 答案选 C.



知识要点

数词《知识要点》部分详见本书配套教学资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. ____ letter of the word “restaurant” is “n”.
A. The ninth B. Ninth C. The ninth D. Ninth
2. He was only in ____ at the time.
A. his 20's B. the 20's C. his twenties D. the twenties
3. The two great men wrote those letters in ____.
A. 1870's B. 1870s C. the 1870's D. the 1870
4. I wonder if I can ask him ____ time.
A. four B. fourth C. the fourth D. a fourth
5. —would you like to eat ____ apples?
—No, thank you.
A. more two B. two more C. two another D. two else
6. It was in 1939 that ____ broke out.
A. World War Second B. the World War Second
C. Second World War D. World War II
7. You'll have to spend ____ writing your report here.
A. one day or two days B. one day or two
C. a day or two D. two days or one
8. —It's 10:45.
—Yes, it's _____.
A. fifteen from eleven B. a quarter to eleven
C. a quarter past ten D. fifteen past eleven
9. The earth is nearly ____ the moon.
A. 50 time the size of B. 50 times the size of
C. 50 times as size as D. 50 times as that of
10. ____ of the population here are peasants.
A. 20 percents B. 20 percent C. the 20 percent D. the 20 percents
11. You can find him in ____.
A. Room 201 B. 201 Room C. the Room 20 D. the 201 Room
12. It's ____ walk from here to my school.
A. two - hours B. two hours C. two - hour D. a two - hour
13. It was in ____ when he was already in ____ that he went to Yan'an.
A. the 1940s; the 40s B. the 1940s; his forties
C. 1940's; his forties D. the 1940's; his 40s
14. ____ of the people on the net believe China's economy is among the strongest in the world.
A. Four-fifth B. Four-five C. Fourth-five D. Four-fifths
15. He got a gold in the ____ and was given a ____ holiday.

- A. 100-meter race; 3-day B. 100-meters race; 3 days
C. 100 meter' race; 3-day D. 100-meters-race; 3 days'
16. The cakes are delicious. He'd like to have _____ third one because _____ second one is rather too small.
A. a; a B. the; the C. a; the D. the; a
17. _____ of the land in that district _____ covered with trees and grass.
A. Two fifth; is B. Two fifth; are
C. Two fifths; is D. Two fifths; are
18. It is reported that the United States uses _____ energy as the whole of Europe.
A. as twice B. twice much C. twice much as D. twice as much
19. —What time is it now?
—It is _____.
A. eleven and thirty B. eleven thirty C. thirty eleven D. eleven-thirty
20. I have to write a _____ composition every other week.
A. six-hundred-words B. six-hundreds-words
C. six-hundreds—word D. six-hundred-word
21. There are eight classes in our grade. I'm in _____.
A. Grade Three; Class Two B. Class Two; Grade Three
C. grade three; class two D. class two; grade three
22. —How can I get to the Summer Palace?
—_____ will take you there.
A. 332 No. Bus B. No.332 Bus C. Bus No.332 D. Bus 332 No.
23. In our class _____ of the students _____ girls.
A. three-fifth; are B. three-fifth; is
C. three-fifths; are D. three-fifths; is
24. _____ of the workers in this factory is about three hundred. _____ of them are women workers.
A. The number;first third B. The number;one third
C. A number;half D. A number;three quarters
25. There are _____ months in a year, _____ month is February.
A. twelve; two B. twelve; second
C. twelve; the second D. twelfth; the second
26. I live in a tall building and I live _____ floor.
A. in twelfth B. on the twelfth
C. in twelve D. on the twelve
27. _____ books must be produced for the young.
A. Many thousands of B. Much thousand
C. Many thousand of D. Thousand of
28. Is Sunday the _____ day of the week?

- A. a B. one C. once D. first
29. I got a beautiful bike on _____ birthday. I like it very much.
A. fifteenth B. fifteen C. my fifteen D. my fifteenth
30. John is 180 centimeters tall, and his daughter is 90. So he is twice _____ her.
A. so tall as B. as tall as C. much taller than D. less than
31. Two _____ died of cold last winter.
A. hundreds old peoples B. hundred old people
C. hundreds old people D. hundred old peoples
32. In Pisa, there is _____ leaning tower.
A. an 180-foot-high B. a 180-feet high
C. a 180-foot-high D. an 180 feet-high
33. She bought her son two _____ pencils.
A. dozen of B. dozens C. dozen D. dozens of
34. She waters the flower _____.
A. each three days B. every third days
C. every three days D. each other day
35. He will be back in _____.
A. a or two days B. one or two days
C. one day and two D. one and two day
36. The working women in the city got paid _____.
A. by hours B. by an hour C. by hour D. by the hour
37. I've already covered _____ pages of the book.
A. the first twenty B. a twenty first
C. the twenty first D. a first twenty
38. Our teacher asked us to write on every _____ line.
A. two B. three C. third D. one
39. We'll stay here for _____.
A. other ten days B. another ten days
C. another ten day D. ten another days
40. In _____ Marx began to learn Russian.
A. the 1870s B. 1870's C. 1870s D. his 1870's
41. With the help of the German experts, the factory produced _____ cars in 1993 as the year before.
A. as twice many B. as many as twice
C. as twice as many D. twice as many
42. As he is not in good health, he goes to his factory only _____ just to learn something about the progress of experiment.
A. once a week B. one week C. one time a week D. one a week
43. More than nine _____ students are doing sports now.

- A. hundreds B. hundred of C. hundred D. hundreds of
44. Now, everybody, please turn to Page _____ and look at the _____ picture.
A. Fifth; five B. Five; fifth C. Fifth; fifth D. Five; five
45. September is _____ month of the year.
A. ninth B. nine C. the nine D. the ninth
46. Every year, _____ people go to visit their factory.
A. a thousand of B. thousands C. thousand of D. thousands of
47. Last year, I visited a chemical factory in Baise, there are about _____ workers in it.
A. six thousands B. six thousand C. six thousands of D. six thousand of
48. The teacher said that _____ of the boys would take part in the talent show.
A. three five B. three fives C. thirds fifths D. three fifths
49. —David, how old is your father this year?
—_____. And we just had a special party for his _____ birthday last weekend.
A. Fortieth; forty B. Forty; forty C. Forty; fortieth D. Fortieth; fortieth
50. The work is too difficult for Mr. Zhu to finish in a week. He needs _____ days.
A. more two B. two more C. two another D. another more

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 特指第九: the ninth.

2. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 表示“在某人多少岁时”, 用“in one's 加整十的复数形式”如: in his thirties 表示“在他三十多岁时”。

3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 表示“在几十年代”用“in the 加逢十的数词复数形式或数词所有格形式”。如: in the 1990s 或 1990's (20 世纪 90 年代)。

4. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 序数词在使用时, 通常前面要加定冠词 the; 但是如果序数词前出现不定冠词 a 或 an 时, 则表示“再一”, “又一”。如: We've tried it three times. Must we try it a fourth time? 我们已经试过三遍了, 还必须试一次吗?

5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题考查“基数词 + more”或“another + 基数词”的用法。

6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 第二次世界大战为: World War II 或 the Second World War.

7. 【答案】C. 【解析】: “一两天”可以说成 one or two days 或 a day or two.

8. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 分钟数超过半小时, 则表示成几点差几分, 用 分钟 + to + 小时 表示。
ten to eight 差十分八点 (七点五十分) a quarter to twelve 差一刻十二点 (十一点四十五分)。

9. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查倍数表达方式:

(1) 倍数 + as + 形容词/副词 (原级) + as. 如:

This room is three times as big as that room.

(2) 倍数 + 形容词或副词的比较级 + than. 如:

This rope is four times longer than that one.

(3) 倍数 + the + size/length/ weight/height/width... + of.

This room is three times the size of that one.

10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 百分之几在英语中用数字 + percent 表示, 如: We give 10 percent discount for cash. 现金付款, 我们九折优惠。另外, 如果表示百分几的……时, 用数字 + percent + of, 如: 29% 的学生: twenty-nine percent of the students.

11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 房间号表示法: Room + 基数词。

12. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由数词和其他名词构成的名词性短语作定语时, 其中的名词用单数形式, 名词性短语中各部分间要用连字符“-”来连接。如: It's a five-minute walk from the library to the playground. 从图书馆到操场需要走五分钟。

13. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 表示“在几十年代”用“in the 加逢十的数词复数形式或数词所有格形式”。如: in the 1990s 或 1990's (20 世纪 90 年代)。表示“在某人多少岁时”, 用“in one's 加整十的复数形式”如: in his thirties 表示“在他三十多岁时”。

14. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 分数在英语中通常是借助于基数词和序数词来共同表达的。其中基数词表示分子, 序数词表示分母。如: The centimeter is one-tenth of the decimeter or one-hundredth of the meter. 厘米是分米的十分之一, 或者说是米的百分之一。如果分子大于 1, 分母要用复数形式。另外, 1/2 不能说 a (one) second, 而要说 a (one) half. 1/4 和 3/4 可以说 a (one) fourth 和 three fourths, 但常用 a quarter 和 three quarters 表示。

15. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由数词和其他名词构成的名词性短语作定语时, 其中的名词用单数形式, 名词性短语中各部分间要用连字符“-”来连接。

16. 【答案】C. 【解析】: a third one 意为: 又一个, the second one 意为第二个。序数词在使用时, 通常前面要加定冠词 the, 表示顺序; 但是如果序数词前出现不定冠词 a 或 an 时, 则表示“一再”, “又一”。

17. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查分数的表示法及主谓一致。

句意: 这个地区五分之二的土地都被花草覆盖着。首先, 分数的表示法为, 分数由基数词和序数词构成——分子用基数词, 分母用序数词, 分子大于“1”时, 分母用复数。分数 + of 等后接不可数名词或是单数形式的名词作主语时, 谓语动词用单数, 故选 C。

18. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由后面的 as 可知为 as...as 结构, 排除 B 选项; 如果表示“同样多的能源”应为 as much energy as, 在比较句型中, 倍数作状语应置于第一个 as 或比较级的前面。注意倍数句型分为两种结构: 主系表结构和主谓结构。在主系表结构中, 系动词后是“倍数词 + as + adj. + as”; 在主谓(宾)结构中, 是“倍数词 + as + adv. + as”或“倍数词 + as + adj. + noun + as”。

19. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查用简单方法表示时间。即以小时、分钟为单位分别读出数字。

如: 6:31 读作 six thirty-one 16:15 读作 sixteen fifteen。

20. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 六百为: six-hundred. 一篇六百词的作文为: a six-hundred—word composition. 连字符所连的词做定语时, 不用复数形式。故 word 用单数形式。

21. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 年级班级表示法为: -Class + 基数词, Grade + 基数词”, 且基数词用英语表示时首字母大写。

22. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 第 332 路公共汽车表示为: Bus No.332 或者 the No.332 bus.

23. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 用基数词 + 序数词表示分数, 且当基数词大于 1 时, 序数词后接 s. 主语为五分之三的学生, 故谓动词应用复数 are。

24. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 第一空: 句中的谓语是 is, 说明主语是单数。故选 the number. 因为 a number of 表示“许多”“大量”, 它接复数名词, 谓语句用复数。第二空: one third 三分之一。分数的表示法: 分子用基数词, 分母用序数词。如果分子大于一, 分母要用复数形式。如: two thirds 三分之二。

25. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 第一空用基数词 twelve, 表示十二个月。第二空用 the second 表示第二个月。

26. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 在哪一层用 on the + 序数词 + floor。

27. 【答案】A. 【解析】: thousands of 成千上万。前面应加 many 修饰 books。

28. 【答案】D. 【解析】: the first day of the week 一周的第一天。

29. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 在……的第几个生日, 用 on 加名词所有格或形容词性的物主代词加序数词表示。

30. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 倍数表达法: 倍数词 + as + 形容词/副词 + as..., 例: This room is three times as big as that one. 这个房间是那个房间的 3 倍大。so...as...多用于否定句, 表示“不如...”, 例: He is not so tall as his sister. 他不如其姐姐高。much taller than 的意思是“比...高得多”, less than 的意思是“少得多”。根据句意及倍数表达法应选 B。

31. 【答案】B. 【解析】: hundred, thousand, million, score, dozen 与数词连用或与 many, several 等词连用时, 不用复数形式。people 指人们, 本身是具有复数意义的词, 但若指不同国家、不同民族的人时, 可用复数。如: We should deepen the friendship between the peoples of the two countries.

32. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 连字符所连的词做定语时, 不用复数形式。

33. 【答案】C. 【解析】: dozen 与数词连用, 不用复数, 另外 dozen 后一般不与 of 连用, 若接 of 时, 后应有 the, these, those 等限定词或 them, 如 I want three dozen of the / these / those pencils 或 I want three dozen of them.

34. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 每几天, 不用 each 来表示, 应说 every few days; 每三天 every three days 或 every third day. 每隔一天 every other day.

35. 【答案】B. 【解析】: “一两天”可以说成 one or two days 或 a day or two.

36. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 表示按小时、天、月、打等单位的词应这样表示: by the hour / day / month / dozen; 表示按长度、重量应这样表示: by length / weight.

37. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 前二十页 the first twenty pages, 后二十页 the last twenty pages, 头几天 the first few days.

38. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 每三行为: every three lines 或 every third line.

39. 【答案】B. 【解析】: “再用十天时间”可以说成 another ten days 或 ten more days.

40. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查年代表示法。表示“在几十年代”用“in the 加逢十的数词复数形式或数词所有格形式”。如: 在“19 世纪 70 年代”可以说成 in the 1870's 或 in the 1870s.

41. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查倍数的表达法。倍数的表达公式为: (1) 倍数 + as + 形容词/副词 (原级) + as. (2) 倍数 + 形容词或副词的比较级 + than. (3) 倍数 + the + size/length/weight/height/width... + of.

42. 【答案】A. 【解析】: “每周一次”的表达方式为: once a week.

43. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 有确切数目的, 用 hundred 单数形式。hundreds of students 表示成百上千的学生。其他比如 million 用法也一样: nine million students, millions of students

44. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查编号表达法: 名词 + 基数词 = the + 序数词 + 名词。如: 第六课: Lesson Six = the sixth lesson.

45. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 此处用序数词表示第九个月: the ninth month.

46. 【答案】D. 【解析】: thousands of 成千上万的。

47. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 有确切数目的, 用 hundred, thousand, million 的单数形式。如: five hundred students.

48. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查分数的表示法: 分子用基数词, 分母用序数词。如果分子大于一, 分母要用复数形式。如: two thirds 三分之二。

49. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 第一空表示 40 岁用基数词 forty; 第二空表示第 40 个生日用序数词 fortieth.

50. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据前面的题意“对于朱先生来说, 那项工作在一周内很难完成”和所给选项可知本题考查“基数词 + more”或“another + 基数词”的用法。分析比较四个选项可知 A、C、D 选项都是错误的, 故正确答案为 B。

(八) 形容词和副词



考纲要求

形容词:

(1) 形容词作定语、表语和宾语补足语等。

(2) 比较等级(原级、比较级、最高级)

①比较级和最高级的构成-er, -est; more, most.

②基本句型:

比较级+than...

the+最高级+in/of...

as+原级+as

not so/as+原级+as...

副词:

(1) 表示方式、地点、时间、频度、疑问、连接关系等副词的用法。

(2) 比较等级(原级、比较级、最高级)

①比较级和最高级构成(同形容词)

②基本句型(同形容词)



考点指向

形容词、副词的比较级和最高级的用法; 形容词和副词在用法上的辨析。



经典题析

1. (2010 年 17 小题) —Could you please tell me _____ in today's newspaper?

—Sorry, _____.

A. something special; special nothing

B. special something; special nothing

C. special something; anything special

D. something special; nothing special

解析: 上句征求对方意见且形容词修饰不定代词, 放在不定代词之后; 下句形容词修饰不定代词放在其后且表示否定意义, 答案选 D。

2. (2010 年 19 小题) —I'm sure I will get good grades(成绩) in the graduation exam.

—If so, I believe your parents will _____ the result.

A. be satisfied with

B. be angry about

C. be bored of

D. be worried about

解析: 根据上句意思推断出下句“父母对结果满意”, 答案选 A。

3. (2010 年 20 小题) —I heard that Huang Xiaomei made an English speech at the graduation ceremony yesterday.

—_____, and so did I.

- A. So she did B. So did she C. So she was D. So was she

解析: 根据上句和下句的意思推断出“她确实如此”, 答案选 A。

4. (2011 年 9 小题) There are _____ things in this case, Please don't open it.

- A. person B. personal C. personally D. personality

解析: 根据句意“在这个箱子里有私人的东西”, 答案选 B。

5. (2011 年 16 小题) —My grades are really bad.

—Yes, but Li Ping's are even _____.

- A. bad B. worse C. worst D. so worse

解析: 根据上下句判断本题考查比较级, 答案选 B。

6. (2011 年 18 小题) The weather is _____ that we went to go camping in the mountains.

- A. such nice B. too nice C. so nice D. how nice

解析: so...that, so 为副词修饰形容词且 so...that 引导结果状语从句, 答案选 C。

7. (2013 年 12 小题) —I'm _____, Mum. Can I have something to drink?

—OK, Here's some cola.

- A. tired B. thirsty C. hungry D. heavy

解析: 根据上下句判断“我渴了”, 答案选 B。

8. (2013 年 13 小题) It's too _____, and I don't have enough money to buy it.

- A. nice B. lovely C. popular D. expensive

解析: 从后句判断“我没有足够的钱买”, 可推断出前句“太贵了”, 答案选 D。

9. (2013 年 19 小题) Look! There is _____ in today's newspaper.

- A. new anything B. something new C. anything new D. new something

解析: 本句为肯定句且 something 用于肯定句, 又因形容词修饰不定代词放在其后, 答案选 B。

10. They have produced _____ steel this year as they did five years ago.

- A. twice as much B. twice as many C. twice much as D. twice many as

解析: 该句型结构为“倍数 + as + 原形 + as”, 答案选 A。

11. No one can be _____ for the office _____ he is.

- A. more fit; than B. fit; than C. more fit; as D. fit; as

解析: 有 than, 应使用比较级形式, 排除 B 项; 有 as 则用原级, 排除 C 项; D 项不符合题意; more fit than 意为“比……合适得多”, 答案选 A。

12. If I am right, Olivia is _____ of two girls.

- A. tall B. taller C. the taller D. tallest

解析: 因为 of the two 意为“在两个中”, 两者之间进行比较使用比较级, 句意为 Olivia 是这两个女孩中最高的, 答案选 C。

13. I didn't have a _____ sleep last night. Did you sleep _____?

- A. good; good B. well; well C. well; good D. good; well

解析: 形容词修饰名词, 副词修饰动词, 所以名词 sleep 前应用形容词 good 修饰, 而动词 sleep 后应用副词 well 修饰, 答案选 D。

14. The _____ thing in the universe is light. It travels at 300,000 km per second.

- A. more fast B. most fast C. faster D. fastest

解析: fast 是单音节词, 所以最高形式应为 fastest, 答案选 D。

15. My brother is two meters tall. It's difficult to find clothes _____ for him.

- A. enough big B. big enough C. bigger enough D. enough bigger

解析: 程度副词 enough 应放在被修饰的形容词(原级)之后, 答案选 B。

16. —How _____ do you go to the theatre, Susan?

—Oh, once a month.

- A. long B. often C. soon D. much time

解析: 根据答语 once a month (一个月一次), 可以判断问句中是询问频率, often 是频率副词, 答案选 B。

17. He asked his friends to help to carry the tree, which was _____ than a three-story building.

- A. as tall B. taller C. more taller D. the tallest

解析: 两者进行比较, 应该用比较级。more 不能用在比较级前, 答案选 B。

18. Tom is not clever, and Jack is even _____ than Tom.

- A. more clever B. cleverer C. clever D. less clever

解析: 用 less + 原级形容词 + than + 比较成分, 表示前者不及后者。句意为“Tom 不聪明, 而 Jack 还不如 Tom 聪明”, 答案选 D。

19. These bananas taste _____ and sell _____.

- A. well; well B. good; good C. good; well D. well; good

解析: taste 是系动词, 后接形容词作表语; sell 是实义动词, 由副词修饰。答案选 C。

20. He wasn't _____ to lift the box.

- A. too strong B. strong enough C. enough strong D. well good

解析: not enough...to 意为“不足的……来做某事”, 符合句意。句意为“举起这个箱子, 他力气不够大。”not enough to 可以转换为 too...to 结构中的形容词(副词)要用相应的反义词。转换后的句子为“He was too weak to lift the box”, 答案选 B。



知识要点

形容词和副词部分《知识要点》详见本书配套教学参考资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. These bananas taste _____.

- A. well B. good C. better D. best

2. How beautifully she sings! I have never heard _____.

- A. the better voice B. a good voice
C. the best voice D. a better voice

3. The performance wasn't interesting at all, so _____ people liked it.
A. a little B. few C. little D. a few
4. The plane landed _____ at the airport .
A. safe B. safety C. safely D. safeness
5. Mr. Li bought a _____ bag for his wife.
A. small red leather B. red leather small
C. small leather red D. red small leather
6. _____ after I got home, it began to rain.
A. Short B. Shorter C. Shortly D. Shortest
7. He was too tired to go any _____.
A. far B. farest C. farther D. farthest
8. Which is _____ country, Canada or Australia?
A. a longer B. larger C. a larger D. the larger
9. Which is _____, Canada or Australia?
A. a longer B. larger C. a larger D. the larger
10. --ow _____ do you go swimming?--Once a week.
A. much B. many C. often D. long
11. John was so sleepy that he could hardly keep his eyes _____.
A. open B. opened C. to open D. opening
12. Canada is larger than _____ country in Asia.
A. any B. any other C. other D. another
13. He is cleverer than _____ in his class.
A. any student B. any students
C. any other students D. any other student
14. He knew she was watching him _____.
A. close B. closely C. closed D. closing
15. Staying in a hotel costs _____ renting a room in a dormitory for a week.
A. twice more than B. twice as much as
C. more than twice D. as much as twice
16. Usually John would be late for meetings. But this time, _____ to my surprise, he arrived on time.
A. little B. much C. ever D. even
17. You are driving too fast, Can you drive _____?
A. more slowly a bit B. slowly a bit more
C. a bit more slowly D. slowly more a bit
18. After the long journey, the three of them went back home, _____.
A. hungry and tiredly B. hungry and tired
C. hungrily and tiredly D. hungrily and tired
19. I haven't seen _____ this since I collected stamps.

- A. as old a stamp as B. as an old stamp as
C. so an old stamp as D. stamp as old as
20. I have _____ books than he.
A. much more B. few more C. many more D. a little more
21. —How was your job examination?
—Oh, I couldn't feel _____. I hardly found proper answers to most of the questions they asked.
A. better B. easier C. worse D. happier
22. If there were no examinations, we should have _____ at school.
A. a much happier time B. a more happier time
C. much happiest time D. the happiest time
23. My _____ brother is two years _____ than I.
A. older; older B. elder; older C. older; elder D. elder; elder
24. He drives _____ than he did 3 years ago.
A. much more careful B. more careful
C. much carefully D. much more carefully
25. Who is the greatest man _____?
A. living B. live C. alive D. lively
26. Which is _____ country, Canada or America?
A. a large B. larger C. a larger D. the larger
27. He was so sleepy that he couldn't keep his eyes _____.
A. opened B. opening C. open D. to be opened
28. She is very _____ with her study, and seldom makes mistakes.
A. care B. careful C. hopeless D. carefully
29. The Yellow River is the second _____ river in China.
A. long B. longer C. longest D. the long est
30. This house is _____ than that one.
A. larger two-thirds B. larger two-third
C. two-third larger D. two-thirds larger
31. She is _____ older than she looks.
A. a lot of B. very C. quite D. far
32. He drives much _____ than he did 5 years ago.
A. careful B. carefully C. more careful D. more carefully
33. How _____ will you be able to finish the work?
A. often B. long C. soon D. rapid
34. He was _____ excited _____ speak.
A. very; to B. too; to C. enough; to D. so; that
35. He knows _____ little English that he can't make himself understood.
A. so B. such C. much D. less

36. John was so tired that he could hardly keep his eyes _____.
A. open B. to be open C. to open D. opening
37. Can you believe that in _____ a rich country there should be _____ many poor people?
A. such; such B. so; so C. so; such D. such; so
38. There are _____ more books in our library than in theirs.
A. many B. too much C. much D. little
39. His sister is _____ than he.
A. older four years B. four years older
C. elder four years D. four years elder
40. —How _____ do you go shopping?—Once a week.
A. many B. much C. long D. often
41. You don't like him _____.
A. very B. often C. many D. much
42. My father comes home from work late every day. So he is _____ man.
A. a quite busy B. a busy quite C. quite a busy D. quite busy a
43. Do you sleep _____ every night?
A. had B. nice C. well D. good
44. The green shirt is as _____ as the yellow one.
A. cheap B. cheaper C. cheapest D. the cheapest
45. You know _____ about it than Jim does.
A. even little B. even less C. more little D. more less
46. Lucy is _____ to make a living by herself.
A. very old B. too young C. so big D. much strong
47. The school is _____ that one.
A. three times as large as B. three time large as
C. three times larger as D. as large as three times
48. The earth is getting _____.
A. warm and warm B. warmer and warm
C. warmer and warmer D. warm and warmer
49. _____ the ground is, _____ the air becomes.
A. The higher, the thinner B. Higher, thinner
C. The high, the thin D. Higher, the thinner
50. To my surprise, _____ a little boy can draw _____ many beautiful pictures.
A. such; so B. so; such C. so; so D. such; such
51. Several weeks later, Li Lei found maths _____ chemistry.
A. less difficult B. less difficult than
C. the more difficult than D. as difficult than
52. He can draw _____ an artist.
A. as well as B. not so well as C. as good as D. as better as

- 56

- A. more bad B. still worst C. even worse D. the baddest
70. Of all the apples in the paper box, this one is _____.
A. red B. reder C. redder D. the reddest
71. Of all the students in our class, Meimei does her homework _____.
A. very carefully B. the most carefully
C. more carefully D. the most careful
72. As the girl was so _____, she soon fell _____.
A. tiring; sleeping B. tired; sleeping
C. tired; asleep D. tired; sleepy
73. Which subject do you like _____, English or Chinese?
A. better B. best C. well D. very much
74. The girl was _____ when she heard the _____ words.
A. frightening, frightening B. frightened, frightened
C. frightening, frightened D. frightened, frightening
75. This city has _____ bridge.
A. a stone old fine B. a fine old stone
C. an old stone fine D. an old fine stone
76. _____ in his class is taller than he.
A. No boys B. No other boy C. No other boys D. Not all the boys
77. —Is the TV set OK now? —I'm sure there's _____ with the TV set. You can take it home.
A. something wrong B. serious something
C. nothing wrong D. some wrong things
78. Are these enough for both of you? I'm afraid not. _____ are needed.
A. Much B. Many more C. More many D. Too much
79. This chair is too small. I need _____.
A. big something B. bigger something
C. something much big D. something much bigger
80. It's getting _____ in winter.
A. cold and cold B. colder and colder
C. more and more cold D. coldest or coldest
81. _____ he sings, _____ he sings.
A. Often; better B. The often; the better
C. The oftener; the better D. The oftener; the well
82. Lucy jumped as _____ as Lily did in the long jump.
A. far B. farther C. long D. longer
83. They have held three meetings this week _____.
A. alone B. lonely C. ever D. just
84. After three days' careful treatment, the old man was _____ to go home.
A. enough good B. good enough

C. well enough

D. enough well

85. Could you pass me the cup? It's _____ my reach.

A. too far to

B. higher for

C. without

D. beyond

答案:

1~5 BDBCA

6~10 CCDBC

11~15 AADBB

16~20 BCBAC

21~25 CABDC

26~30 DCBCD

31~35 DDCBA

36~40 ADABD

41~45 DCCAB

46~50 BACAA

51~55 BAADC

56~60 CABAC

61~65 BDBDC

66~70 ADACD

71~75 BCADB

76~80 BCBDB

81~85 CAACD

(九) 动词



考纲要求

掌握系动词、助动词、情态动词、实意动词的用法和一些动词短语。



考点指向

重点是动词和动词短语的辨析。



例题解析

1. (2010 年第 13 题) Please _____ the blackboard and answer my question.

A. look for

B. wait for

C. look at

D. think of

解析: look for 是寻找; wait for 等待; look at 看; think of 考虑, 想起, 有……想法。根据句意, 应选 C。

2. (2011 年第 19 题) Each of the students _____ the opportunity to be a volunteer for the 2011 World Horticultural Expo in xi'an.

A. have

B. is

C. has

D. were

解析: 此处应选实意动词表示“有机会”, 故排除 B 和 D 选项。不定代词 each, every 所修饰的名词做主语时, 谓语动词用单数。答案选 C。

3. (2012 年第 13 题) The cookies _____ good. Could I have some more?

A. taste

B. smell

C. feel

D. sound

解析: 考查感官系动词 taste, smell, feel, sound。此处为尝起来, 答案选 A。

4. (2013 年第 14 题) Tom has to _____ himself when his parents are away from home.

A. look up

B. look after

C. look for

D. look through

解析: look after 意为照顾, look up 意为抬头看, 查找, look for 寻找, look through 仔细

查看, 浏览。答案选 B。



知识要点

动词《知识要点》部分详见本书配套教学参考资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

- How long have they _____ the computer?
A. bought B. had C. borrow D. sold
- It's raining heavily outside. Remember to _____ the raincoat to him when go there.
A. bring B. take C. carry D. buy
- She _____ these dogs at home when the Smiths are abroad.
A. looks up B. looks for C. looks after D. looks in
- It's unnecessary for us to _____ so much on these useless books.
A. cost B. spend C. take D. pay
- He _____ living in the country side to the city.
A. likes B. prefers C. enjoys D. loves
- The traffic light _____ green and I pulled away.
A. came B. switch C. got D. went
- He _____ me to give up smoking.
A. hopes B. suggests C. advises D. makes
- They _____ him working all day long.
A. had B. made C. forced D. asked
- He is too young to _____ right from wrong.
A. speak B. talk C. say D. tell
- At last he _____ worker.
A. became B. turned C. changed D. grew
- When did you _____ his letter?
A. hear from B. receive C. accept D. hear
- china has _____ a new look in the last few years.
A. broken out B. taken place C. happened D. taken on
- She is _____ her best clothes today.
A. wearing B. dressing C. putting on D. having on
- _____ your child here next time.
A. Take B. Fetch C. Get D. Bring
- The boy was made to _____ for being late for school.
A. pardon B. forgive C. excuse D. apologize
- It is hard for them to _____ a good job.

- A. look for B. find out C. find D. discover
17. How I _____ I were a happy bird.
A. hope B. wish C. want D. expect
18. Rod loves _____ clocks. However, he never manages to put them together again.
A. taking apart B. giving away
C. making up D. turning off
19. We _____ to paint the whole house but finished only the front part that day.
A. set about B. set up C. set out D. set down
20. Walking alone in the dark, the boy whistled to _____ his courage.
A. hold up B. keep up C. set up D. take up
21. The earth is our home. We must _____ the land, air and water clean.
A. change B. share C. notice D. keep
22. —May I _____ your dictionary?
—Of course. But you mustn't _____ it to others.
A. borrow; lend B. borrow; borrow
C. lend; borrow D. lend; lend
23. The VIPs from 21 countries will _____ the APEC in Shanghai this autumn.
A. hold B. take part in C. join D. attend
24. Water _____ after the big rain.
A. rose B. raised C. was risen D. was raised
25. Tim _____ until Betty arrived very late.
A. didn't stay B. waited C. left D. hurried off
26. A full moon _____ in the sky that night.
A. hung B. was hung C. hanged D. was hanged
27. Wood and stones _____ bridges in many countries.
A. used to build B. are used to building
C. are used to build D. used to building
28. The race will _____ tomorrow morning.
A. happen B. be happened C. take place D. be taken place
29. The TV _____ for 10 minutes. You may watch it if you like.
A. has begun B. has started C. has gone on D. has been on
30. When I was twenty, I had to _____ before graduation and work in a clothes shop to help support my family.
A. drop out B. came out C. leave out D. stay out
31. Is this a photo of your daughter? She looks _____ in the pink dress!
A. lovely B. quietly C. politely D. happily
32. Song Zuying's voice is very sweet and her songs _____ very beautiful.
A. taste B. sound C. smell D. feel
33. There _____ many students in the library after school every day.

- A. has B. have C. is D. are
34. Playing in the water _____ lots of fun on a hot summer day.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
35. —Do you have to get up early in the morning?
—Yes, I _____. I can't be late for school.
A. do B. can C. have D. am
36. —There _____ a charity show this weekend. Would you like to join us?
—Of course. I'd love to.
A. is B. has C. will be D. will have
37. Mary, I _____ John of his promise to help you.
A. told B. reminded C. warned D. advised
38. They are broadening the bridge to _____ the flow of traffic.
A. put off B. speed up C. turn on D. work out
39. I _____ a bank account after I made \$1,000 by doing a part-time job during the summer vacation.
A. borrowed B. opened C. entered D. ordered
40. She _____ an old friend of hers yesterday while she was shopping at the department store.
A. turned down B. dealt with C. took after D. came across
41. You can't predict everything. Often things don't _____ as you expect.
A. run out B. break out C. work out D. put out
42. Knowledge and learning are important if we want to be successful, but they may also _____ our thinking.
A. direct B. limit C. change D. improve
43. Born into a family with three brothers, David was _____ to value the sense of sharing.
A. brought up B. turned down C. looked after D. held back
44. The school isn't the one I really wanted to go to, but I suppose I'll just have to _____ it.
A. make the best of B. get away from C. keep an eye on D. catch up with
45. As the story _____, the truth about the strange figure is slowly discovered.
A. begins B. happens C. ends D. develops
46. You are old enough to _____ your own living.
A. win B. gain C. take D. earn
47. We've just moved into a bigger house and there's a lot to do. Let's _____ it.
A. keep up with B. do away with C. get down to D. look forward to
48. We give dogs time, space and love we can spare, and _____, dogs give us their all.
A. in all B. in fact C. in short D. in return
49. Jenny was looking for a seat when, luckily, a man _____ and left.
A. took up B. got up C. shut up D. set up
50. The majority of people in the town strongly _____ the plan to build a playground for

children.

A. consider

B. support

C. confirm

D. submit

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: have 是延续性动词, 可以和时间段连用。

2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: take 带走; bring 带来; carry 携带。根据句意, 应选 take。

3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: look up 向上看、查(字典); look for 寻找; look after 照看、照顾; look in: 看望; 顺道访问。

4. 【答案】B. 【解析】: spend...on 在……花费(时间或钱)。

5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: prefer...to 更喜欢……, 即 prefer A to B。在本句型中, A 与 B 是平行结构, 可以是名词, 也可以是动名词。例如: I prefer dogs to cats. 在狗与猫之间我更喜欢狗。Most people prefer trains to buses. 大多数人愿意坐火车而不愿坐汽车。I prefer writing a term paper to taking an examination. 我宁愿写一篇学期论文也不愿参加考试。

6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: went 在此为系动词用法, 表示变化, 变成。

7. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查这四个短语。advise sb to do sth, hope to do, suggest doing, make sb do。没有 hope sb to do 的形式。

8. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查短语: make sb do sth, force sb to do sth, ask sb to do sth. have sb do sth 让某人做某事(do 前的 to 省略), have sb doing sth 让某人一直做某事。

9. 【答案】D. 【解析】: tell right from wrong 辨别是非。

10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: turn worker=become a worker。

11. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 干扰项为 A. hear from。Hear from 后跟人, 不跟物, 故不能选 A. hear from。应选 receive, receive one's letter 收到某人的来信。

12. 【答案】D. 【解析】: take on 呈现, break out 爆发, take place, 发生, 举行, happen 发生。此句为: 在近几年里, 中国呈现出崭新的面貌。

13. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查表示“穿”的动词辨析: wear: “穿、穿着、戴着”, 强调状态。wear 后面接可穿戴的东西, 也包括眼镜、首饰等, 可用于进行时态。put on “穿上、戴上”, 指“穿”的动作, 反义词为“take off”。例: You should put on your jacket. 你应该把夹克穿上。dress 穿衣, 作及物动词, 后接人做宾语, 意为“给某人穿衣服”例如: Will you dress the children? 你给小孩们穿衣服好吗? 注: dress 的宾语一般是表示人的名词, 而不是表示衣服的名词。be dressed in 指某人在某场合穿什么衣服。have on 指“穿”后状态, 后可接衣服、帽子、鞋子等能穿戴的东西, 但它不能用于进行式。例: He has on a blue coat today. 今天他穿一件蓝上衣。

14. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意: 下次将你的孩子带来。bring 带来, take 带走, fetch 去拿来, 故选 D。

15. 【答案】D. 【解析】: apologize 道歉, pardon, forgive, excuse 均为原谅的意思。句意为: 这个男孩被迫因上学迟到而道歉。

16. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意: 他们很难找到一个好工作。词义辨析: look for 寻找, 侧重动作。后面加找的东西。I'm looking for my watch. 我正在找我的手表。find 强调在经过“寻找”(look for)后“找的结果”(找到或找不到), 又可以表示“(偶然地)发现……”; 如: I found a watch on the road. 我在路上发现了一块手表。I found my cat asleep in my bed. 我发现猫睡在我的床上。find out 通常表示“弄明白, 搞清楚, 查明……”。如 The teacher wanted to find out who had broken the door. 老师想查明是谁弄坏了门。discover 指“发现”某种本来存在, 而以前未被发现的事物或未为人所知的东西。如: I discovered (that) she was a good cook. 我发现她是个烹饪好手。

17. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 该句为虚拟语气, 只有 wish 后的从句有虚拟用法。故选 wish。

18. 【答案】A. 【解析】: A 项意为“拆开; 拆卸”; B 项意为“赠送, 泄露”; C 项意为“编造、弥补、化装”; D 项意为“关掉”。根据句意, 可知, Rod 喜欢拆卸钟表, 然而, 他从来都不能再重新装好。故应选 A。

19. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本题考查 set 短语辨析。set about 开始做……, 后接名词、动名词; set up 建立; set out 开始做……, 后接不定式; set down 写下, 记下。根据 to paint 可知选 set out。句意: 那天我们开始粉刷整个房子但只完成了前面的部分。

20. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查动词短语辨析。句意: 独自在黑暗中行走, 男孩吹口哨保持勇气。B 项意为“维持, 不使低落”, 符合句意。A 项意为“举起”; C 项意为“建立”; D 项意为“拿起”。

21. 【答案】D. 【解析】: keep + 宾语 (the land, air and water) + 宾语补足语 (clean), 根据句意: 我们必须保持土地, 空气, 水的干净。故选 keep。

22. 【答案】A. 【解析】: borrow 借来, lend 借给, 借出。第一空为借来, 第二空为借出, 故选 A。

23. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 参加会议应用 attend。

24. 【答案】A. 【解析】: rise 是不及物动词, 表示“升起”, 例: The sun is rising. raise 是及物动词, 表示“举起”, 例: Raise your hands. The worker demand the manager to raise their salary. 工人们要求加薪水。句意为河水在雨后上涨。应用不及物动词 rise。

25. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据句意, 应选 wait。until 在此解释“直到……为止”。

26. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 当 hang 用来表示悬挂的时候过去式和过去分词是 hung hung, 当用来表示绞死, 上吊的时候过去式和过去分词是 hanged, hanged。此处表示悬挂且为主动, 故选 A。

27. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意: 木头和石头在许多国家被用来建桥。be used to 当习惯做某事时, 由于 to 是介词, 所以要加动名词 doing; used to do 过去常常做某事, 过去曾做某事 Tom used to live here. 汤姆曾在这儿住过。别外: be used to do 被用于做 Bamboos are used to build houses there. 那儿的竹子被用于建造房屋。

28. 【答案】C. 【解析】: take place 常指“(某事)按计划进行或按计划发生。”如: Great changes have taken place in China since. take place 还有“举行”之意。如: The meeting will take place next Friday. happen 常指具体事件的发生, 特别指那些偶然的或未能预见的“发生”。如: New things are happening all around us. Happen 还可表示“碰巧; 恰好”之意。如: It happened that I had no money on me. 另外, take place 和 happen 无被动。故应选 take place。

29. 【答案】D. 【解析】: be on 为延续性动词, 可以和 for 10 minutes 连用。

30. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 题意为“在 20 岁时, 我不得不辍学到一家服装店工作以帮助养活我的家人。”从题意可知, 空缺处应该是“辍学”之意, 四个选项中, 只有 A 选项的 drop out 有此意, 故答案为 A。

31. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查连系动词的用法。连系动词 looks 后需用形容词作表语。B、C、D 三项均为副词, 故选 A。题意为“这是你女儿的照片吗? 她穿这件粉红色衣服真可爱!”

32. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查感官系动词 taste, smell, feel, sound. 此处为听起来, 故选 B。

33. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 此处为 there be 句型。因为主语为 many students, 所以谓语应用复数。

34. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 动名词短语 playing in the water 作主语, 谓语动词用单数 has, has 的意思是“有”, 故选 C。

35. 【答案】A. 【解析】: do 提问, 应用 do 回答。

36. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 this weekend 推知此题考查 there be 结构的一般将来时, 即 there will be 或 there is going to be 形式, 而选项中只有 will be, 故选 C。

37. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意: 玛丽, 我提醒了约翰他要帮你的诺言。本题考查动词短语搭配。remind

sb.of sth. “使某人想起某事或提醒某人做某事”，符合语境，故 B 项为正确答案。warn sb.of sth. 警告某人某事；advise sb.of sth. “通知/(正式)告知某人某事”，相当于 tell sb.about sth.

38. 【答案】B. 【解析】：句意：他们正拓宽桥面来加快车流速度。put off 推迟，推延；speed up 加快速度；turn on 打开，接通；取决于；work out 算出；弄懂；产生结果。由题干中的关键信息 broadening 和 the flow of traffic 可知，此处填 speed up “加快速度”。

39. 【答案】B. 【解析】：句意：我在暑假做兼职工作挣了 1 000 美元之后在银行开了个账户。borrow 借(入)；open 开设；enter 进入；order 命令。根据句意可确定选 B 项。

40. 【答案】D. 【解析】：句意：昨天她在百货商店购物时偶遇了一位老朋友。turn down 调低，拒绝；deal with 处理，对付；take after 与……相像；come across 偶然碰到。根据句意可确定选 D 项。

41. 【答案】C. 【解析】：句意：你不能预料一切，事情常常不按你预期的那样发展。run out 用完，用尽；break out 爆发；work out 算出，做出，制订出，发生，发展；put out 熄灭。根据句意知选 C 项。

42. 【答案】B. 【解析】：句意：我们要想成功，知识和学习是很重要的，但它们也可能会限制我们的思考。direct 指导；limit 限制；change 改变；improve 改进。由 but 可知，前后在意义上是转折关系，故选 B 项。

43. 【答案】A. 【解析】：句意：出生在一个有三个哥哥的家庭里，戴维被教导要重视分享意识。bring up 养育，抚养，教育；turn down 拒绝，(把声音等)调低；look after 照料，照看；hold back 阻挡，妨碍，控制(感情)，隐瞒不讲。根据句意可知 A 项正确。

44. 【答案】A. 【解析】：句意：这所学校并不是我真正想去的学校，但是我想充分利用它。make the best of 充分利用；get away from 逃离；keep an eye on 照看，留神；catch up with 赶上。结合句意可知 A 项合适。

45. 【答案】D. 【解析】：句意为“随着故事的展开，这个神秘数字的真相渐渐地被解开了。”develop 开发，发展，把(主题或情节)逐步展现出来。根据句意选 D。

46. 【答案】D. 【解析】：句意为“你长大了，可以自谋生路了。”earn one's living 谋生，固定搭配。应选 D。

47. 【答案】C. 【解析】：动词词组辨析，A. keep up with 保持 B. do away with 废除，去掉；C. get down to 着手处理；D. look forward to 盼望，期待。应选 C。

48. 【答案】D. 【解析】：in all 共计 in fact 实际上 in short 简而言之 in return 以作为回报。应选 D。

49. 【答案】B. 【解析】：get up 意为“起床，起立”。句意为“Jenny 正在找一个座位，正在那时，很幸运地，一个人站起来离开了。”故选 B。A 项意为“从事，占据时间或空间”；C 项意为“闭嘴”；D 项意为“建造，搭起”。应选 B。

50. 【答案】B. 【解析】：分析四个选项的意思：consider 考虑，思考，认为等；support 支持，拥护，维持；confirm 证实，确认；submit 使屈服，使经受，提交，呈送。根据语境：镇上的大多数人都积极地拥护为孩子们建造运动场的计划。应选 B。

(十) 情态动词



考纲要求

常见情态动词 can, may, must, ought to, need 和 dare 等的基本用法。



考点指向

情态动词的疑问形式、否定形式，表能力、请求、建议、推测、虚拟的用法。



经典解析

1. (2010 年 18 小题) —May we leave the classroom now?

—No, you _____. You _____ to leave until the bell rings.

A. wouldn't; are allowed

B. aren't; are supposed

C. don't; aren't allowed

D. can't; aren't supposed

解析：本题考查情态动词表示允许、请求，本题上句“现在我们可以离开教室吗？”，下句应为“不，你不能。你不应该在铃声响之前离开”。因此答案为 D。

2. (2012 年 14 小题) You are in the library! So you _____ know shouting is not allowed here.

A. can

B. must

C. could

D. would

解析：本题考查情态动词表示推测的用法，从后句可知“你一定知道这儿不允许大喊大叫”，must 当“一定”讲，因此答案为 B。

3. Professor Li _____ be in Beijing because I saw him in town only a few minutes ago.

A. mustn't

B. can not

C. may not

D. isn't able to

解析：根据题干内容推断出本题考查情态动词表推测的用法，由后句中“I saw him in town only a few minutes ago”，判断“李教授不可能在北京”，否定推测用 cannot，因此答案为 B。

4. I told him to get here but perhaps I _____ him a map.

A. should have given

B. had to give

C. ought to give

D. must have given

解析：本题考查情态动词表虚拟的用法，意为“我本该给他地图”，再根据前句“told”可知时态为过去时，对过去的虚拟用“情态动词 + have done”，因此答案为 A。

5. “No smoking” means you _____ smoke here.

A. won't

B. needn't

C. mustn't

D. shouldn't

解析：本题考查情态动词表建议的用法，选项中 C 和 D 都可以来表建议，mustn't 表示禁止，有强制性，should 只表建议，无强制意味。题干意为“禁止”，因此答案为 C。

6. —What would you do this afternoon?

—I _____ rather stay at home and do nothing but sleep.

A. would

B. could

C. should

D. ought to

解析：本题考查情态动词的固定搭配 would rather do, would 表示“意愿”，因此答案为 A。

7. —Shall we go to the cinema or stay home?

—I _____ rather stay at home and do nothing but sleep.

A. do

B. would

C. will

D. could

解析：本题考查情态动词的固定搭配 would rather do, 因此答案为 B。

8. Tom went on foot, but I think he _____ by bus.

- A. might go B. may go C. could have gone D. ought have gone

解析: 本题考查情态动词表虚拟的用法, 首先根据前句中的 went 判断时态为过去时, 再根据语境判断出 “Tom 本可以坐公交车去而没有”, 本句是对过去时的虚拟, 用 could have done, 因此答案为 C。

9. Tom can join us, _____ he?

- A. can B. can't C. does D. doesn't

解析: 本题考查情态动词的疑问形式, 情态动词具有助动词的功能, 一般疑问句的表达法是将情态动词提到主语前, 本句为反义疑问句, 首先要看前半句中的助动词, 再根据前肯后否、前否后肯的规则, 本题题干中前部分为情态动词 can, 后部分则应该为 can not, 因此答案为 B。

10. It _____ be a good idea to have such an article in our newspaper.

- A. can't B. shan't C. needn't D. mustn't

解析: 本题考查情态动词表推测, must 表肯定推测, can't 表否定推测, 本句为否定推测, 因此答案为 A。

11. If you smell gas in your house, you have to act immediately. You _____ not delay.

- A. could B. might C. must D. will

解析: 本题考查情态动词表必须的用法, must 作 “必须” 讲, mustn't “禁止, 绝不可以”。句意为 “你绝不可以耽误”。因此答案为 C。

12. _____ that man be Mr Smith?

- A. Can B. Must C. Need D. Will

解析: 本题考查情态动词表推测的用法, 疑问句中通常用 can 或 could, 因此选 A。

13. Lian Xitong didn't come to class. She _____ be ill.

- A. can B. may C. should D. must

解析: 本题考查情态动词表推测的用法, 肯定推测用 must, 因此选 D。

14. —Would you mind if I smoke here?

—_____.

- A. You can't B. You'd better not
C. Yes, please D. Smoking is harmful

解析: 情态动词 would 表示征求对方意见或提出请求, 语气比较婉转。Would you mind 后跟 if 从句时用来表示询问对方是否介意某人干某事。若表示 “不介意” 或 “同意”, 常用否定形式。若表示 “介意” 或 “不同意”, 则常用比较婉转的方式拒绝。如: I'm sorry but I do; Sorry, you'd better not; I'm afraid you can't. 句意为 “你介意我在这儿吸烟吗?”, 因此答案为 B。

15. Since the ground is wet, it _____ last night.

- A. should have rained B. had rained
C. must rain D. must have rained

解析: must + have done 表示对过去的肯定推测, 句意为 “既然地面是湿的, 昨晚一定下雨了”, 因此答案选 D。

16. I'm not feeling well in the stomach. I _____ so much fried chicken just now.

- A. shouldn't eat B. mustn't eat
C. shouldn't have eaten D. mustn't have eaten

解析: 本题考查情态动词表虚拟的用法, 句意为“我感觉胃不舒服, 我刚才本不应该吃那么多的油炸鸡”。shouldn't have done 意为“本不应该做某事而做了”, 因此答案选 C。



知识要点

情态动词的《知识要点》详见本书配套教学参考资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

- Could I borrow your dictionary?
—Yes, of course, you _____.
A. might B. will C. can D. could
- Will you _____ solve the problem?
A. can B. could C. be able to D. are able to
- We hope that as many people as possible _____ join us for the picnic tomorrow.
A. need B. must C. should D. can
- According to the air traffic rules, you _____ switch off your mobile phone before boarding.
A. may B. can C. would D. should
- John promised his doctor he _____ not smoke.
A. might B. should C. could D. would
- _____ you be happy!
A. May B. Can C. Must D. Would
- Must we come tomorrow?
—No, _____.
A. you can't B. you needn't C. you mustn't D. you may not
- Might I sit here?
—Yes, you _____.
A. might B. could C. would D. may
- He _____ go out at night alone.
A. dares not B. dare not C. dares not to D. does not dare
- We didn't see him at the meeting.
—Neither did anybody else. He _____ it.
A. may not have attended B. mustn't attend
C. can't have attended D. couldn't attend
- I came here by taxi and the driver charged me 50 Yuan.
—Really? You _____ have come by bus.
A. could B. must C. may D. should
- Why didn't you tell me there was no meeting today? I _____ all the way here through the

heavy storm.

- A. needn't have driven B. can't have driven
C. must have driven D. shouldn't have driven
13. —No one passed the examination today.
—We _____ the exercises last night.
A. could go over B. should go over
C. might go over D. should have gone over
14. It _____ last night, for the ground is wet.
A. may rain B. can have rained
C. might rain D. must have rained
15. Hurry up, our teacher _____ for us at the school gate.
A. must be waiting B. must wait
C. might waiting D. can be waited
16. —Lang Lang could play the piano very well at very young age.
—Oh, he _____ have gift in music.
A. could B. should C. might D. must
17. The fire spread through the hotel very quickly but everyone _____ get out.
A. had to B. would C. could D. was able to
18. —Is your brother coming by taxi?
—He should, but he _____ not. He likes driving his car.
A. must B. can C. need D. may
19. I thought you _____ like something to read, so I have brought some magazines for you.
A. may B. might C. could D. must
20. — _____ he open the door?
—Yes, please.
A. Shall B. Will C. Can D. Would
21. It _____ be a good idea to have such an article in our newspaper.
A. can't B. mustn't C. may not D. might not
22. We _____ play football together when we were very young.
A. shall B. should C. will D. would
23. —I wonder why they are late.
—They _____ the train.
A. could miss B. might miss C. must have missed D. can't have missed
24. He _____ the examination _____ he wasn't careful enough.
A. would pass; because B. could have passed; if
C. should have passed; but D. had passed; so
25. Without his help, we _____ such rapid progress.
A. didn't make B. don't make
C. would not make D. would not have made

26. Henry_____be at home because he phoned me from the farm just now.
A. mustn't B. isn't able to C. may not D. can't
27. Lian Bolin could hardly see the words on the blackboard,_____?
A. did he B. couldn't he C. didn't he D. could he
28. We'll go for a picnic if it _____this Friday.
A. won't rain B. isn't raining C. doesn't rain D. don't rain
29. There will be a volleyball match in our school, _____?
A. be there B. is there C. will there D. won't there
30. Buses and cars_____stop when the traffic lights are red.
A. can B. must C. may D. need
31. —How do you like Hangzhou, Miss Lu?
—Sorry, I_____there.
A. have gone B. have been C. haven't gone D. haven't been
32. —Listen! Somebody is singing in the next room. Who_____it be?Is it John?
—No, it _____be him.He is at school now.
A. will; may not B. must; mustn't C. may; can't D. may; won't
33. —Excuse me, will you please tell me the way to the railway station?
—Oh, sorry, but I don't know. You _____ask that policeman.
A. may B. must C. would D. should
34. —What's wrong with my bike?
—It's broken, but it_____in an hour.
A. can be mended B. must mend C. can mend D. must be mended
35. —Children all like this book.
—I think it_____very interesting.
A. need be B. must be C. may be D. can be
36. —May I go to the cinema, Dad?
—No, you_____. You must finish your homework first.
A. mustn't B. won't C. don't D. needn't
37. To make our hometown more beautiful, you_____throw rubbish into the river.
A. needn't B. mustn't C. must D. may
38. She_____know the answer, but I'm not sure.
A. maybe B. may be C. may D. must
39. The city cleaners_____repeat their work many times a day during the dust-storm.
A. may B. can C. might D. have to
40. —Must I go with them tomorrow?
—No, you_____.
A. mustn't B. shouldn't C. needn't D. can't
41. —_____I have your name, please?
—Yes, Mike.M-I-K-E.

- A. Must B. Will C. May D. Need
42. _____ you pass me a pen? I'd like to write down the telephone number.
A. Need B. Could C. Must D. Should
43. _____ you be happy!
A. May B. Can C. Must D. Would
44. Since the road is wet this morning, _____ last night.
A. it must rain B. it must have rained
C. it must be rained D. it must have been rained
45. I _____ such a mistake again.
A. shall never make B. can never do
C. will never make D. need never do
46. I _____ it again.
A. would like you to read B. would like that you read
C. would like you reading D. would like you read
47. You had better _____ late next time.
A. not be B. not to be C. being not D. to be not
48. _____ open the door for you?
A. Would you like that I B. Do you want me
C. Will I D. Shall I
49. As the English is difficult enough, I _____ study it.
A. cannot B. am not able to C. can't D. am not able
50. _____ you like some tea now?
A. Could B. Would C. Might D. Should

答案:

1~5 CCDDD 6~10 ABDBC 11~15 AADDA 16~20 DDDBA 21~25 ADCCD
26~30 DDCDB 31~35 DCAAB 36~40 ABCDC 41~45 CBABA 46~50 AADBB

(十一) 动词的时态



考纲要求

掌握一般现在时、一般过去时、一般将来时、过去将来时、现在进行时、过去进行时、现在完成时和过去完成时这八种时态，以及这八个时态在用法上的区别。



考点指向

1. 八种时态的基本用法。

2. 时态与被动语态相结合。
3. 时态与主谓一致相结合。



例题解析

1. (2011 年第 6 题) I spent two weeks in Chicago last summer. _____ there before?

A. Did you go B. Have you been C. Have you gone D. Had you gone

解析: 根据语境, 应用现在完成时。此题还考查了 have been to 和 have gone to 的区别。have been to 表示“曾经到过某地”, have gone to 表示“到某地去了(还未回来)”。应选 B。

2. (2011 年第 15 题) He told me that he _____ to Tokyo to work the next year.

A. go B. went C. would go D. had gone

解析: 宾语从句中的谓语动词时态应和主句时态一致, 由 the next year 可知用过去将来时。应选 C。

3. (2012 年第 10 题) —Where are you going for your holiday?

—well, we _____ yet.

A. haven't decided B. hadn't decided C. don't decided D. didn't decided

解析: yet 常和现在完成时连用, 故选 A。



知识要点

动词的时态《知识要点》详见本书数学资料包。



强化训练

1. You can't move in right now. The house _____.
A. has painted B. is painted C. is being painted D. is painting
2. We would like to go and thank him ourselves, but we _____ out his address yet.
A. have't found B. hadn't found C. didn't find D. don't find
3. See the clouds! It _____ rain!
A. will B. is going to C. must D. certainly
4. Don't take the magazine away. It _____ me.
A. is belong to B. belongs to C. was belong to D. is belong to
5. My uncle said that he would telephone but I _____ from him so far.
A. didn't hear B. hadn't heard C. haven't heard D. won't hear
6. My uncle _____ until he was forty.
A. married B. didn't marry C. was not marrying D. would marry
7. I first met Lisa three years ago. She _____ at a radio shop at the time.
A. has worked B. was working C. had been working D. had worked

8. A new cinema _____ here. They hope to finish it next month.
A. will be built B. is built C. has been built D. is being built
9. —Nancy is not coming tonight.
—But she _____!
A. promise B. promised C. will promise D. had promised
10. E-mail, as well as telephones, _____ an important part in daily communication.
A. is playing B. have played C. are playing D. play
11. Hundreds of jobs _____ if the factory closes.
A. lose B. will be lost C. are lost D. will lose
12. Little Tony is generally healthy, but every now and then he _____ a cold.
A. has caught B. is catching C. will catch D. catches
13. —Let's discuss the question raised last night, shall we?
—There is no hurry for that. I _____ for a conference.
A. headed B. was heading C. am heading D. have headed
14. Send my regards to your lovely wife if you _____ home.
A. wrote B. will write C. have written D. write
15. This story _____ in 1981.
A. was taken place B. is taken place
C. took place D. had taken place
16. —I'm not finished with my dinner yet.
—But our friends _____ for us.
A. will wait B. wait C. have waited D. are waiting
17. I _____ all the cooking for my family, but recently I've been too busy to do it.
A. will do B. do C. am doing D. had done
18. —Peter, where did you go for the summer vacation?
—We _____ busy with our work for months, so we went to the beach to relax ourselves.
A. were B. have been C. had been D. will be
19. It is the first time that she _____ Beijing.
A. visits B. visited C. has visited D. had visited
20. We won't go out for a trip if it _____ not fine tomorrow.
A. will be B. would be C. is D. was
21. —We could have walked to the station. It was so near.
—Yes, a taxi _____ at all necessary.
A. wasn't B. hadn't been C. couldn't be D. won't be
22. —Do you like the new pen?
—Yes, it _____ very well.
A. is written B. is writing C. writes D. wrote
23. Helen _____ her key in the office, so she had to wait until her husband came home.
A. had left B. has left C. left D. leaves

24. The notice _____ "No smoking".
A. is wrote B. reads C. writes D. is read
25. I _____ pong-pang quite well, but I haven't had time to play since the new year.
A. will play B. have played C. played D. play
26. Visitors _____ not to touch the exhibits.
A. will request B. are requested C. are requesting D. request
27. The volleyball match will be put off if it _____.
A. will rain B. rains C. rained D. is raining
28. I bought a new house, but I _____ my old one yet, so at the moment I have two houses.
A. didn't sell B. sold C. haven't sold D. would sell
29. This novel _____ well.
A. sells B. is sold C. will be sold D. has been sold
30. I first met Tom 10 years ago. He _____ in a radio factory at that time.
A. had worked B. has worked
C. was working D. has been working
31. Experiments of this kind _____ in both the U.S. and Europe well before the Second World War.
A. have conducted B. have been conducted
C. had conducted D. had been conducted
32. —That must have been a long trip.
—Yeah, it _____ us a whole week to get there.
A. takes B. has taken C. took D. was taking
33. —Bob has gone to California.
—Oh, can you tell me when he _____?
A. has left B. left C. is leaving D. would leave
34. In the last few years thousands of films _____ all over the world.
A. have produced B. have been produced
C. are producing D. are being produced
35. On her next birthday, Ann _____ married for twenty years.
A. is B. has been C. will be D. will have been
36. A lot of people often forget that oral exams _____ to test our communicative ability.
A. design B. are designed
C. are designing D. are being designed
37. When I got on the bus, I _____ I had left my wallet at home.
A. was realizing B. realized
C. have realized D. would realize
38. She was surprised to find the fridge empty; the child _____ everything!
A. had been eating B. had eaten
C. have eaten D. have been eating

39. —I hear you _____ in a pub. what's it like?
—Well, it's very hard work and I'm always tired, but I don't mind.
A. are working B. will work C. were working D. will be working
40. Last month, the Japanese government expressed their thanks for the aid they _____ from China.
A. receive B. are receiving C. have received D. had received
41. All visitors to this village _____ with kindness.
A. treat B. are treated C. are treating D. had been treated
42. That piece of music sounds quite familiar. Who _____ the piano upstairs?
A. has played B. played C. plays D. is playing
43. His first novel _____ good reviews since it came out last month.
A. receives B. is receiving C. will receive D. has received
44. —John, what _____ in your hand?
—Look! It's a birthday gift for my grandma.
A. had you held B. are you holding C. do you hold D. will you hold
45. In 1492, Columbus _____ on one of the Bahama Islands, but he mistook it for an island of India.
A. lands B. landed C. has landed D. had landed
46. It is the most instructive lecture that I _____ since I came to this school.
A. attended B. had attended C. am attending D. have attended
47. In the near future, more advances in the robot technology _____ by scientists.
A. are making B. are made C. will make D. will be made
48. By the time Jack returned home from England, his son _____ from college.
A. graduated B. has graduated C. had been graduating D. had graduated
49. When you are home, give a call to let me know you _____ safely.
A. are arriving B. have arrived C. had arrived D. will arrive
50. You've failed to do what you _____ to and I'm afraid the teacher will blame you.
A. will expect B. will be expected C. expected D. were expected

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意是你现在不能搬进去, 因为房子在装修, 应该用被动时态, 而且是现在进行时。
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 关键词为 yet. 在现在完成时的句子中, already 常用于肯定句, yet 常用于否定句和疑问句, 此处应用现在完成时。
3. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 含有某种迹象时用 be going to (云当然是下雨的征兆)
4. 【答案】B. 【解析】: belong to 意思是“属于”, 且无被动, 应选 B.
5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: so far 表示“迄今为止”, 故用现在完成时。
6. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题是考查 until 的用法。如果 until 前的谓语动词是短暂性动词要用 not...until; 如果前面是持续性动词, 则直接用 until。

7. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据前半句 met 可知动作发生在过去, 再根据后半句中的 at the time 在那时, 说明当时她正在那里工作, 故用过去进行时。

8. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 现在进行时的被动语态。从后半句他们下月就希望完工可以看得出是正在被建设。

9. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 表示过去承诺, 所以用过去式。

10. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 当主语后面跟有 as well as 引导的词组时, 其谓语动词的单复数按主语的单复数而定。该句主语的中心词 E-mail 是第三人称单数, 所以谓语动词也应用第三人称单数。动词短语 play an important part 意思是“起重要作用”, 答案为 A。例如: She as well as the other students has learned how to use this new dictionary. 她和其他学生一样, 也学会了如何使用这本新词典。

11. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题从句中谓语动词虽然形式上使用一般现在时, 却表达了将来的情况。主句中也应是陈述将来的情形, 因此使用一般将来时。又由于 jobs 与 lost 之间是被动关系, 必须使用被动语态。故应用一般将来时态的被动语态。

12. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由 every now and then 可知, 应用一般现在时。故选 D。

13. 【答案】C. 【解析】: be doing 也可以表示将来时, 我要去参加一个会议。这里意思是: 我们讨论一下昨晚提出的那个问题好吗? 那个不急的, 我现在要先去开个会。head for 去做……事情。

14. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 在 if 引导的条件状语从句中, 用一般现在时代替将来时。

15. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由时间状语 in 1981 可知用过去时态, take place 无被动, 故应选 C。

16. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为: 我们的朋友正在等我们。故用现在进行时。

17. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为: 我一直为家人做饭。故应用一般现在时。

18. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 过去完成时。过去完成时表示的是过去的过去, 题目中 went to the beach 是过去时, 因为工作很忙是 went to the beach 之前的事, 因此是过去的过去发生的事。所以选 C。

19. 【答案】C. 【解析】: “It's the + 序数词 + time that sb. + 现在完成时”这是固定搭配。翻译: 这是她第一次来北京。

20. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 if 引导的条件状语从句, 时态应该是“主将从现”, 就是说如果主句用一般将来时, 则从句用一般现在时表示将来。例如 If it doesn't rain tomorrow, I will visit my former school.

21. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 前面一句 could have walked 说明他们之前是坐出租车来的, 所以可以确定这里用过去时。

22. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句子是“这支笔书写流利”的意思, 虽然逻辑上 pen 与 write 之间是被动关系, 但此处用主动表被动。又因为 it 是主语, 所以要填 writes。

23. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 she had to wait 这句可以看出时态是过去, 把钥匙落在办公室是在等她丈夫之前, 时态应该是过去的过去, 即过去完成时。

24. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 广告、通知、通告上写着什么都用“read”这个词, 还可以用 say。并且用主动形式。

25. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 此句表示: 我乒乓球一直打得很好, 但新的一年没有时间玩。所以前面应该用一般现在时。

26. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 因为说的是一条规定, 所以用一般现在时, 而 visitor 与 request 之间是被动关系, 因此需要用被动语态。

27. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 if 引导的条件状语从句, 时态应该是“主将从现”, 所以此处 if 引导的条件状语从句用一般现在时翻译: 如果下雨, 排球比赛将被推迟。

28. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意为: 我买了一个新房, 但我还没卖掉旧房, 因此目前我有两套房。由 yet 可知, 应用现在完成时态。

29. 【答案】A. 【解析】: lock, wash, sell, read, wear, write 这些词用来描述主语的属性特征时, 用主动表被动。如: The pen writes well/smoothly. 这支笔很好写。(笔的特点) This kind of T-shirt washes well. 这

种衣服很好洗。

30. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 at that time 可知, 应用过去进行时表示。

31. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为“就在二战爆发前, 美国和欧洲都进行过这种实验。”首先考虑语态, 主语 experiment 与 conduct 构成动宾关系, 谓语使用被动形式。题干中出现 the second war 是过去的时间点, before the second war 是过去的过去, 因此使用过去完成时。故选 D。

32. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意为“——那一定是长途旅行。——是的, 我们花了整整一周时间才赶到那儿。”题干中 must have done 是对过去的肯定推测, 提示时间在过去, 描述过去的情况, 排除 A 和 B 项, D 项 was taking 进行时态表示将来, 但事实上事情已发生, 这与题意不符, 因此选 C。

33. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为“——Bob 已经去了加利福尼亚。——噢, 你能告诉我他什么时候离开的?” Bob has gone to California, 去的动作已经发生过, 说明他离开的动作发生在过去, 因此使用一般过去时。故选 B。

34. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为“在过去的几年时间里, 全世界制作了成千上万部电影。”in the last few years 在过去的几年时间里, 其实是从过去算到现在, 是现在完成时的标志。故选 B。

35. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为“等到下次生日的时候, Ann 结婚有二十年了。”her next birthday 是将来的时间, for twenty years 是个时间段。将来完成时表示持续到将来某时的动作或状态, 故选 D。

36. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为“很多人经常忘记设计口语测试是用来检测我们的交际能力的。”一般现在时表示经常性动作或状态时, 常与 often, always, usually, sometimes, every day 等时间状语连用。oral exams 与 design 的关系存在着被动关系, 故选 B。

37. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为“当我上了车后, 我才意识到我把钱包落在家里了。”I had left my wallet at home 发生在 realized 之前, 前一句 When I got on the bus 给出的时间起点是过去时, 故选 B。

38. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为“她惊讶地发现冰箱里空空的; 她的孩子把里面的东西全吃光了!”“吃光”这个动作发生在“发现”之前, 前一句交代了过去时间, 因此选择过去的过去。故选 B。

39. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 句意为“——我听说你在酒吧里上班, 这份工作怎么样? ——咳, 这是份辛苦活, 老感到累, 不过我不介意。”对话所用的现在时表明现在还在酒吧里上班, 用现在进行时描述现阶段长期重复的一个动作。故选 A。

40. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为“上个月, 日本政府对来自于中国的援助表示了感谢。”expressed 是过去时, 接受中国的援助发生在 expressed 之前, 是过去的过去, 故用过去完成时。故选 D。

41. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为“所有到这个村子的来访者都会受到善意的接待。”表示经常性或习惯性的动作, 用一般现在时。来访者与招待存在着被动关系。由于没有交代过去时间, had been treated 过去的过去不能用。因此选 B。

42. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为“那首乐曲听起来相当熟悉。是谁在楼上弹钢琴?”在听的过程中才发出谁在弹钢琴的疑问, sound 用的是现在时, 交代的时间是现在, 故选 D。

43. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为“他的第一本小说自上个月出版以来受到了好评。”since 自从……以来, 引导含有过去时的从句时, 主句用现在完成时。故选 D。

44. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为“——John, 你手里拿的是什么? ——看, 这是给我奶奶的生日礼物。”两人对话以现在时间为参考点, 现在(说话人说话时)对方 hold 这个动作正在发生, 故用现在进行时。故选 B。

45. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意为“在 1492 年, 哥伦布登上了巴哈马群岛, 但他误以为是印度的岛屿。”in 1492 是过去时的标志, 后面叙述的是在这一年里发生的事情。题目没有明确说明“登陆”是发生在“误解”之前的动作, 因此, 这两个行为都统一在 1492 年里, 排除 D, 故选 B。

46. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为“自从我到这个学校以来, 这是我所听到的最有教育意义的演讲。”since 自从……以来, 引导过去时的从句时, 主句用现在完成时。故选 D。

47. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为“在不久的将来, 科学家将会在机器人技术上取得更大的进展。” in the near future 表明了将来的时间, more advances 与 make 主谓关系上存在着被动, 故选 D。

48. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意为“当杰克从英国返回家时, 他的儿子已经大学毕业了。” by the time 到……时候为止, 一般与完成时连用。故选 D。

49. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意: 当你到家的时候, 打电话给我让我知道你已经到家了。此题可以根据句意也可以使用排除法。句意为“当你到家的时候, 打电话给我让我知道你已经到家了”。B 选项使用现在完成时表示将来完成, 译为“已经……”。同时也可以使用排除法, arrive 既可以使用现在进行时表示将来, 也可以用 will + do 表示将来, 因此选项 A 和 D 同时排除, C 为过去完成时, 使用过去完成时时句中一定要有一般过去时, 过去完成时是过去的过去, 因此选项 C 也排除, 故选择 B。

50. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句中 you 与 expect 存在被动关系, 首先排除选项 C。又由 have failed 提示应是过去你被期盼做的事, 故应为过去时, 正确答案为 D。

(十二) 被动语态



1. 一般现在时的被动式
2. 一般过去时的被动式
3. 一般将来时的被动式
3. 含情态动词的被动式



分清主动语态和被动语态的区别, 不同时态的被动语态的表达方式以及被动语态助动词的用法区别。



1. The stars _____ in the daytime.

A. can't see B. weren't seen C. can't be seen D. see

解析: 首先 the stars 和 see 是被动关系, 即星星被看, 被动语态的构成为 be + done, 所以排除选项 A 和 D, 又根据题中的时间状语 “in the daytime”, 判断时态为一般现在时, 故选 C。

2. Mary _____ on May 1, 1999.

A. will be born B. has born C. was born D. have been

解析: 首先 Mary 和 bear 是被动关系, 即 Mary 被生, 故排除选项 B 和 D, 又根据时间状语 “on May 1, 1999”, 判断时态为一般过去时, 故排除 A, 答案选 C。

3. Look! A new hospital _____ near my house.

A. has built B. have built C. is being built D. was being built

解析: 首先 a new hospital 和 built 之间为被动关系, 故排除选项 A 和 B, 再根据说话人的语气确定时态为现在进行时, 故排除选项 D, 答案选 C。

4. I _____ at the news of her death.

- A. shocked B. was shocked C. was shocking D. have shocked

解析: I 和 shock 之间是被动关系, 故选 B。

5. I promise that your children will _____ while you are away.

- A. take care B. take care of C. be taken care of D. be taken care

解析: 首先 your children 和 take care of 之间为被动关系, 故排除 A 和 B, 又因 D 项缺少介词 of, 所以选 C。

6. Great changes _____ in our village since 2001.

- A. have been taken place B. have taken place
C. have been taken on D. have taken on

解析: take place 无被动语态, 故选 B。

7. It _____ that an important meeting will be held in our city.

- A. reports B. said C. is reported D. is saying

解析: It is reported that... (据报道) 句中 that 引导的主语从句与谓语动词 report 为被动关系, 故选 C。

8. It must be very cold outside. Your hand _____.

- A. is felt so cold B. feels so cold
C. feels so coldly D. is feeling so coldly

解析: feel 作动词表示某物摸起来给人的感觉, 通常要以被摸之物作主语。Your hand feels cold. “你的手摸起来很凉”。如: Ice feels cold. 冰感觉很凉。Silk feels soft and smooth. 丝绸摸起来很柔软光滑。故选 B。

9. This pen _____ smoothly.

- A. write B. writes C. is written D. wrote

解析: write 作不及物动词描述主语内在特征时, 主动形式表被动含义, 故选 B。

10. The problems _____ now.

- A. are discussed B. are discussing
C. are being discussed D. is going to discuss

解析: “问题现在正在被讨论”, 时态为现在进行时, the problems 和 discuss 之间为被动关系, 故选 C。

11. You _____ by a policeman if you drive that way.

- A. are stopped B. stop C. stopped D. will be stopped

解析: 句意为“如果你那样开车, 车警察就会拦住你”, you 和 stop 之间为被动关系, 又根据“主将从现”的原则, 故选 D。



知识要点

被动语态的《知识要点》详见本书教学参考资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. The medical team_____3 women doctors and 5 men doctors.
A. is made of B. makes up C. makes up of D. is made up of
2. You can certainly watch TV as soon as your homework_____.
A. has finished B. has been finished
C. will finish D. will have been finished
3. Hurry up,or the tickets_____out by the time we get there.
A. will have sold B. will sell
C. have sold D. will have been sold
4. Thousands of people took part in the work when Tian'an men Square_____.
A. would be built B. was building C. was being built D. had been built
5. You_____by a policeman if you drive that way.
A. are stopped B. stop C. stopped D. will be stopped
6. The building that _____over there is the tallest one in our school.
A. is built B. building C. is being built D. is building
7. The manager entered the office and was happy to learn that four-fifths of the tickets_____.
A. was booked B. had been booked C. were booked D. have been booked
8. —What did you do in the afternoon ?
—Two hours_____washing the windows and floor.
A. were taken B. was spent C. has taken D. will be spent
9. when and where to build a new hospital_____yet.
A. have not been decided B. are not decided
C. has not been decided D. has not decided
10. This cloth is cheap, but it _____well.
A. is worn B. wore C. wears D. wearing
11. By the end of next July this building _____.
A. will be completed B. will have completed
C. would been completed D. has been completed
12. Great changes _____in China in 20 years.
A. will be taken place B. was taken place
C. will take place D. were taken place
13. —What do you think of the book?
—Oh,excellent. It's worth_____a second time.
A. to read B. to be read C. reading D. being read
14. If city noises_____from increasing, people_____shout to be heard even at dinner.
A. are not kept; will have to B. are not kept; have

- C. do not keep; will have to D. do not keep; have to
15. World War II _____ in 1939.
A. was broken out B. was broke out
C. broke out D. was breaking out
16. Mary realized she _____.
A. was making fun of B. was made fun
C. was being made fun of D. was being made fun
17. I have no more letters _____, thank you.
A. to type B. typing C. to be typed D. typed
18. This page needed _____ again.
A. being checked B. checked C. to check D. to be checked
19. _____ many times, the boy still didn't know how to do the exercises.
A. Having taught B. Having been taught C. Taught D. Teaching
20. A special dinner there might include Chinese pork dish, British roast beef and French-style vegetables. Boiled rice _____ just about everything.
A. is served with B. will serve C. serves with D. is served
21. In the traffic accident, his father came close to _____.
A. be killed B. being killed C. kill D. killing
22. While shopping, people sometimes can't help _____ into buying something they don't really need.
A. to persuaded B. persuading
C. being persuaded D. be persuaded
23. —Did you telephone your uncle?
—Yes, he _____ back before Sunday.
A. expects B. is expected C. expected D. was expected
24. The question asked by Tom is hard _____.
A. to be answered B. to answer
C. answering D. answered
25. The composition _____ any more.
A. need not to be corrected B. doesn't need to be corrected
C. doesn't need be corrected D. need not correct
26. —Have you moved into the new house?
—Not yet, the rooms _____.
A. are being painted B. are painting
C. are painted D. are being painting
27. It _____ that a new department store _____ here now.
A. reports; is being built B. is reported; is being built
C. is reported; is building D. is reported; will be built
28. Children _____ how to swim when they are seven years old.

- A. will teach B. will be teaching
C. have taught D. will be taught
29. The building that _____ over there is the tallest one in the city.
A. is built B. building C. is being built D. is building
30. —Hurry up, you _____ on the phone.
—Oh, I'm coming, thank you.
A. want B. are wanted
C. are being wanted D. are wanting
31. When steam comes out, the water _____ turned into vapour.
A. have B. have been C. was D. is being
32. The May 4th Movement _____ in 1919.
A. was taken place B. had taken place
C. took place D. took the place
33. The factory _____ in 1987.
A. was find B. was founded
C. was found D. had been founded
34. Chinese _____ by the largest number of people in the world.
A. spoke B. is speaking C. is spoken D. speaks
35. John was made _____ the truck for a week as a punishment.
A. to wash B. washing C. wash D. to be washed
36. The next morning the boy _____ lying in bed, dead.
A. was found B. has found C. will be found D. found
37. My TV set is out of order and _____.
A. needs to be repairing B. needs being repaired
C. needs repaired D. needs repairing
38. The thief is now _____ by the policeman.
A. questioned B. being questioned
C. been asking D. asking
39. We will have a picnic if it _____ next Sunday.
A. snows B. isn't snow
C. doesn't snow D. will snow
40. Fruit _____ too long in the refrigerator.
A. is not left B. must not be left
C. is not to leave D. is not being left

答案:

- | | | | |
|--------------|-------------|-------------|--------------|
| 1~5 DBDCD | 6~10 CBBCC | 11~15 ACCAC | 16~20 CCDBA |
| 21~25 BCB BB | 26~30 ABDCB | 31~35 DCBCA | 36~40 ADBC B |

(十三) 非谓语动词



考纲要求

1. 动词不定式作宾语、宾语补足语、定语和状语。
2. 动词的-ing 形式做主语、宾语、补语和定语。
3. 动词的过去分词做表语、补语和定语。



考点指向

主要考查现在分词和过去分词做状语的区别和一些固定搭配。



例题解析

1. (2011 年第 8 题)_____ from a distance, the mountain looks like an elephant.

A. Seen B. Seeing C. Having seen D. Having been seeing

解析: 分词的逻辑主语和主句的主语一致。the mountain 和 see 之间是被动关系, 过去分词表被动, 应选 A。

2. (2011 年第 10 题)The students are looking forward to _____ home.

A. go to B. go C. going to D. going

解析: looking forward to 后跟动名词作宾语, 应选 D。

3. (2012 年第 11 题)Most of the young people enjoy_____ Jay Chou's songs.

A. sing B. sang C. singing D. to sing

解析: enjoy 后跟动名词作宾语, 应选 C。



知识要点

非谓语动词的《知识要点》详见本书教学参考资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. I hope_____ successfully this time.

A. him to be B. to be C. that he be D. it to be

2. Paul doesn't have to be made _____.He always works hard.

A.learn B. to learn C. learned D. learning

3. I smell something _____ in the kitchen. Can I call you back in a minute?
A. burning B. burnt C. being burnt D. to be burnt
4. _____ from media reports, the result has been unclear.
A. To judge B. Having judged C. Judging D. Judged
5. Don't forget _____ her clean water every day.
A. to give B. giving C. given D. give
6. As I'll be away for at least a year, I'd appreciate _____ from you now and then telling me how everyone is getting along.
A. hearing B. to hear C. to be hearing D. having heard
7. The teacher didn't feel like _____ them on the spot.
A. correct B. correcting C. to correct D. corrected
8. With the old man _____ the way, we had no trouble in _____ that cave.
A. leads, find B. leading, finding
C. led, to find D. was leading, found
9. I remember _____ for the job, but I forget the exact amount.
A. to pay B. paying C. to have paid D. being paid
10. He was seen _____ out.
A. go B. to go C. went D. goes
11. He hasn't got used _____ in the countryside.
A. live B. to live C. to living D. living
12. We don't allow _____ in the lecture room.
A. to smoke B. smoke C. smoking D. to smoking
13. I'm looking forward to _____ from you soon.
A. hear B. heard C. hearing D. being heard
14. Could you tell me _____ this word?
A. to how read B. how to read C. how read D. how read to
15. People from all the corners came to the city, _____ it very crowded.
A. to make B. and making C. made D. making
16. Please give me a pen _____.
A. to write B. writing C. to write with D. written
17. Only one of these books is _____.
A. worth to read B. worth being read C. worth of reading D. worth reading
18. _____ is a good form of exercise for both young and old.
A. The walk B. Walking C. To walk D. Walk
19. She reached the top of the hill and stopped _____ on a big rock by the side of the path.
A. to have rested B. resting C. to rest D. rest
20. _____ a reply, he decided to write again.
A. Not receiving B. Receiving not
C. Not having received D. Having not received

21. European football is played in 80 countries, _____ it the popular sport in the world.
A. making B. makes C. made D. to make
22. One learns a language by making mistakes and _____ them.
A. correct B. correcting C. corrects D. to correct
23. _____ in the sun is bad for your eyes.
A. Read B. Reads C. Reading D. To reading
24. _____ such heavy pollution already, it may now be too late to clean up the river.
A. Having suffered B. Suffering
C. To suffer D. Suffered
25. He sent me an email, _____ to get further information.
A. hoped B. hoping C. to hope D. hope
26. Tony was very unhappy for _____ to the party.
A. having not been invited B. not having invited
C. having not invited D. not having been invited
27. I'd like _____ a word with you.
A. had B. having C. to have D. have
28. How about the two of us _____ a walk down the garden?
A. to take B. take C. taking D. to be taking
29. On Sundays I prefer _____ at home to _____ out.
A. to stay, go B. staying, go C. staying, going D. to stay, going
30. —I must apologize for _____ ahead of time.
—That's all right.
A. letting you not know B. not letting you know
C. letting you know not D. letting not you know
31. The next thing he saw was smoke _____ from behind the house.
A. rose B. rising C. to rise D. risen
32. Sarah pretended to be cheerful, _____ nothing about the argument.
A. says B. said C. to say D. saying
33. It's important for the figures _____ regularly.
A. to be updated B. to have been updated
C. to update D. to have updated
34. Passengers are permitted _____ only one piece of hand luggage onto the plane.
A. to carry B. carrying C. to be carried D. being carried
35. _____ in 1955, Disneyland in California is regarded by many as the original fun park.
A. Opened B. Having opened C. Opening D. Being opened
36. I don't allow _____ in my drawing room. I don't allow my family _____ at all.
A. smoking; to smoke B. to smoke; smoking
C. to smoke; to smoke D. smoking; smoking

37. Your clothes need _____.
A. washed B. to be washed C. to wash D. being washing
38. This bike is not worthy _____.
A. to be repaired B. of repairing C. to repair D. repairing
39. _____ provides us with essential nutrients, while _____ provides us with oxygen.
A. To eat; breathing B. Eating; to breathe
C. Eating; breathing D. Eaten; breathed
40. Rebecca was unhappy for _____ the first chance to go abroad.
A. not having been given B. not having given
C. not giving D. having been given
41. _____ is better to love than _____.
A. That; to be loved B. That; be love
C. It; be loved D. It; to be loved
42. I've got the loaf; now I'm looking for a bread knife _____.
A. cutting it by B. cutting it with C. to cut it with D. to cut it by
43. I'm glad _____ by him yesterday.
A. not be seen B. to not have been seen
C. not to have been seen D. not to have seen
44. —What do you think about English?
—It's a difficult language _____.
A. speaking B. to be spoken C. to speak D. spoken
45. He would rather stay at home than _____ out with you.
A. go B. to go C. going D. goes
46. I'm considering _____ your offer.
A. to have accepted B. being accepted
C. accepting D. to accept
47. —What made Ruth so upset?
—_____ three tickets to the folk music concert.
A. Lost B. Losing C. Because of losing D. Since she lost
48. Before _____ to the college, he had to go through an examination.
A. admitting B. to admit
C. being admitted D. having been admitting
49. She pretended _____ me when I passed by.
A. not to see B. not seeing C. to not see D. having not seen
50. The story was so funny that we _____.
A. couldn't help laugh B. can't but laugh
C. couldn't help laughing D. couldn't help but to laugh
51. He had no difficulty _____ the problems.
A. working out B. having worked out C. to have worked out D. to work out

52. The sentence wants _____ once more.
A. to explain B. explaining C. being explained D. to be explained it
53. Articles used by patients must be disinfected before _____ others.
A. using B. being used by C. used by D. being using
54. I regretted _____ that to her.
A. having said B. to have said C. to say D. /
55. Our monitor suggested _____ a discussion of the subject.
A. to have B. should have C. have D. having
56. I can't understand _____ at her.
A. you laugh B. you to laugh C. why laugh D. your laughing
57. In order to reach the top of the hill in six hours, they try _____.
A. to climb the mountain hardly B. hardly to climb the mountain
C. to climb hardly the mountain D. to climb the mountain hard
58. I happened _____ the article when he asked me about it.
A. having read B. to have read C. to be read D. reading
59. He is said _____ to London already.
A. having sent B. to be sending C. to have been sent D. being sent
60. The little boy insisted on _____ with a cake.
A. being served B. to be served C. serving D. serve
61. Mr. Crossett seemed _____ the visitor somewhere before.
A. meeting B. to have met C. to be meeting D. to meet
62. He asked who was the man _____ on.
A. to be operating B. operating C. to operate D. being operated
63. I apologize for _____ my promise.
A. not having kept B. being kept
C. not to have kept D. having not kept
64. He doesn't like _____ in public.
A. praising B. to be praised C. to praise D. praised
65. His answer was so _____ that we were _____ and didn't know what to say.
A. amazing; amazed B. amazing; amazing
C. amazed; amazing D. amazed; amazed
66. Will you _____ me _____ out this problem myself?
A. forbid; to work B. allow; work
C. let; work D. permit; working
67. —What do you think of this school?
—It is a very good _____.
A. studying school B. school for children to study
C. school to study in D. school to study
68. He loves parties. He is always the first _____ and the last _____.

- A. of coming; of leaving B. comes; leaves
C. to come; to leave D. coming; leaving
69. Before liberation he had no chance _____.
A. of going to the school B. to go to school
C. to go to the school D. going to school
70. You'd better _____ her the bad news now.
A. don't tell B. not tell C. won't tell D. not to tell

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】hope + 不定式, 表示希望做某事。
2. 【答案】B. 【解析】be made to do 被迫做某事, 在被动语态中用 be made to do. 如: The workers are made to work ten hours a day.
3. 【答案】A. 【解析】something 和 burn 之间是主动关系, 故用现在分词 burn 表主动。
4. 【答案】C. 【解析】judging from/by 是现在分词短语作插入语, 为固定用法, 不随句子主语的变化而变化; 与其用法相同的现在分词短语还有: generally speaking; frankly speaking; talking off(谈到); considering(考虑到, 因为是)。如: Judging from his behavior, it can be inferred that he must have received a very good education. 从他的言行举止可以推理出他受过良好的教育。Generally speaking, if you have a file open in the editor, the other views reflect different aspects of that file. 一般而言, 如果您在编辑器中打开一个文件, 那么其他视图反映了该文件的不同方面。
5. 【答案】A. 【解析】forget to do sth. 忘记要做的事; forget doing sth. 忘记做过的事。
6. 【答案】A. 【解析】appreciate 后可接名词或动名词; 动名词一般式表示现在或将来要发生的行为动作, 而完成式表示过去已经发生的行为动作。本题中的 hear from 的行为尚未发生, 故选 A。
7. 【答案】B. 【解析】句意: 老师并不想当场纠正他的错误。feel like doing 想要做某事
8. 【答案】B. 【解析】the old man 和 lead 之间是主动关系, 故应用现在分词 leading; have no trouble in doing 做某事无困难。
9. 【答案】D. 【解析】我记得已经领过薪水了, 但我忘了具体是多少钱了。remember + to v. 记得去做(未做某事), remember + v.-ing 记得做过(已做某事)。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】这是被动语态的句型, be -ed to do sth.
11. 【答案】C. 【解析】get used to 相当于 be used to, get used to doing sth 习惯于做某事此处的 to 是介词, 所以后面跟动名词。另外, 被用来做..be used to do, 如: The quilt is used to keep warm.
12. 【答案】C. 【解析】句意: 我们不允许在演讲室里吸烟。allow doing sth 允许做某事, allow 后跟动名词, 故选 C。另外, be allowed to do sth 被允许做某事。
13. 【答案】C. 【解析】look forward to doing 盼望做某事。
14. 【答案】B. 【解析】此处为疑问词加不定式结构。故应选 B. how to read.
15. 【答案】D. 【解析】现在分词 making 引导的部分做结果状语, 表示人们都来到城里的结果——使城市变得很拥挤。
16. 【答案】C. 【解析】用笔写字。不定式做后置定语, 如果不定式中的动词是不及物动词, 则不定式中要有介词。
17. 【答案】D. 【解析】be worth doing 值得做某事。
18. 【答案】B. 【解析】walking 为动名词做主语。
19. 【答案】C. 【解析】stop to do 停下来去做某事。

20. 【答案】C. 【解析】考查分词做状语。本题中的动词 receive 与句子主语 he 之间构成主动关系, 故使用现在分词的形式。因为没有收到来信是在他重新写信之前, 故使用完成时, 另外分词的否定式都是在前面直接加 not。句意: 因为没有收到回信, 他决定重新再写一封。故 C 项正确。

21. 【答案】A. 【解析】本题考查-ing 形式作状语。因为题目中有逗号, 故不可能选 D 项, 因不定式表目的时其前不用逗号。B、C 两项用了限定谓语形式是错误的, 因句中并没有并列连词, 所以 make 和 is played 不可能是并列关系。故 A 项为正确答案。此题意为: 80 个国家都玩欧式足球, 这使得欧式足球成为世界上最受欢迎的运动。

22. 【答案】B. 【解析】correct 和 make 并列, 故都应用动名词形式。

23. 【答案】C. 【解析】动名词短语做主语。

24. 【答案】A. 【解析】句意: 河流经历了如此严重的污染, 现在再治理恐怕已为时过晚。A 选项用了 Having done, 完成时非谓语动词用在这样的句子里面是带有“因果含义”的, 也就是说因为“河流经历了如此严重的污染,” 所以“现在再治理恐怕已为时过晚。”故选 A。

25. 【答案】B. 【解析】考查现在分词做状语, 因为 he 和 hope 之间是主动关系, 故用现在分词, 相当于 and he hoped to ... 句意是: 他给我发了份电子邮件, 希望得到更多的消息。

26. 【答案】D. 【解析】for 在此句中作介词表示原因, 故后面的动词只能用-ing 形式, 其语法名称叫动名词。动名词的否定结构为: not doing. 又因为此处表示没有被邀请, 故应用被动式。因此正确答案为 D。

27. 【答案】C. 【解析】I'd like to do 表示想做某事, have a word with 和某人说话。

28. 【答案】C. 【解析】how about doing sth? 做某事怎么样?

29. 【答案】C. 【解析】prefer doing to doing 更喜欢做……。

30. 【答案】B. 【解析】介词后面用动名词, not 在动名词前表示否定。故应选 B. not letting you know.

31. 【答案】B. 【解析】句意为“接下来他看到的是烟雾从房子的后面冒出来。”rise (升起来) 和 see (看到) 这两个动作是同时发生的, 因此选择现在进行的形式表示非谓语动词动作和谓语动词动作同时发生。故选 B。

32. 【答案】D. 【解析】句意为“Sarah 假装开心, 对那次争论什么也没说。”A 和 B 项是谓语动词形式, 句中并没有连词, 故排除; C 项是作目的状语, 而句中是伴随状态, 故选 D。

33. 【答案】A. 【解析】句意为“经常更新这些数值很重要。”B 和 D 项表示发生过的某件具体的事, 但句尾的 regularly 表示经常发生的事, 故用一般现在时。for 引出的逻辑主语 the figures 与 update 存在着被动关系, 故选 A。

34. 【答案】A. 【解析】句意为“旅客只可以随身携带一件行李登机。”permit sb. to do sth. 允许某人做某事, 句中是被动语态, Passengers 是 carry 的逻辑主语, 用主动式, 故选 A。

35. 【答案】A. 【解析】句意为“很多人认为 1955 年开业的加利福尼亚迪斯尼乐园非常有趣。”open 开业, 与 Disneyland 之间存在着被动关系; D 项 Being opened 表正在进行, 但开业的事实已经发生, 故选 A。

36. 【答案】A. 【解析】allow 要用动名词做宾语, 用动词不定式作宾语补足语。

37. 【答案】B. 【解析】need to be done 相当于 need doing, 表示被动语态。

38. 【答案】A. 【解析】be worthy to be done 的意思是“某事值得被做”。

39. 【答案】C. 【解析】while 是并列连词, 连接两个并列的动名词结构。

40. 【答案】A. 【解析】not having been done 是动名词的完成被动式的否定形式, 表示动作发生在谓语动词之前, 而且是被动的。

41. 【答案】D. 【解析】It 在句中作形式主语; than 连接两个并列的动词不定式。

42. 【答案】C. 【解析】动词不定式作后置定语; with 表示工具; by 表示手段。

43. 【答案】C。【解析】not to have been done 是动词不定式的完成被动式的否定形式，表示动作发生在谓语动词之前。

44. 【答案】C。【解析】可以在不定式前加上 for sb. 作为逻辑主语，因此是主动的。

45. 【答案】A。【解析】句型 would rather do than do 意思是“宁愿……也不愿……”。

46. 【答案】C。【解析】consider 表示“考虑”时后面用动名词形式。

47. 【答案】B。【解析】只有 losing 才可以作句子的主语。

48. 【答案】C。【解析】before 是介词，后面要用动名词；被大学录取应该用被动形式。

49. 【答案】A。【解析】pretend 后面要用动词不定式。

50. 【答案】C。【解析】can't help doing 表示“情不自禁”。

51. 【答案】A。【解析】have difficulty in doing 表示“在某方面有困难”。

52. 【答案】B。【解析】want doing 相当于 want to be done，表示被动。

53. 【答案】B。【解析】before 是介词，后面用动名词；本题要用被动形式。

54. 【答案】A。【解析】regret doing 表示“后悔做过某事”。

55. 【答案】D。【解析】suggest 后面只能用动名词，不能用不定式。

56. 【答案】D。【解析】understand 后面用动名词；your 是动名词的逻辑主语。

57. 【答案】D。【解析】hard 是“努力”的意思；hardly 是“几乎不”的意思。

58. 【答案】B。【解析】happen 后面用不定式；to have done 是完成时。

59. 【答案】C。【解析】本句的意思是“据说他已经被送去伦敦了”，用不定式的完成被动式。

60. 【答案】A。【解析】insist on 是“坚持”的意思，后面用动名词，本题要用被动形式。

61. 【答案】B。【解析】seem 后面用不定式，to have met 是完成时。

62. 【答案】D。【解析】being operated on 是后置定语，表示“正在被做手术的”。

63. 【答案】A。【解析】介词 for 后面用动名词，此处用完成时。

64. 【答案】B。【解析】like 后面可以用动名词也可以用不定式；本题要用被动形式。

65. 【答案】A。【解析】amazing 意为 (sth) “令人惊讶的”，amazed 意为 (sb) “感到惊讶的”。故选 A。

66. 【答案】C。【解析】let 后面用省略 to 的不定式作宾语补足语。

67. 【答案】C。【解析】school 与 study 的关系是状语与动词，因此介词 in 不能省略。

68. 【答案】C。【解析】在序数词后面用不定式作后置定语。

69. 【答案】B。【解析】在 chance 后面可以用不定式，也可以用 of 的形式；表示“上学”时 school 前面不用冠词。

70. 【答案】B。【解析】had better 后面用动词原型。

第三部分 句子与语法

(一) 感叹句



考纲要求

感叹句的基本用法



考点指向

引导词的选择



例题解析

1. (2010 年第 7 题) _____ lovely day! Let's go out to have a picnic.

A. What B. How a C. How D. What a

解析: 根据 What + a + 形容词 + 单数名词 + (主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分), 应选 D。

2. (2012 年第 16 题) _____ exciting sport it is to climb the mountains!

A. How B. What C. What a D. What an

解析: 根据 What + an + 形容词 + 单数名词 + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分, 应选 D。

3. _____ silly questions they are!

A. How B. What C. What a D. How a

解析: 根据 What + 形容词 + 复数名词 + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分, 应选 B。

4. _____ silly the questions are !

A. How B. What C. What a D. How a

解析: 根据 How + 形容词 + 主语 + 谓语, 应选 A。

5. _____ enjoyable music programmer on Channel 3 !

A. How B. What a C. What an D. How an

解析: 根据 What + an + 形容词 + 单数名词 + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分, 应选 C。

6. _____ good time we had at the club last night!

A. What B. What a C. How D. How a

解析: 根据 What + a + 形容词 + 单数名词 + (主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分), 应选 B。

7. _____ great progress they have made in their studies!

- A. What B. What a C. How D. How a

解析: 根据 What + 形容词 + 不可数名词 + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分, 应选 A。

8. _____ fast the boys are running !

- A. What B. What a C. How D. How a

解析: 根据 How + 副词 + 主语 + 谓语, 应选 C。

9. _____ great day May 1, 2014 will be!

- A. How a B. What a C. How D. What

解析: 根据 What + a + 形容词 + 单数名词 + (主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分), 应选 B。

10. _____ fine weather it is today!

- A. What a B. What C. How a D. How

解析: 根据 What + 形容词 + 不可数名词 + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他成分, 应选 B。



知识要点

感叹句的《知识要点》详见本书教学资源资料包。



强化训练

1. _____ wonderful time we had last night at Mary's party!

- A. How B. How a C. What a D. How a

2. _____ bad weather!

- A. What a B. How C. How a D. What

3. _____ beautiful flowers they are !

- A. What a B. How C. How a D. What

4. _____ nice our holiday was !

- A. What B. What a C. How D. How a

5. _____ heavily it is snowing !

- A. What a B. How C. How a D. What

6. _____ exciting time we are having !

- A. What a B. What C. What an D. How

7. _____ news it is!

- A. What important B. How important
C. What an important D. How important an

8. _____ his father works !

- A. How careful B. How carefully C. What careful D. What carefully

9. _____ that you fail to come!

- A. How pity B. What pity C. What a pity D. How a pity

10. _____ you gave us!

- A. What pleasant surprise B. How pleasant surprise

- C. What a pleasant surprise D. How a pleasant surprise
11. _____ hard-working Chinese people!
A. How B. How a C. What D. What a
12. _____ great progress they have made in studies!
A. What B. What a C. How D. How a
13. _____ happy life the old live!
A. What a B. What C. How D. How a
14. —You can't imagine _____ fantastic fun web chatting is.
—Really? But it may cause a lot of trouble sometimes.
A. what B. how C. what a D. what an
15. _____ what the six blind men said sounded!
A. How foolishly B. How foolish C. What foolishly D. What foolish
16. —What sport do you like best?
—Springboard diving . _____ to dive into water from high board!
A. What a fun is it B. How fun it is C. How a fun is it D. What fun it is
17. _____ beautiful music we are listening to!
A. What B. What a C. How D. How a
18. _____ she is!
A. What lovely a girl B. How lovely a girl
C. What lovely girl D. How lovely girl
19. _____ their country!
A. How love they B. How they love
C. What they love D. What love they
20. _____ quiet the park is!
A. What B. What a C. How D. How a
21. _____ supper we are having today!
A. What a delicious B. How delicious
C. What delicious a D. What delicious
22. _____ exciting moment it is!
A. How B. How an C. What D. What an
23. _____ old bike Li Lei is riding!
A. What a B. What C. What an D. How
24. _____ heavy snow!
A. What a B. What C. How a D. How
25. _____ high the building is!
A. What B. What a C. How D. How a
26. _____ delicious soup!
A. What a B. How C. How a D. What
27. _____ noisy they are making!

- A. What B. What a C. How D. How a
28. _____ bad weather!
A. What a B. How C. How a D. What
29. _____ heavy rain!
A. How B. What a C. What an D. What
30. _____ cool it is to take a picture with Yao Ming!
A. What B. What a C. How D. How a
31. — _____ fine day it is today!
—Yes. The sunshine is _____ beautiful that I'd like to go swimming in the sea.
A. How; such B. What a; very C. How; so D. What a; so
32. _____ good plan for the weekend!
A. How B. What a C. What an D. How a
33. _____ nice holiday the Turners have had!
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a
34. _____ beautiful the flowers are!
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a
35. _____ silly the questions you asked!
A. How B. What C. What a D. How a
36. _____ wonderful time we live in!
A. How B. What C. What an D. How a
37. _____ wonderful time we had yesterday at Lisa's party!
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a
38. _____ a tall building it is!
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a
39. _____ beautifully she is dancing!
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a
40. He is strict with himself. _____ he works!
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a

答案:

- | | | | |
|------------|------------|------------|------------|
| 1~5CDDCB | 6~10CABCC | 11~15CAAAB | 16~20BABBC |
| 21~25ADCAC | 26~30DCDBC | 31~35DBCBA | 36~40BCABB |

(二) 反义疑问句



要求了解四种基本句式，其中包括反义疑问句。



考点指向

考查最基本的反义疑问句，考查反义疑问句的特殊情况较少。要求学生掌握反义疑问句的基本原则，即“前肯后否，前否后肯，人称一致，时态一致”。



例题解析

1. (2011 年第 20 题) People in that county want to live better, _____ they?

A. won't B. aren't C. haven't D. don't

解析：句子的谓语动词为实意动词 want，且为肯定，根据“前肯后否，前否后肯，人称一致，时态一致”的原则，应选 D。

2. I know we are late, but please let us take a rest, _____?

A. don't you B. don't we C. will you D. do we

解析：Let me 或 Let us 引导的祈使句表示“请求”，反义疑问句部分为 will you，故选 C。

3. The employee might have been dismissed by the employer last month, _____?

A. hasn't he B. didn't he C. wasn't he D. mightn't he

解析：对过去的情况推测且有时间状语，故用过去时。去掉表猜测的 might，句子为 The employee was dismissed by the employer last month，故应选 C。



知识要点

反义疑问句《知识要点》部分详见本书教学资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. Sally's never seen a play in the Shanghai Grand Theatre, _____?

A. hasn't she B. has she C. isn't she D. is she

2. There happened to be nobody under the wall when it fell down, _____?

A. wasn't there B. was there C. didn't there D. did there

3. He must be helping the old man to water the flowers, _____?

A. is he B. isn't he C. must he D. mustn't he

4. You and I could hardly work together, _____?

A. could you B. couldn't I C. couldn't we D. could we

5. When you've finished reading that book, don't forget to put it back on the shelf, _____?

A. do you B. don't you C. will you D. won't you

6. Lily, tell him your e-mail address, _____?

A. will you B. don't you C. are you D. didn't you

7. Frank is working late again. This is the first time this week he's had to study late, _____?

- A. isn't he B. hasn't it C. hasn't he D. isn't it
8. —Daddy's forgot to post the letter again, ____?
—I'm afraid he ____.
- A. has; has B. isn't; is C. hasn't; has D. has; hasn't
9. —Sorry, I'm not feeling well and I don't think I can finish.
—Don't worry. Let us do it for you, ____?
- A. will you B. shall we C. shan't we D. shall you
10. I don't think he could have done such a stupid thing last night, ____?
- A. do I B. could he C. did he D. has he
11. You'd better not smoke here, ____?
- A. will you B. shall you C. have you D. had you
12. —Jenny doesn't think that Robert is honest, ____?
—I'm afraid not.
- A. is he B. isn't he C. does she D. doesn't she
13. He used to go there when he was young, ____?
- A. didn't he B. used he C. did he D. doesn't he
14. There is little we can do about it, ____?
- A. is there B. can't we C. isn't there D. can we
15. I'm late, ____?
- A. am I B. am not I C. aren't I D. are I
16. His wife had the front door painted green yesterday, ____ she?
- A. did B. had C. didn't D. hadn't
17. I wish to call on you tonight, ____?
- A. do I B. will I C. must I D. may I
18. What fresh air it is! ____?
- A. is it B. does it C. isn't it D. doesn't it
19. She never tells a lie, ____?
- A. does she B. doesn't she C. is it D. isn't it
20. The book cost you \$ 5, ____?
- A. does it B. doesn't it C. did it D. didn't it
21. I don't think that the necklace is made of diamond, ____?
- A. do I B. do you C. isn't it D. is it
22. His wife had the carpets and the curtains cleaned, ____?
- A. hadn't B. had C. didn't she D. did she
23. It's my son's wedding next week, and I have to do my best for that, ____?
- A. haven't I B. don't I C. don't he D. isn't it
24. Harry wouldn't become a teacher if it hadn't been for the holiday, ____?
- A. would he B. had it C. would it D. had he
25. No one left here yesterday, ____?

- A. didn't they B. did they C. didn't one D. did one
26. Birds rarely build nests in our garden, _____?
A. don't they B. do they C. didn't they D. did they
27. You must have been to the Great Wall, _____?
A. mustn't you B. haven't you C. aren't you D. must you
28. Learning how to repair motors takes a long time, _____?
A. doesn't it B. don't they C. does it D. do they
29. They must have stayed at home last night, _____?
A. mustn't they B. haven't they C. didn't they D. must they
30. She read an interesting book yesterday, _____?
A. doesn't she B. does she C. did she D. didn't she
31. Let's start out early tomorrow morning, _____?
A. shall we B. will you C. do you D. can't you
32. There's not much news in today's newspaper, _____?
A. isn't it B. is it C. isn't there D. is there
33. The little girl likes painting, _____?
A. didn't she B. did she C. doesn't she D. does she
34. She is unfit for the position, _____?
A. is she B. isn't she C. doesn't she D. does she
35. I wish to visit America, _____?
A. don't I B. can I C. may I D. may you
36. She's been a worker here for many years, _____?
A. isn't she B. is she C. hasn't she D. has she
37. What beautiful flowers, _____?
A. aren't they B. are they C. isn't it D. is it
38. Mother used to live in a poor village, _____?
A. used she B. usedn't she C. didn't he D. did he
39. You'd better go at once, _____?
A. wouldn't you B. had you C. hadn't you D. should you
40. I am very interested in Mark Twain's novels, _____?
A. aren't I B. am not I C. aren't you D. are you
41. He is not the man who gave us a talk, _____?
A. does he B. is he C. isn't he D. doesn't he
42. He said he wanted to visit Japan, _____?
A. does he B. didn't he C. isn't he D. did he
43. We need not do it again, _____?
A. do we B. don't we C. need we D. needn't we
44. He dare not say so, _____?
A. does he B. dare not he C. doesn't he D. dare he

45. There will not be any trouble, _____?
A. are there B. is there C. will there D. won't there
46. He can hardly swim, _____?
A. can he B. is he C. does he D. can't he
47. You didn't go, _____?
A. didn't you B. do you C. don't you D. did you
48. He is not the man who gave us a talk, _____?
A. isn't he B. is he C. does he D. doesn't he
49. You have John do the job, _____?
A. do you B. don't you C. haven't you D. have you
50. You needn't do that when your maid is here, _____?
A. do you B. don't you C. need you D. needn't you

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】陈述部分为否定，疑问部分应用肯定，前后时态应一致，故选 B。

2. 【答案】D. 【解析】本题考查 there be 句型的反义疑问句。there be 句型的反义疑问句如下：

1) 主语用 there。

2) 若 be 没有其他情态动词或助动词修饰，就用 be 的适当形式；若 be 有其他情态动词或助动词修饰，就用该情态动词或助动词的适当形式。这里 there be 句型有 happened to 修饰，且有 nobody 这个否定词，它的反义疑问句有正确的形式应当是：did there

3. 【答案】B. 【解析】考查反义疑问句。陈述句中的谓语中虽有情态动词 must，但此处 must 表示对正在进行的动作进行推测，而 must 后有助动词 be，故反义疑问句根据助动词 be 来构成，应选 B。

4. 【答案】D. 【解析】本题“前否后肯”，动词用 could，人称用 we。

5. 【答案】C. 【解析】否定祈使句：以 Don't 开始的祈使句：表示“不要……”，只用 will you 提问：如：Don't be late again, will you?

6. 【答案】A. 【解析】肯定意义的祈使句，即表示“请求”它的反义疑问句用 will you 或 won't you。

7. 【答案】D. 【解析】当陈述部分的主语是不定式、动名词、从句、this 或 that，附加疑问句的主语用 it。

8. 【答案】C. 【解析】根据反义疑问句的基本原则，即“前肯后否，前否后肯，人称一致，时态一致”，应选 C。句子时态为完成时。

9. 【答案】A. 【解析】Let me 或 Let us 引导的祈使句表示“请求”，反义疑问句部分为 will you: Let me have a try, will you? Let us help you, will you?

10. 【答案】C. 【解析】考查反义疑问句：句意：我相信大卫昨晚不可能做这么愚蠢的事情，是吗？主句如果是否定前移的句首，主语是第一人称，反义疑问句要和从句一致，从句的谓语是 could have done 这种情况要看有没有具体的过去时间，如果有，就是一般过去时，如果没有，就是现在完成时，这句话有 last night，应该是一般过去时，因为前面否定，所以反义疑问句用肯定，应选 C 项。

11. 【答案】D. 【解析】陈述部分有 had better + v. 疑问句部分用 hadn't you? 例如：You'd better read it by yourself, hadn't you? 又因为此题前面为否定，故反问部分用肯定。

12. 【答案】C. 【解析】表示主语主观意愿的词含有 think, believe, suppose, imagine, expect 等动词后接宾语从句构成的主从复合句在构成反义疑问句时，视情况不同有两种不同的构成方式。

①当主句的主语为第一人称时，其后的简短问句应与从句相一致。例如：I expect our English teacher will be back this weekend, won't she/he? We suppose you have finished the project, haven't you?

②当主句的主语为第二、三人称时,其后的简短问句则应与主句相一致,例如: You thought they could have completed the project, didn't you? They don't believe she's an engineer, do they? She doesn't expect that we are coming so soon, does she?

13. 【答案】A. 【解析】陈述部分有 used to, 附加疑问句部分可用 used 也可以用 did。

We used to live in a small village, usedn't we?/didn't we?此题前面为肯定, 故反问应用否定。故选 A。

14. 【答案】A. 【解析】陈述部分为否定, 故反问用肯定, 且用 there。

15. 【答案】C. 【解析】陈述部分是: I'm...结构, 附加疑问句一般用 "aren't I"? 例如: I am a student, aren't I?

16. 【答案】C. 【解析】陈述部分时态为过去时, 且为肯定, 故选 C。

17. 【答案】D. 【解析】陈述部分是 I wish, 表示询问或征求意见, 附加疑问部分用 may。

例如: I wish to be a popular singer, may I?

18. 【答案】C. 【解析】感叹句的反义疑问句: 主语与感叹句的主语一致。What a clever boy, isn't he? What a lovely day, isn't it?

19. 【答案】A. 【解析】陈述部分为否定, 反问用肯定。因为动词是 tells, 故用助动词 does 反问。

20. 【答案】D. 【解析】时态为过去时, 且前面为肯定, 故反问用否定。应选 D。

21. 【答案】D. 【解析】句意: “我认为这条项链不是由钻石制成的, 是不是?” 若陈述部分是 “I don't think/suppose/believe/imagine/expect 等 + 宾语从句” 时, 附加问句与从句时态一致且用肯定形式, 所以选 D 项。

22. 【答案】C. 【解析】陈述句部分是肯定, 则反问部分否定。另外, 这里 had 是 have 的过去时, 而不是表示完成时态, 所以用 didn't。如果这句话是, His wife had cleaned the carpets and the curtains, 则用 hadn't she? 因为这里的 had 是表示完成时态的 had。

23. 【答案】B. 【解析】如果陈述句部分的谓语是 have to 或 has to, 其反问部分只能用 do 的适当形式。例如: Alice has to finish her homework now, doesn't she?

24. 【答案】A. 【解析】前面为否定, 故反问用肯定。根据 “人称一致, 时态一致” 的原则, 应选 A 项。

25. 【答案】B. 【解析】当陈述部分的主语是表示人的不定代词 everybody, everyone, somebody, someone, anybody, anyone, nobody 时, 附加疑问句的主语用 they。例如: Somebody took my book by mistake, didn't they? 又因为前面是否定, 故反问用肯定。

26. 【答案】B. 【解析】陈述句中有否定副词: hardly; never; seldom; little; few; nowhere; nothing 等词, 反义疑问句部分用肯定提问: 例如: Frank hardly goes to parties, does he? 此题主语为 birds, 且含否定词, 时态为一般现在时, 故选 B 项。

27. 【答案】B. 【解析】Must 表示推测: “一定, 肯定” 反义疑问句部分要与陈述部分的谓语动词相呼应。例如: You must be joking, aren't you? He must be ill, isn't he?。此题中为完成时态, 故选 B 项。

28. 【答案】A. 【解析】陈述句子中的主语为动词不定式短语、动名词短语或其他短语时, 疑问部分的主语通常用 it。且前面为肯定, 故反问用否定。

29. 【答案】C. 【解析】must have done sth. 后面若有过去时间, 如本题的 “last night”, 则反义疑问句用一般过去时形式: “didn't + 主语”。故选 C 项。

30. 【答案】D. 【解析】句子为过去时态, 且前面为肯定, 故反问用否定。应选 D 项。

31. 【答案】A. 【解析】Let's 引导的祈使句表示 “建议”, 反义疑问句部分是: shall we?

例如: Let's go for a walk, shall we? Let's have a rest now, shall we?

32. 【答案】D. 【解析】前否后肯, 前面用 there, 后面也一致。故选 D 项。

33. 【答案】C. 【解析】动词为 likes, 且为肯定, 故反问用否定, 且用 does。应选 C 项。

34. 【答案】B. 【解析】如果陈述部分含有 un-, in-, im-, ir-, dis- 等否定前缀的词, 那么该陈述句应作肯

定句处理, 附加疑问句应用否定形式。例如: It is impossible, isn't it?

35. 【答案】C. 【解析】陈述部分是 I wish, 表示询问或征求意见, 附加疑问部分用 may I.

36. 【答案】C. 【解析】此句为完成时态, 且陈述部分为肯定, 故反问部分应用完成时态的否定, 应选 C 项。

37. 【答案】A. 【解析】感叹句的反义疑问句: 主语与感叹句的主语一致。主语为复数, 且前面为肯定, 故反问用否定, 且主语为 they.

38. 【答案】B. 【解析】陈述部分含有 used to, 结合主语为 mother, 故可用 usedn't she 或 didn't she 反问。

39. 【答案】C. 【解析】陈述部分有 had better + v. 疑问句部分用 hadn't you?

40. 【答案】A. 【解析】陈述部分是: I'm 结构, 附加疑问句一般用 "aren't I" ?

41. 【答案】B. 【解析】根据前否后肯, 人称一致, 时态一致, 应选 B 项。

42. 【答案】B. 【解析】时态为过去时, 且前面为肯定, 故反问用否定。应选 B 项。

43. 【答案】C. 【解析】该句中 need 为情态动词, 且为否定, 故应用肯定进行反问。

44. 【答案】D. 【解析】该句中 dare 为情态动词, 且为否定, 故应用肯定进行反问。

45. 【答案】C. 【解析】陈述部分时态为将来时, 且为否定, 故反问用将来时的肯定, 应选 C 项。

46. 【答案】A. 【解析】前面为否定, 且动词为 can, 故反问用肯定, 应选 A 项。

47. 【答案】D. 【解析】根据反义疑问句的基本原则, 即“前肯后否, 前否后肯, 人称一致, 时态一致”, 应选 D 项。

48. 【答案】B. 【解析】陈述部分为否定, 且动词为 is, 故反问应用肯定, 应选 B 项。

49. 【答案】B. 【解析】.陈述部分含有 have. 当 have 为实意动词时, 要分两种情况: ① 若表示“所有”, 反义疑问句可以用 have, 也可以用 do: He has a lot of friends here, hasn't [doesn't] he? 他在这儿有许多朋友, 是吗? 但是若陈述部分用的是 have 的否定式, 反义疑问句用 have 还是用 do? 取决于陈述部分的动词形式: He hasn't any money, has he? 他没有钱, 是吗? He doesn't have any money, does he? 他没有钱, 是吗? ② 若表示“吃”、“玩”等意思, 反义疑问句要用 do: He has supper at 5, doesn't he? 他 5 点吃晚餐, 是吗? He had a good time at the party, didn't he? 他在晚上玩得很开心, 是吗? 此题中用 do 反问。

50. 【答案】C. 【解析】此处 need 为情态动词, 且为否定, 故反问应用肯定, 应选 C 项。

(三) 句子的种类



考纲要求

识别陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句。



考点指向

掌握陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句的类型。



例题解析

1. (2010 年 6 小题) _____ your pen pal from Canada?

- A. Does B. Are C. Is D. Am

解析: 主语 your pen pal 为单数第三人称, 并且 be from 为固定用法, 故选 C 项。

2. (2010 年 7 小题) _____ lovely day !Let's go out to have a picnic.

- A. What B. How a C. How D. What a

解析: 根据 What + a + 形容词 + 单数名词 + (主语 + 谓语 + 其他句子成分), 故选 D 项。

3. (2010 年 10 小题) —What do they do? —_____.

- A. They are fine, thanks B. They are at school
C. They are singing D. They are actors

解析: 根据前句 What do they do? 可知是询问职业, 故选 D 项。

4. (2010 年 11 小题) —Does Mike like apples _____ pears?

—He likes pears .

- A. so B. and C. or D. but

解析: 根据下句 He likes pears 判断出上句应为选择疑问句, 故选 C 项。

5. (2010 年 13 小题) Please _____ the blackboard and answer my question.

- A. look for B. wait for C. look at D. think of

解析: 本题为动词短语辨析, look for 寻找; wait for 等待; look at 看; think of 考虑; 本句为祈使句, 并且依据题意, 故选 C 项。

6. (2010 年 16 小题) —Excuse me, may I take a seat here?

—_____.The man on the seat has left.

- A. Not at all B. No, thanks C. Yes, please D. Thank you

解析: 本题考查情态动词 may 开头的一般疑问句的肯定回答, 又根据后句 The man on the seat has left , 故选 C 项。

7. (2011 年 6 小题) I spent two weeks in Chicago last summer. _____ there before?

- A. Did you go B. Have you been C. Have you gone D. Had you gone

解析: 本题辨析 have/has been to sp 与 have/has gone to sp , have/has been to sp 表示某人曾经到过某地, have/has gone to sp 表示某人去了某地, 从题意可判断答案为 B。

8. (2012 年 12 小题) —The party is a great success.We've had a good time.

—_____.

- A. It doesn't matter B. No, thanks
C. It's not very good D. I'm glad to hear that

解析: 根据上句题意可判断出下句应选 D 项。

9. (2012 年 16 小题) _____ exciting sport it is to climb the mountains!

- A. How B. What C. What a D. What an

解析: 根据 What + an + 形容词 + 单数名词 + 主语 + 谓语 + 其他句子成分! 故选 D 项。

10. (2012 年 17 小题) —_____ do you have PE lessons?

—Three times a week.

- A. How long B. How soon C. How many D. How often
 解析: 根据下句判断, 此题为对频率提问, 故上句应选 D 项。



知 识 要 点

句子的《知识要点》详见本书教学资源参考资料包。(详见前言)



强 化 训 练

- _____ from Beijing to London !
 A. How long way it is B. What a long way is it
 C. How long way is it D. What a long way it is
- Be sure to write to us, _____?
 A. will you B. aren't you C. can you D. mustn't you
- Alice, you feed the bird today, _____?
 —But I fed it yesterday.
 A. do you B. will you C. didn't you D. don't you
- The news that they failed their driving test discouraged him, _____?
 A. did they B. didn't they C. did it D. didn't it
- I don't suppose anyone will volunteer, _____?
 A. do I B. don't I C. will they D. won't they
- Mrs Black doesn't believe her son is able to design a digital camera, _____?
 A. is he B. isn't he C. doesn't she D. does she
- _____ role she played in the film! No wonder she has won an Oscar.
 A. How interesting B. How an interesting
 C. What interesting D. What an interesting
- Brown told you that there wasn't anyone in the room at that time, _____?
 A. was there B. wasn't there C. didn't he D. did he
- Since you have repaired my TV set, _____ is no need for me to buy a new one .
 A. it B. there C. this D. that
- _____ and help me tomorrow, will you ?
 A. Coming B. To come C. Came D. Come
- Mary _____ her pen ,didn't she ?
 A. lose B. lost C. loses D. loses
- You have a lovely garden. _____ it is looked after !
 A. How good B. How well
 C. What a nice garden D. What a good one
- Your uncle rarely overslept, _____?

- A. didn't he B. did he C. doesn't he D. does he
14. _____ fine weather it is today!
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a
15. I don't think she is wrong, _____?
A. do I B. don't I C. is she D. isn't she
16. _____ some hot coffee now?
A. Do you like B. Will you like
C. Would you like D. Should you like
17. They need some help, _____ they?
A. do B. don't C. need D. needn't
18. —_____ have you visited the Great Wall? —Twice.
A. How soon B. How often C. How many times D. What
19. —_____ is your house from the factory?
—It's about twenty minutes' walk.
A. How far B. How long C. How soon D. How often
20. _____ plant some trees in the garden?
A. How about B. What about C. Let's D. Why not
21. —Would you like to watch TV or listen to the radio? —_____.
A. Yes, I'd like to watch TV B. No, I don't watch TV
C. Yes, to listen to the radio D. I'd like to watch TV
22. _____ the room!
A. Don't you go into B. Don't go into
C. Not go into D. Not go in
23. _____ and you will be successful.
A. Working hard B. Work hard
C. To work hard D. If you work hard
24. Let's _____ time doing such silly things.
A. don't waste B. not to waste C. waste not D. not waste
25. What _____ exciting news this is!
A. an B. the C. / D. a
26. _____ good time they are having!
A. What B. How C. What a D. How a
27. _____ wishes to become an astronaut!
A. How he B. How does he C. What he D. What
28. _____ it is to play at the seaside in summer!
A. What funs B. What a fun C. How fun D. What fun
29. _____ from Shanghai to Beijing!
A. How long there is B. How long is
C. What a long way it is D. What distance

- 答案：

21~25 DBBDC

41~45 DCCBC

(四) 句子成分



考纲要求

掌握主语、谓语、宾语、表语、定语、状语、补语及同位语这八种主要句子成分。



考点指向

主要考查谓语动词的时态语态、主谓一致、非谓语动词做状语等。



例题解析

1. (2011 年第 15 题) He told me that he _____ to Tokyo to work the next year.

- A. go B. went C. would go D. had gone

解析: 考查宾语从句中的谓语。宾语从句中的谓语动词时态应和主句时态一致, 由 the next year 可知用过去将来时。应选 C。

2. (2012 年第 10 题) —Where are you going for your holiday?

—well, we _____ yet.

- A. haven't decided B. hadn't decided
C. don't decided D. didn't decided

解析: 考查答语中的谓语。yet 常和现在完成时态连用, 故选 A。

3. (2011 年第 8 题) _____ from a distance, the mountain looks like an elephant.

- A. Seen B. Seeing C. Having seen D. Having been seeing

解析: 考查非谓语动词做状语。分词的逻辑主语和主句的主语一致。the mountain 和 see 之间是被动关系, 过去分词表被动, 应选 A。

4. (2011 年第 10 题) The students are looking forward to _____ home.

- A. go to B. go C. going to D. going

解析: looking forward to 中的 to 是介词, 后跟动名词作宾语, 应选 D。

5. (2012 年第 11 题) Most of the young people enjoy _____ Jay Chou's songs.

- A. sing B. sang C. singing D. to sing

解析: enjoy 后跟动名词作宾语, 应选 C。

6. (2012 年第 13 题) The cookies _____ good. Could I have some more?

- A. taste B. smell C. feel D. sound

解析: the cookies 是主语, good 为表语。此处缺感官系动词。根据句意, 此处为尝起来, 应选 A。



知识要点

句子成分《知识要点》部分详见本书相关教学资源资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

- () 1. —Simon is really creative, and he likes making new things.
—Yes. To be _____ is his dream.
A. a writer B. an inventor C. a singer D. an actor
- () 2. —What do you think of your new school?
—Wonderful. And my teachers and classmates are all _____ me.
A. afraid of B. angry with C. tired of D. friendly to
- () 3. —What will you donate for the charity?
—I'll _____ some clothes because they are too small for me.
A. give away B. give up C. give out D. give in
- () 4. —Are you interested in learning math?
—Yes, but I'm afraid to _____ too much time on math.
A. take B. spend C. pay D. cost
- () 5. —What will the weather be like tomorrow?
—It _____ be rainy, cloudy or sunny. Who knows?
A. must B. might C. shall D. should
- () 6. China is a country _____.
A. with a long history B. have a long history
C. has a long history D. there is a long history
- () 7. —Which of the caps will you take?
—I'll take _____, one for my father, the other for my brother.
A. neither B. both C. all D. either
- () 8. —_____. I failed the exam again.
—Just take it easy. Things will be better if you keep working hard.
A. It can't be better B. No kidding
C. That's all right D. It can't be worse
- () 9. Jeremy Shu-How Lin has become a new star in NBA. He said, "Take the _____ when it comes up."
A. turn B. key C. opportunity D. duty
- () 10. —What a big storm last night!
—Yes. I was doing my homework. Suddenly, all the lights in my house _____.
A. went off B. got off C. took off D. turned off
- () 11. —Where were you on the National holidays last year?

- This time last year my family and I _____ Canada.
A. visit B. visited C. were visiting D. have visited
- () 12. — Do you like your job?
— Sure, the job is suitable for me. And I really couldn't ask for a _____ one.
A. better B. good C. best D. well
- () 13. — I don't feel very well these days.
— You should _____ junk food if you want to keep in good health.
A. look forward to B. get along with
C. come up with D. stay away from
- () 14. — The fishermen in Qingdao have caught a fish of 520 kilos.
— My God! _____.
A. I don't know B. I quite agree
C. It's a good idea D. That sounds amazing
- () 15. — Why was Miss Read so angry with you this morning?
— She asked me _____.
A. why I was late for school again B. how I came to school this morning
C. what did I have for breakfast D. what time did I go to bed last night
- () 16. — Do you have _____ MP3 player?
— Yes, I have _____.
A. one; it B. it; one C. an; one D. a; it
- () 17. You needn't wait for Tom any longer. He must be having supper at _____.
A. the Brown's B. the Browns' C. the Browns D. Browns
- () 18. — Miss Smith will teach us English this term.
— _____! She is a very good teacher.
A. Well done B. You're lucky C. It's a pity D. Good job
- () 19. — You look a bit pale. Shall I take you to see the doctor?
— No, thanks. I'll take some pills and see how it _____.
A. comes B. goes C. is D. has
- () 20. There are quite a few old books on the shelf, but _____ of them is useful to him.
A. both B. all C. neither D. none
- () 21. — Excuse me, please tell me _____.
— There is a supermarket over there. You can get some there.
A. how I can find a supermarket B. where the supermarket is
C. where I can buy some fruit D. Where can I buy some fruit
- () 22. He came here just now _____.
A. tells us the news B. telling us the news
C. to tell us the news D. told us the news
- () 23. He plans to stay here for _____ more week.
A. a B. one C. another D. next

- () 24. —Whom would you like to be your assistant, Jack or David?
—If I had to choose, David would be _____ choice.
A. good B. better C. the better D. the best
- () 25. —What happened?
—The old man next door was found _____ in the living room. It's very sad.
A. dead B. die C. dying D. death
- () 26. Which subject do you like _____, English or Chinese?
A. better B. best C. well D. very much
- () 27. Look! How heavy the rain is! You'd better _____.
A. don't go now B. stay here when it stops
C. not leave until it stops D. not to leave at once
- () 28. —Someone is knocking at the door. Who _____ it be?
—It _____ be Tom. He is still in the school.
A. may; can't B. can; mustn't
C. might; couldn't D. could; may not
- () 29. —Be careful! You might fall into the water.
—Thank you. I _____ I _____ so close to the pool.
A. didn't know; am standing B. don't know; am standing
C. didn't know; was standing D. didn't know; would stand
- () 30. —Have you got the airplane tickets?
—No. when I _____ to the office, all the tickets to Beijing _____ out.
A. get; have been sold B. got; had been sold
C. got; had sold D. got; were being sold
- () 31. Mary is _____ and she often makes her classmates laugh.
A. shy B. pretty C. busy D. funny
- () 32. Tom knew nothing about it _____ his sister told him.
A. since B. if C. until D. unless
- () 33. Everyone in our village likes Harry because he always talks to others _____.
A. friendly B. lovely C. politely D. slowly
- () 34. I first met Lisa three years ago when we _____ at a radio station together.
A. have worked B. had been working
C. were working D. had worked
- () 35. You _____ jump onto a bus while it is moving. It's too dangerous.
A. may not B. mustn't C. may D. must
- () 36. —How nice the building is! What is it used for?
—It _____ as a hotel. But I'm not sure.
A. must be used B. is used C. may be used D. is using
- () 37. About _____ of the workers in the factory were born in the _____.
A. two-thirds, 1970 B. two-thirds, 1970s

- C. two-third, 1970 D. second-three, 1970s
- () 38. —Would you please drive ____? My plane is taking off.
—I'd like to, but safety comes first.
A. faster B. better C. more carefully D. more slowly
- () 39. ____ China is growing stronger and stronger, Chinese is taught in more and more countries.
A. If B. Unless C. As D. Although
- () 40. In Britain, you must be 18 ____ you want to drive a car.
A. why B. because C. so D. if
- () 41. You should tell ____ possible to support your ideas.
A. as many information as B. as much fact as
C. as many facts as D. as many news as
- () 42. Taiwan is part of China. We ____ the same history and culture.
A. explain B. express C. connect D. share
- () 43. You can't imagine ____ when the pupils received these nice presents on Children's Day.
A. how they were excited B. how excited they were
C. how excited were they D. they were how excited
- () 44. We should be ready to help the people ____ are in trouble.
A. whose B. whom C. which D. who
- () 45. By the end of last week, we ____ 13 lessons.
A. have learned B. had learned C. learned D. learn
- () 46. —Can you tell ____ the way to the station?
—Certainly. Go straight on and then turn left.
A. I B. mine C. me D. my
- () 47. Spring is the best season in Beijing. It usually comes ____ March.
A. on B. in C. to D. at
- () 48. Tony and Betty ____ from England.
A. be B. am C. is D. are
- () 49. I'd like to go shopping with you, ____ I'm too busy.
A. or B. so C. and D. but
- () 50. Which coat is ____, the blue one or the brown one?
A. cheap B. cheaper C. cheapest D. the cheapest
- () 51. Please ask him ____ here at six tomorrow morning.
A. come B. to come C. comes D. coming
- () 52. —Where is your mother, Peter?
—She ____ to the supermarket. She will come back soon.
A. has gone B. goes C. has been D. will go
- () 53. Mount Qomolangma is ____ mountain in the world.

- A. high B. higher C. much higher D. the highest
- () 54. Oh, you've got a new book. Is there _____ interesting?
A. everything B. something C. anything D. nothing
- () 55. — Have you seen Mr. Smith?
— Yes. Look, he _____ his car over there.
A. cleans B. cleaned C. is cleaning D. has cleaned
- () 56. — _____ shall we meet tomorrow morning?
— At half past eight.
A. What B. Which C. Where D. When
- () 57. — _____ you play the piano?
— No. But I can play the violin.
A. Can B. May C. Must D. Should
- () 58. Look at the bridge! It _____ ten years ago.
A. built B. had built C. was built D. was building
- () 59. My mother will take me to the movie if she _____ free this weekend.
A. is B. will be C. was D. would be
- () 60. — Do you know _____?
— Oh, he lives in Golden Street.
A. where Robert lives B. where does Robert live
C. where Robert lived D. where did Robert live

答案与解析:

- 【答案】B。【解析】根据关键词 creative, 应选 B 项。
- 【答案】D。【解析】根据 wonderful 一词可知, 老师和同学对他很友好, 应选 D 项。
- 【答案】A。【解析】give away 赠送, 泄露, 出卖; give out 发出, 疲劳, 分发; give in (to sb.) 屈服; give up 放弃, 让 (座位)。根据句意应选 A 项。
- 【答案】B。【解析】固定短语 spend...on 在……上花费。
- 【答案】B。【解析】根据 who knows 可知, 应选 might 表示也许。
- 【答案】A。【解析】句意为: 中国是一个历史悠久的国家。with a long history 表示有着悠久的历史。
- 【答案】B。【解析】由句意反映出两者都要, 故选 B 项。
- 【答案】D。【解析】句意为: 不能再糟糕了, 我考试又不及格。故选 D 项。
- 【答案】C。【解析】take the opportunity 表示抓住机会。
- 【答案】A。【解析】go off: 熄灭, 消失 turn off: 关灯。此处灯是自己熄灭了, 不是手动开关的, 所以不选 turn off; take off: (飞机) 起飞, 启程 get off: 下车, 离开。根据句意, 应选 A 项。
- 【答案】C。【解析】由 This time last year 可知, 应用过去进行时。应选 C 项。
- 【答案】A。【解析】该句子含有 ~~can't/couldn't~~ + 比较级”的形式。例如: ① I can't agree with you more. 我完全同意你的意见。② The weather couldn't be worse. 天气再糟糕不过了。③ He couldn't have done better. 他做得再好不过了。此句为: 我再也找不到一个更适合的工作了。换句话说: 这个工作最适合我。
- 【答案】D。【解析】stay away from 远离。
- 【答案】D。【解析】That sounds amazing 这听起来令人惊叹。

15. 【答案】A. 【解析】宾语从句应用陈述语序。结合句意，应选 A 项。
16. 【答案】C. 【解析】第一空应用不定冠词 an 表泛指，第二空用 one 表示同一类。
17. 【答案】B. 【解析】at the Browns' 表示在布朗的家里。
18. 【答案】B. 【解析】应选 You're lucky，表示你很幸运。因为她是一个好老师。
19. 【答案】B. 【解析】应选 goes，在此表示病情变化。
20. 【答案】D. 【解析】句意：书架上有很多书，但是没有一本对他有用。None 表示一个都没有。
21. 【答案】C. 【解析】宾语从句应用陈述语序，故排除 D 项。根据题中 you can get some there. 说明要买一些东西，故选 C 项。
22. 【答案】C. 【解析】选不定式表示目的。
23. 【答案】B. 【解析】此处是“数词 + more + 名词”结构。
24. 【答案】C. 【解析】当特指两个中的一个时，比较级前面也要加 the。
23. 【答案】A. 【解析】dead 在这里做主语补足语，说明主语怎么样，本句的意思是：隔壁的老人被发现死在起居室里。
26. 【答案】A. 【解析】like better 意为在两者之间更喜欢某一个。
27. 【答案】C. 【解析】had better 后加动词原形。句意为：你最好直到雨停再离开。故选 C。
28. 【答案】A. 【解析】第一空用 may 表推测“可能”。第二空也是表示推测，表推测否定一般情况下都使用 can't (不可能)。mustn't 是指“禁止”。
29. 【答案】C. 【解析】时态应用过去时。第一空用 didn't know 表示刚才不知道；第二空用 was standing 表示当时正站在池子旁边。
30. 【答案】B. 【解析】“到达”为过去时，“票被售出”是过去的过去，故用过去完成时的被动语态。应选 B 项。
31. 【答案】D. 【解析】因为她经常使她的同学大笑，所以说明她 funny。
32. 【答案】C. 【解析】实际为 not...until 句型。
33. 【答案】C. 【解析】修饰动词 talk，应用副词。故排除 A、B 项。结合句意应选 C 项。
34. 【答案】C. 【解析】根据语境应用过去进行时。故选 C 项。
35. 【答案】B. 【解析】mustn't 表示禁止。
36. 【答案】C. 【解析】may be used as 可能被用作。
37. 【答案】B. 【解析】考查分数和年代的表示法。分数由基数词和序数词构成——分子用基数词，分母用序数词，分子大于“1”时，分母用复数。表示“在几十年代”用“in the 加逢十的数词复数形式或数词所有格形式”。如：in the 1990s 或 1990's (20 世纪 90 年代)。表示“在某人多少岁时”，用“in one's 加整十的复数形式”如：in his thirties 表示“在他三十多岁时”。
38. 【答案】A. 【解析】根据句意，应该是表示开车快点。故选 A 项。
39. 【答案】C. 【解析】as 在此是“由于”的意思。
40. 【答案】D. 【解析】应选 if 表示“如果”。
41. 【答案】C. 【解析】根据 many 修饰可数名词，much 修饰不可数名词，应选 C 项。
42. 【答案】D. 【解析】explain 解释，share 分享，express 表达，connect 连接。根据句意，应选 D 项。
43. 【答案】B. 【解析】考查感叹句作宾语从句。how 程度副词修饰形容词，后面加陈述句型。
44. 【答案】D. 【解析】Who 引导的定语从句。Who 在定语从句中作主语。
45. 【答案】B. 【解析】由时间状语 By the end of last week 可知，应用过去完成时，故选 B 项。
46. 【答案】C. 【解析】me 是人称代词的宾格，在 tell 之后作宾语。

47. 【答案】B。【解析】在某月用介词 in。

48. 【答案】D。【解析】主语为复数，故用 are。

49. 【答案】D。【解析】but 是一种较为委婉的说法。

50. 【答案】B。【解析】两者之间用比较级。

51. 【答案】B。【解析】短语 ask sb to do sth。

52. 【答案】A。【解析】用现在完成时 have gone to。如果表示“曾经到过某地(人已回来)”则用“have/has been to”，若表示“到某地去了(还未回来)”则用“have/has gone to”。例如：

—Where is Li Hua? —李华在哪里? —He has gone to the reading-room.—他去阅览室了。

—She knows a lot about Shanghai.—关于上海，她懂很多。—She has been there.—她去过那里。

53. 【答案】D。【解析】形容词的最高级。

54. 【答案】C。【解析】something 用在肯定句中，而 anything 用在疑问句或否定句中。

55. 【答案】C。【解析】由 look 可知动作正在发生，用现在进行时。

56. 【答案】D。【解析】由答语可知询问时间，故用 when。

57. 【答案】A。【解析】由下文 But I can play the violin 可知，应选 A 项。

58. 【答案】C。【解析】该句是一般过去时的被动语态。应选 C 项。

59. 【答案】A。【解析】此题中 my mother will take me to the movie 是主句，时态为一般将来时，则从句用一般现在时代替将来时，也就是 if 后面的句子时态为一般现在时，所以选 A 项。

60. 【答案】A。【解析】宾语从句用陈述语序，时态为一般现在时，故选 A 项。

(五) 简单句的五种基本句型



考纲要求

掌握简单句的五种基本句型。



考点指向

- 主要考查 1. 感官系动词作谓语。
2. 宾语、宾语补足语等。
3. 谓语动词的形式。



例题解析

1. (2012 年第 11 题) Most of the young people enjoy _____ Jay Chou's songs.

- A. sing B. sang C. singing D. to sing

解析：该句为简单句中的主谓宾结构，主语为 most of the young people，谓语为 enjoy，宾语为 _____ Jay Chou's songs。又因为 enjoy 后跟动名词作宾语，故应选 C。

2. (2012 年第 13 题) The cookies _____ good. Could I have some more?

- A. taste B. smell C. feel D. sound

解析: 该句 The cookies _____ good 为简单句中的主系表结构。考查感官系动词 taste, smell, feel, sound, 此处为“尝起来”, 应选 A。

3. This news sounds _____.

- A. exciting B. excited C. excite D. to excite

解析: 该句为简单句中的主系表结构。空白处缺表语, exciting 意为 (sth.) “令人兴奋的”, excited 意为 (sb) “感到兴奋的”。句意为“这个消息听起来令人兴奋”, 故选 A。

4. Their experiment _____ much attention.

- A. attract B. attracting C. attracted D. attractive

解析: 该句为主谓宾结构。此句缺谓语, 排除 B 和 D 项, A 项应为 attracts, 此处选过去式作谓语。应选 C。



知识要点

简单句的五种基本句型《知识要点》详见本书教学资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. His mother looks _____ at him.

- A. happy B. happily C. unhappy D. happiness

2. She looks _____.

- A. happy B. happily C. sadly D. happiness

3. I found them _____ on the playground.

- A. walk B. walking C. to walk D. walked

4. We must keep the classroom _____.

- A. cleaned B. cleaning C. to clean D. clean

5. These flowers _____ very sweet.

- A. smell B. smelling C. to smell D. is smelt

6. There is a hole in my bag. I am going to have it _____.

- A. mend B. mending C. mended D. to mend

7. His mother told him _____ his bicycle in the street.

- A. not to ride B. not ride C. didn't ride D. to not ride

8. I advised _____ at once

- A. him to starting B. him to start C. to starting D. to start

9. The tomatoes _____ very soft.

- A. feeling B. to feel C. feel D. is felt

10. Though he had often made his little sister _____, today he was made _____ by his little sister

- A. cry; to cry B. crying; crying C. cry; cry D. to cry; cry
11. I found the door_____when I got home.
A. opened B. close C. unlocking D. open
12. The teacher encouraged us_____good compositions.
A. writing B. written C. to write D. wrote
13. Don't leave the water_____while you brush your teeth.
A. run B. running C. being run D. to run
14. The teacher asked us_____so much noise.
A. don't make B. not make C. not making D. not to make
15. Father will not_____us to use his recorders.
A. have B. let C. agree D. allow
16. I have had my bike_____and I am going to have somebody_____my radio tomorrow.
A. repair; to repair B. repairing; to be repaired
C. repaired; repair D. to repair; repairing
17. They must keep their hands_____.
A. are behind their backs B. behind their backs
C. to be behind their backs D. be behind their backs
18. We made Tom_____.
A. a monitor B. is a monitor C. monitor D. to monitor
19. I heard her_____in the room just now.
A. to sing B. singing C. sang D. sung
20. The artist hoped_____drawing the picture soon.
A. his son to finish B. to finish
C. finishing D. his son finish
21. One third of the country_____covered with trees and the majority of the citizens _____black people.
A. is; are B. is; is C. are; are D. are; is
22. Can you finish _____an elephant in two minutes?
A. draw B. to draw C. drew D. drawing
23. After dinner the minister made a short _____to the guests.
A. speak B. spoke C. speaking D. speech
24. Their experiment _____much attention.
A. attract B. attracting C. attracted D. attractive
25. They intended to have their son _____in America.
A. educate B. educated C. to educate D. educating
26. _____in the sun is bad for your eyes.
A. Read B. Reads C. Reading D. To reading
27. I'd like _____a word with you.
A. had B. having C. to have D. have

28. When the little baby saw her mother _____, she couldn't help _____.
A. coming, laughing B. come, to laugh
C. comes, laughs D. came, laughing
29. We sometimes heard _____ songs in English.
A. that he sing B. that he sings C. him to sing D. him sing
30. He hopes _____ better, but never works hard.
A. him to study B. studying C. study D. to study
31. The doctor advised Lao Li _____ more rest.
A. that he gets B. to get C. would get D. get
32. _____ is really dangerous.
A. Drive cars fast B. Driving cars fast C. To drive car fast D. Driving car fast
33. He is still unable to make himself _____ in English.
A. understand B. understood C. understands D. understanding
34. They kept the fire _____ to keep them warm.
A. to burn B. burn C. burnt D. burning
35. I often do some _____ on Sundays.
A. washed B. to wash C. wash D. washing
36. The funny story makes us _____.
A. laugh B. laughing C. to laugh D. laughed
37. Remember _____ late for class again.
A. not to B. not to be C. to be not D. be not to
38. Half of the apples _____ bad.
A. go B. goes C. is gone D. has gone
39. The director had his secretary _____ the report.
A. to rewrite B. rewrote C. rewrite D. rewritten
40. His wish was _____ a scientist.
A. to becomes B. becomes C. become D. to become

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】应选副词修饰动词 look。只有 happily 是副词，故选 B 项。
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】look 为系动词，后加形容词做表语，故选 A 项。
3. 【答案】B. 【解析】walking 做宾语补足语，表动作正在进行。
4. 【答案】D. 【解析】clean 做宾语补足语。
5. 【答案】A. 【解析】smell 为系动词，和 sweet 一起构成系表结构。
6. 【答案】C. 【解析】have sth done 结构。It 和 mend 之间是被动关系，故用过去分词表被动。
7. 【答案】A. 【解析】tell sb not to do sth.
8. 【答案】B. 【解析】advise sb to do sth.
9. 【答案】C. 【解析】feel 在此做感官系动词。
10. 【答案】A. 【解析】make sb do 和 sb be made to do 结构。
11. 【答案】D. 【解析】形容词 open 作宾语补足语。

12. 【答案】C. 【解析】encourage sb to do sth.
13. 【答案】B. 【解析】running 表示动作正在进行。
14. 【答案】D. 【解析】ask sb not to do sth 结构。
15. 【答案】D. 【解析】allow sb to do sth 结构。
16. 【答案】C. 【解析】分别为短语: have sth done 和 have sb do sth.
17. 【答案】B. 【解析】介词短语 behind their backs 作宾语补足语。
18. 【答案】C. 【解析】make sb + 职位, 职位前免去冠词。
19. 【答案】B. 【解析】hear sb doing 听见某人正在做某事。
20. 【答案】B. 【解析】hope to do 希望做某事, 无 hope sb to do sth 结构。
21. 【答案】A. 【解析】句意: “这个国家三分之一都是被树覆盖着, 大部分居民是黑人。” 第一空的主语 One-third of the country, 当主语是分数的时候, 谓语和分数修饰的名词一致, 这里是和 the country 一致, 谓语是单数, 第二空的主语是 the majority of the citizens 还是和名词一致, 用复数, 应选 A 项。
22. 【答案】D. 【解析】finish doing 完成做某事。
23. 【答案】D. 【解析】make a speech 做演讲。
24. 【答案】C. 【解析】此处缺少谓语。故选 C。
25. 【答案】B. 【解析】son 和 educate 之间是被动关系, 故用过去分词表被动。
26. 【答案】C. 【解析】reading in the sun 是动名词做主语。
27. 【答案】C. 【解析】I'd like to do sth 想要做某事。
28. 【答案】A. 【解析】mother 和 come 之间是主动关系, 故用 coming 表主动。Can't help doing 情不自禁做某事。
29. 【答案】D. 【解析】hear sb do 听见某人做某事。
30. 【答案】D. 【解析】hope to do 希望做某事。
31. 【答案】B. 【解析】advise sb to do sth 建议某人做某事。
32. 【答案】B. 【解析】Driving cars fast 是动名词短语作主语。
33. 【答案】B. 【解析】himself 和 understand 是被动关系。故用过去分词表被动。因此选 B。
34. 【答案】D. 【解析】fire 和 burn 之间是主动关系, 故用现在分词 burning。
35. 【答案】D. 【解析】do some washing 洗衣服。
36. 【答案】A. 【解析】make sb do. do 前不定式省掉 to。
37. 【答案】B. 【解析】此处为 remember not to do 结构, 意为: 记住不要做某事。另外, be late for...(迟到)。
38. 【答案】A. 【解析】主语 Half of the apples 为复数, 故谓语也用复数形式。因此选 A 项。
39. 【答案】C. 【解析】此处为短语 have sb do sth. 叫某人做某事。
40. 【答案】D. 【解析】不定式 to become a scientist 做表语。

(六) 名词性从句



考纲要求

掌握名词性从句(主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句、同位语从句)的基本结构、意义和

功能。



考点指向

考查名词性从句的连接词、语序和时态



例题解析

1. (2011 年第 15 题) He told me that he _____ to Beijing to work the next year.

- A. go B. went C. would go D. had gone

解析: 此题重点考查宾语从句的时态。从句的时态要和主句的时态保持一致, 因主句的谓语动词是过去式, 从句的谓语动词也要用相应的过去时态, 由句意知用过去将来时, 所以选 C。

2. (2012 年第 18 题) Your T-shirt is so cool. Could you tell me _____?

- A. where you buy it B. where do you buy it
C. where you bought it D. where did you buy it

解析: 本题考查宾语从句的语序。从句应用陈述语序, 所以 B、D 两项排除, 因为“买”的动作发生在过去, 所以选 C。



知识要点

名词性从句《知识要点》详见本书教学资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. I want to know _____.

- A. what was his name B. what is his name
C. that his name is D. what his name is

2. Excuse me, could you tell me _____?

- A. when can I get to the station B. I can get to which station
C. which station I can get to D. how I can get to the station

3. They wondered if the teacher _____ us English the next term.

- A. would teach B. had taught C. will teach D. taught

4. He told me that the sun _____ in the east.

- A. rises B. raises C. rose D. raised

5. A computer can only do _____ you have instructed it to do.

- A. how B. after C. what D. when

6. _____ she was invited to the ball made her very happy.
A. If B. That C. When D. Because
7. _____ is going to do the job will be decided by the Party committee.
A. That B. Why C. How D. Who
8. _____ team will win the match is a matter of public concern.
A. Which B. That C. If D. How
9. _____ you come or not is up to you.
A. What B. If C. Why D. Whether
10. What I'm considering now _____ the money we need.
A. are B. is C. were D. was
11. He was ill. That is _____ he didn't come yesterday.
A. when B. why C. how D. that
12. The reason why I didn't go to Shanghai was _____ a new job.
A. because I got B. because of getting
C. I got D. that I got
13. That is _____ Lu Xun once lived.
A. what B. where C. that D. why
14. The fact _____ he didn't see Xiao Fang yesterday is true.
A. which B. that C. when D. what
15. I have no idea _____ he will come back.
A. where B. when C. what D. that
16. Modern science has given clear evidence _____ smoking can lead to many diseases.
A. what B. which C. that D. where
17. No one can tell _____ will happen next.
A. what B. when C. where D. which
18. It is generally considered unwise to give a child _____ he or she wants.
A. however B. whatever C. whichever D. whenever
19. Our hometown is quite different from _____ before.
A. that it was B. what it was C. which it was D. when it was
20. _____ surprised us very much that Tom should have left without a word.
A. He B. This C. It D. That
21. Do you know _____.
A. what is this used for B. which this is used
C. what this is used for D. that this is used for
22. He asked me _____ with me.
A. what is the trouble B. what wrong was
C. what was the matter D. what trouble it is
23. There is no doubt _____ China is always trying to keep world peace and against any war.
A. that B. whether C. if D. when

24. —Do you remember _____ he came?
—Yes, I do. He came by car.
A. where B. if C. that D. how
—I drove to Zhuhai for the air show last week.
—Is that _____ you has a few days off?
A. when B. what C. why D. where
26. I wonder _____ people do with those waste plastic bags.
A. what B. how C. which D. that
27. The problem is _____ will attend the meeting.
A. why B. when C. what D. who
28. Last Sunday he promised _____ today, but he hasn't appeared yet.
A. that he would come B. that he will come
C. he will come to see me D. whether he would come
29. We should think carefully about _____ Mr. Smith said at the meeting.
A. that B. what C. which D. when
30. We think it possible _____ the local government will be able to solve the housing problem.
A. for B. that C. when D. how
31. She is pleased with what you have given him and _____ you have told him.
A. that B. which C. all what D. all that
32. Henry killed the dog. I'll ask him why _____.
A. did he do that B. he did that C. he did D. he has done so
33. Have you seen Henry lately My boss wants to know _____.
A. how he is getting along B. how is he getting along
C. what he is getting along D. what is he getting along
34. Please tell me _____ you would like to have your coffee—black or white?
A. what B. where C. which D. How
35. _____ we go swimming every day _____ us a lot of good.
A. If; do B. That; do C. If; does D. That; does
36. You can't imagine _____ when they received these nice Christmas presents.
A. how excited they were B. how they were excited
C. how excited were they D. they were how excited
37. _____ the old man's sons wanted to know was _____ the gold had been hidden.
A. That; what B. What; where C. What; that D. What; if
38. The true value of life is not in _____, but _____.
A. how you get ...that you give B. which you got what you give
C. what you get ...what you give D. what do you get...what do you give
39. _____ surprised me most was _____ such a little boy could play the violin so well.
A. That...what B. What...that C. That...which D. What...which

40. It is a common belief _____ teenagers today know about computers and are familiar _____ using them in all aspects of life.

- A. that; out B. what; with C. that; with D. what; about

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考查宾语从句。宾语从句后应用陈述语序, 所以排除 A 和 B 项。根据句意: 我想知道他的名字是什么。连接代词应用 what。所以排除 C 项。

2. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考查宾语从句。宾语从句后应用陈述语序, 所以排除 A 项。连接代词应在前引导宾语从句, 所以排除 B 项。若选 C 项, 意思为“你能告诉我能到达哪一个车站?” 不符合陌生人问路的场景, 所以排除。根据句意推测应该是: “对不起, 打扰一下, 你能告诉我怎么到达车站吗?” 所以最佳答案是 D。

3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 宾语从句的时态应与主句时态保持一致。主句 wondered 是过去时态, 所以从句应该用相应的过去时态, 根据 next term 确定应用过去将来时。B 项为过去完成时, C 项为将来时, D 项为过去时, 所以排除 B、C、D 项。

4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 宾语从句如果是客观真理, 时态不变。太阳从东方升起是客观真理, 所以用一般现在时。rise 和 raise 区别在于: raise 是及物动词, 后面一定要加宾语。而 rise 是不及物动词, 后面不能加宾语。表示太阳升起用 rise。

5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查宾语从句连接代词的选用。根据句意“电脑只能做你指示它要做的事情。”从句中缺少宾语。所以选 C。

6. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题考查主语从句。句意: “她被邀请参加舞会使她非常快乐。”主语从句中不缺少成分应该用 that 连用。

7. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考查主语从句、连接代词的选用。根据句意“谁将做这份工作将由党委会决定”, 缺少主语, 所以选 D。

8. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 本题考查主语从句, 根据句意: “哪一个队将获胜这场比赛是公众关心的问题。”所以答案应该选连接代词 which。

9. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考查主语从句, 根据句意“你是否来由你决定”, whether...or not 是否为固定搭配, 所以选 D。

10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 主语从句作主语, 系动词应用单数形式, 因为有 now, 所以应用一般时态, 故选 B。

11. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题考查表语从句, 根据句意: 他因为生病了, 所以没有来。所以应用 why。

12. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句型 the reason why...is/(was) that...所以答案选 B。

13. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题考查表语从句, 句意: “那就是鲁迅曾经住的地方。”从句中缺地点状语, 所以选连接副词 where。

14. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 同谓语从句中不缺成分用 that 连接。句意: “昨天他没有看到小芳的事实是真的。”同谓语从句中不缺成分, 所以选 B。

15. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考察同谓语从句连接词的选用。根据句意: “我不知道什么时候他将回来。”缺少时间状语, 所以应用关系副词 when, 所以选 B。

16. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 同位语从句, 不缺成份, 用 that 连接。

17. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 本题考查宾语从句的连接词, 根据句意: “没有人能告诉下一步将发生什么。”宾语从句中缺少主语, 故选 A 项。

18. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题考查宾语从句。根据句意“普遍认为给孩子所想要的任何东西是不明智的”,

宾语从句中缺少宾语 A. however, 无论如何; C. whichever, 无论哪一个; D. whenever 无论什么时候; 均不符合题意。B. whatever 无论什么; 符合题意, 故选 B。

19. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题考查宾语从句。根据句意“我们的家乡不同于以前的样子。” it was 后缺少表语连接代词, 应用 what, 故选 B。

20. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本题考查主语从句。真正的主语太长, 应放在句末, 所以应由形式主语 it 代替, 故选 C。

21. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 宾语从句应用陈述语序, 所以排除 A 项。从句中缺少宾语, 所以排除 D 项。根据句意, “你知道这个是被用来做什么的吗”, 应选 B。

22. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 宾语从句应用陈述语序。故排除 B、D 选项。宾语从句时态应与主句时态一致。主句是过去时, 所以排除 A。

23. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据 “There is no doubt that ...” 句型。故选 A。

24. 【答案】D. 【解析】: where 是哪一个, if 表是否, that 无实际意义, how 怎么样。根据回答故选 C。

25. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考查表语从句连接词 “上周我开车到珠海参加时空展览” “那就是你为什么请假的原因”, when 什么时候表时间, what 什么, where 在哪里, why 为什么。根据句意, 故选 C。

26. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 句意 “我想知道是怎么处理那些费塑料袋的”, what 和 do with 搭配。hom 和 deal with 搭配, 所以选 A。

27. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考察表语从句连接代词, 表语从句中缺少主语, 根据句意 “问题是谁将出席这次会议” why 为什么, 表原因; when 什么时候, 表时间; what, 什么; who, 谁, 指人。故选 D。

28. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 宾语从句时态应与主句时态一致, 故排除 B、C 选项, 根据句意, “上星期天, 他答应今天来”。whether 表是否, 故排除 D。

29. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意 “我们应该仔细考虑 Smith 先生在会上所说的话”, 宾语从句 said 后缺宾语, 故选 B。

30. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意 “我们认为当地政府将能够解决住房问题”, 从句中不缺成分。故用 that。

31. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 句意, 她对你诉他的一切感到满意。tell sb sth. 从句中缺宾语, which 哪一个, 不符合题意。that 无意义, 不做成分。若选 C 项, 应去掉 all 为宾语从句, 所以只能选 D 项。all 为先行词, 关系代词 that 作 tell 后的宾语。

32. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 宾语从句应用陈述语序, 故排除 A 项。句意: Henry 杀死了那只狗, 我将问他为什么那么做”。做的动作已经过去, D 项为现在完成时, 故排除, C 项中 did 后无宾语, 所以只能选 B 项, that 代指上句提到的。

33. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 宾语从句应用陈述语序, 故排除 B、D 选项。问进展怎么样应用 how, 故排除。

34. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本题考查宾语从句连接词, 根据句意: “请告诉我你想要哪一种咖啡, 浓的还是淡的。” 应选 which 哪一个。

35. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本题考查主语从句, 主语从句中不缺成分用 that, 主语从句作主语, 谓语动词应用单数第三人称, 故选 D。

36. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 句意, 你 “难以想象当他们收到这些漂亮的圣诞礼物时是多么激动”。宾语从句中, 连接词在前, 故排除 D 项。用陈述语序, 故排除 C 项。根据句意, how 修饰 excited. 故排除 B。

37. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本题是一个含有主语从句和表语从句的复合句, 主语从句中 know 后缺宾语, 故用 what, 排除 A 项。根据句意, 表语从句中缺少地点状语。故排除 C、D 选项。

38. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意 “生命的真正价值不是你所得到的, 而是你所付出的。” get, give 后都缺宾语, 故选 C。

39. 【答案】B. 【解析】：本题是有主语从句和表语从句的复合句。主语从句中缺主语，用 what，排除 A、C 选项。表语从句中不缺成份用 that 连用。排除 D。

40. 【答案】C. 【解析】：同位语从句中不缺成份用 that 连用，故排除 B、D 项。be familiar with 对…熟悉，故排除 A。

(七) 定语从句



考纲要求

1. 掌握定语从句中关系词的用法。
2. 限制性定语从句和非限制性定语从句的辨析。



考点指向

主要考查关系代词和关系副词的正确运用，特别是它们在非限制性定语从句中的运用。



例题解析

1. (2012 年第 20 题) Jim dislikes people _____ talk much but never do anything.

A. whom B. when C. whose D. who

解析：考查定语从句。先行词 people 指人，在定语从句中做主语，故用关系代词 who。

2. (2013 年第 16 题) We shall never forget the day _____ we met for the first time.

A. where B. that C. which D. when

解析：先行词 the day 表时间，在从句中做时间状语，故只能用关系副词 when。



知识要点

定语从句《知识要点》详见本书相关教学资料包。（详见前言）



强化训练

1. The foreigner _____ visited our school is from Canada.
A. which B. who C. when D. whom
2. I hate the people _____ don't help others when they are in trouble.
A. who B. which C. they D. where
3. This is the boy of _____ we are proud.

- A. he B. who C. whom D. Which
4. —Who is the man _____ is talking to our English teacher?
—Oh! It's Mr Baker, our maths teacher.
- A. that B. he C. whom D. which
5. This is the best place _____ I have ever visited.
- A. which B. when C. where D. that
6. Nobody knows the reason _____ she didn't come to the meeting.
- A. that B. which C. why D. when
7. The moon is a world _____ there is no life.
- A. that B. which C. where D. why
8. He has forgotten the day _____ he arrived.
- A. when B. where C. that D. which
9. He still remembers the days _____ he spent with your family.
- A. when B. where C. that D. on which
10. Mr. White, _____ car had been stolen, came to the policeman.
- A. who B. that C. whose D. which
11. He got to the village _____ his family once lived before liberation.
- A. that B. which C. when D. where
12. I don't like _____ you speak to her.
- A. the way in that B. the way C. the way which D. the way of which
13. This is the house _____ our beloved Premier Zhou once lived and worked.
- A. which B. that C. when D. where
14. He didn't tell me the place _____ he was born.
- A. that B. which C. when D. where
15. He lived in a small village, _____ was a long way from the railway station.
- A. that B. which C. where D. when
16. I work in a business _____ almost everyone is waiting for a great chance.
- A. how B. which C. where D. that
17. American women usually identify their best friend as someone _____ they can talk frequently.
- A. who B. as C. about which D. with whom
18. There is nothing in the world _____ can frighten him.
- A. which B. when C. that D. Who
19. Fortunately we had a map, without _____ we would have got lost.
- A. what B. it C. which D. that
20. The man _____ is wearing a blue jacket is Jim's uncle.
- A. which B. whom C. / D. who
21. Mr. Zhang bought a new house but _____ will need a lot of work before they can move in.
- A. they B. it C. one D. which

22. Is this factory _____ you worked at?
A. the one B. which C. that D. where
23. Is this the factory _____ you worked?
A. where B. which C. that D. the one
24. —Does the teacher know everybody _____ planted the trees?
—Yes, he does.
A. which B. whose C. where D. who
25. The letter _____ I received from him yesterday is very important.
A. who B. where C. what D. that
26. —Where is the scientist _____ gave us the talk yesterday?
—He has gone back to Qinghua University.
A. whom B. who C. whose D. which
27. Do you know a boy _____ sister is a nurse in a hospital?
A. who B. that C. whom D. whose
28. Do you know the young lady _____ your mother is talking?
A. who B. whom C. with whom D. which
29. When she came back from abroad, Lucy told us about the cities and the people _____ she had visited.
A. that B. who C. where D. which
30. Because of the traffic jam _____ I was caught, I was late for the meeting.
A. by which B. in which C. that D. where
31. The film brought the hours back to me _____ I was taken good care of in that far-away village.
A. until B. that C. when D. where
32. —Barbara, where do you work?
—I work for a company _____ sells cars.
A. which B. where C. what D. who
33. We are living in an age _____ many things are done on computer.
A. which B. that C. whose D. when
34. She said she had finished her work, _____ I doubted very much.
A. whose B. which C. who D. that
35. Football, _____ is a very interesting game, is played all over the world.
A. who B. that C. it D. which
36. I shall never forget those years _____ I lived in the country with the farmers, _____ has a great effect on my life.
A. that, which B. which, that C. when, which D. when, who
37. I don't know the reason _____ you were absent from the meeting, but I am sure that someone will tell me the reason _____ you haven't told me.
A. why; that B. that; why C. because; which D. of which; that

38. The manager had to go to Beijing on business on June 23, _____ happened to be his only son's birthday.

- A. when B. which C. that D. then

39. The soldiers had to sleep in their wet clothes, _____ most uncomfortable.

- A. which I think it was B. which I think was
C. which I think D. that I think was

40. My father, _____ is an excellent violinist, is giving a concert next month.

- A. that B. when C. where D. who

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 定语从句中缺乏作主语的关系代词, 先行词 foreigner 指人, 故选 B.
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 定语从句中缺乏作主语的关系代词, 先行词 people 指人, 故选 A.
3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 先行词指人, 用于介词后的关系代词只能为 whom. 故选 C.
4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 先行词为 man, 作主语的关系代词只能为 who/that, 故选 A.
5. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 先行词被最高级修饰, 关系代词只能用 that, 故选 D.
6. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 先行词为 reason, 关系词在定语从句中作原因状语, 只能用 why. 故选 C.
7. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 关系词在定语从句中作地点状语, 只能用 where, 故选 C.
8. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 先行词为 day, 关系词在定语从句中作时间状语, 只能用 when, 故选 A.
9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 先行词为 days, 关系词在定语从句中作 spent 的宾语, 只能用 that, 故选 C.
10. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 先行词为 Mr. White, 关系词在定语从句中做 car 的定语, 只能用 whose, 故选 C.
11. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 先行词为 village, 定语从句中的谓语动词为不及物动词, 并且没有相应的介词, 所以关系词在定语从句中作地点状语, 只能用 where, 或者 in which, 故选 D.
12. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 当先行词为 way 时, 关系词在定语从句中作状语, 只能用 in which, that, 或者什么都不用. 故选 B.
13. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 先行词为 house, 定语从句中的谓语动词为 lived and worked, 两者只能构成地点状语的关系, 故选 D.
14. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 先行词是地点名词, 关系词在定语从句中作地点状语, 只能用 where, 故选 D.
15. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 非限制性定语从句引导词只能用 which, 并且 which 在从句中作主语, 故选 B.
16. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 先行词为地点名词 business, 关系词在定语从句中作地点状语, 只能用 where, 故选 C.
17. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 定语从句的谓语动词为不及物 talk, 它后常用介词 to, with, 还有 about, 但是此题的意思是能与他们频繁交流, 谈论的人. 只能选用介词 with, 故选 D.
18. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 先行词为不定代词 nothing, 关系词只能用 that, 故选 C.
19. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 先行词为指物的 map, 介词后的关系代词只能用 which. 故选 C.
20. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 先行词为 man, 关系词在定语从句中作主语, 只能用 that 或者 which, 故选 D.
21. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 此题与定语从句没有关系, and 为表示转折的连词, 连接了两个简单句, 只能用代词 it 代替 house, 故选 B.
22. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 主句缺少表语, 同时又是定语从句的先行词, 所以只能用 the one 作表语, 这个工厂是你去年工作的那个工厂吗? the one 后面省略了关系代词, 因为关系代词作宾语. 故选 A.
23. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 定语从句的谓语动词为不及物动词 work, 且没有相应的介词, 它和先行词 factory 只能构成地点状语, 故选 A.
24. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 先行词为 everybody, 关系词在定语从句中作主语, 只能用 who, 故选 D.

25. 【答案】D. 【解析】先行词为 letter, 关系词在从句中作 received 的宾语, 用 that 或者 which, 故选 D.

26. 【答案】B. 【解析】定语从句中缺少作主语的关系代词, 先行词指人, 故选 B.

27. 【答案】D. 【解析】定语从句缺少修饰 sister 的定语, 只能用 whose, 故选 D.

28. 【答案】C. 【解析】定语从句的谓语动词为不及物动词 talk, 先行词为 boy, talk 后跟宾语 boy 必须加上介词 with. 故选 C.

29. 【答案】A. 【解析】先行词既有人又有物时, 关系代词只能用 that. 故选 A.

30. 【答案】B. 【解析】be caught in 为固定搭配, 句意: 因为我遇上交通堵塞, 所以开会迟到. 故选 B.

31. 【答案】C. 【解析】先行词为 hours, 关系词在从句中作时间状语, 故选 C.

32. 【答案】A. 【解析】从句中缺少主语, 先行词指物, 只能用 which 或者 that, 故选 A.

33. 【答案】D. 【解析】从句中缺少时间状语, 故选 D.

34. 【答案】B. 【解析】非限制性定语从句用 which 引导, which 作从句中的宾语. 故选 B.

35. 【答案】D. 【解析】非限制性定语从句用 which 引导, which 作从句中的主语. 故选 D.

36. 【答案】C. 【解析】第一空先行词为 years, 关系词在从句中作时间状语, 只能用 when; 第二空为非限制性定语从句, 只能用 which, 故选 C.

37. 【答案】A. 【解析】第一空关系词在从句中作原因状语用 why, 第二空关系词在从句中作宾语, 只能用 which 或者 that, 故选 A.

38. 【答案】B. 【解析】关系词引导非限制性定语从句, 只能用 which. 故选 B.

39. 【答案】B. 【解析】非限制性定语从句引导词用 which, 并且作从句的主语, I think 是插入语, 插入在 which 之后, 故选 B.

40. 【答案】D. 【解析】先行词指人, 在从句中作主语, 又是非限制性定语从句, 故选 D.

(八) 状语从句



考纲要求

掌握状语从句(时间、条件、原因、地点、目的、结果、让步)的用法。



考点指向

考查在不同的状语从句中连词的选择。



例题解析

1. (2010 年第 14 题) He still wants to walk the dog, _____ it is raining hard outside.

A. if B. since C. though D. when

解析: 题意为尽管外面雨下得很大, 他仍然想遛狗。though 虽然, 尽管, 引导让步状语从句, 符合题意, 故选 C.

2. (2011 年第 14 题) We didn't start to have our lessons _____ the teacher came back to school.

- A. until B. if C. when D. because

解析: 题意为直到老师回到学校, 我们才开始上课。not...until 引导时间状语从句, 意为直到……才, 符合题意, 故选 A。

3. (2011 年第 18 题) The weather is _____ that we want to go camping in the mountain.

- A. such nice B. too nice C. so nice D. how nice

解析: 题意为天气是如此之好, 以至于我们都想去山区野营了。so...that...意为如此……以至于……故选 C。

4. (2012 年第 9 题)—Is everyone here today?

—No. Tom is at home _____ he has got a bad cold.

- A. because B. if C. until D. unless

解析: 题意为大家都在这里吗? 不, Tom 不在这里, 他在家, 因为他得了严重的感冒。because 引导, 符合题意, 故选 A。

5. (2012 年第 19 题) Mr. Smith will make the opening speech in the meeting, so we won't start the meeting _____ he arrives.

- A. when B. until C. as D. after

解析: 题意为: 史密斯先生将在会议上致开幕词, 所以直到他到达我们才开始开会。not...until 直到……才, 符合题意, 所以选 B。

6. (2013 年第 17 题) Tom has been in the factory _____ he left school.

- A. when B. since C. as soon as D. whether

解析: 题意为: 汤姆自学校毕业以来就一直在这家工厂工作。since 表示从过去的一个时间点一直到现在的时间, 意为自从……以来, 从句中用一般过去时, 主句用现在完成时, 故选 B。



知识要点

状语从句《知识要点》部分详见本书相关教学资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. I'll let you know _____ he comes back.

- A. before B. because C. as soon as D. although

2. Jane wore a raincoat _____ it is raining.

- A. because B. so C. but D. however

3. Read it aloud _____ the class can hear you.

- A. so that B. if C. when D. although

4. It is about ten years _____ I met you last.

- A. since B. for C. when D. as

5. _____ she was very tired, she went on working.
A. As B. Although C. Even D. In spite of
6. I learned a little Russian _____ I was at middle school.
A. though B. although C. as if D. when
7. _____ we got to the station, the train had left already.
A. If B. Unless C. Since D. When
8. She was _____ tired _____ she could not move an inch.
A. so; that B. such; that C. very; that D. so; as
9. Someone called me up in the middle of the night, but they hung up _____ I could answer the phone.
A. after B. since C. until D. before
10. Speak to him slowly _____ he may understand you better.
A. since B. so that C. for D. because
11. You'll miss the train _____ you hurry up.
A. unless B. as C. if D. until
12. When you read the book, you'd better make a mark _____ you have any questions.
A. at which B. at where C. the place D. where
13. I haven't heard from him _____ he left school.
A. after B. before C. since D. when
14. I hurried _____ I wouldn't be late for class.
A. since B. so that C. as if D. unless
15. _____ I catch a cold, I have pain in my back.
A. Every time B. Though C. Even D. Where
16. Edison never gave up, _____ he failed many times.
A. and B. or C. though D. if
17. The child was _____ immediately after supper.
A. enough tired to go to bed B. too tired to go to bed
C. so tired that he went to bed D. very tired, he went to bed
18. Xiao Ming didn't recite the text _____ he had a fever last night.
A. unless B. why C. until D. because
19. _____ David goes, he is welcome.
A. Whichever B. However C. Wherever D. Whatever
20. —Mum, _____ shall we have lunch?
—We will have it when your dad _____.
A. where; returns B. when; returns
C. where; will return D. when; will return
21. You will stay healthy _____ you do more exercise, such as running and walking.
A. where B. how C. before D. if
22. After the war, a new school building was put up _____ there had once been a theatre.

- A. that B. where C. which D. when
23. It was _____ that she couldn't finish it by herself.
A. so difficult a work B. such a difficult work
C. so difficult work D. such difficult work
24. Although Peter is clever, _____ work hard.
A. he doesn't B. he isn't C. but he doesn't D. but he isn't
25. Tom and I will go climbing if it _____ tomorrow.
A. doesn't snow B. won't snow C. isn't snow D. can't snow
26. Mary is _____ clever _____ she understands everything.
A. such a; that B. such an; that C. so; that D. so; as
27. Tom had a headache, _____ he didn't go to the party.
A. why B. so C. but D. or
28. _____ you try, you will never succeed.
A. If B. Unless C. Since D. Until
29. You may do anything you like _____ it is not against the law.
A. even if B. so long as C. unless D. as soon as
30. We must hurry up _____ catch up with the last train.
A. that B. so that to C. in order that D. in order to
31. The doctor didn't take a rest _____ the operation was over.
A. after B. until C. and D. because
32. I saw Li Lei yesterday. We had not seen each other _____ I left Beijing.
A. after B. before C. since D. until
33. _____ Alice is a little child, she knows a lot of knowledge.
A. Though B. If C. Since D. Because
34. _____ I got home, my parents were watching TV.
A. As soon as B. Before C. After D. When
35. Look after the children _____ I am out.
A. though B. so that C. such that D. while
36. We'll go to visit the Great Wall _____ it doesn't rain tomorrow.
A. since B. as soon as C. when D. if
37. I won't believe it _____ I see it with my own eyes.
A. and B. until C. that D. if
38. You will learn English well _____ you put your heart into it.
A. if B. so C. until D. or
39. Lucy always takes a seat in the first row _____ she can hear better.
A. as soon as B. so C. and D. so that
40. _____ he got out of the car, he was given some flowers.
A. Until B. As soon as C. Before D. If
41. —I hope you'll enjoy your trip, dear!

- Thank you, mum. I'll give you a call _____ I get there.
A. until B. as soon as C. since D. till
42. You should make a good plan _____ you do anything important.
A. before B. after C. though D. until
43. John may phone tonight. I don't want to go out _____ he phones.
A. as long as B. in order to C. in case D. so that
44. The camera is _____ expensive _____ I can't afford it.
A. so; that B. such; that C. so; as to D. enough; that
45. The policeman asked the child _____ cross the street _____ the traffic lights turned green.
A. not; when B. don't; before C. not to; until D. don't; when
46. Today, we'll begin _____ we stopped yesterday so that no point will be left.
A. if B. where C. when D. though
47. _____ difficulties I meet with on my way to success, I'll overcome them.
A. Whatever B. Whenever C. Only D. However
48. We will have to finish the job, _____.
A. long it takes however B. it takes however long
C. long however it takes D. however long it takes
49. No matter _____ hard it may be, I will carry it out.
A. what B. whatever C. how D. however
50. _____ you do, you must do it well.
A. Which B. Whenever C. Whatever D. When

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句, 引导词为 as soon as. 句意: 她一回来, 我就告诉你。
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查原因状语从句, 引导词为 because. 句意: 因为天下雨, 所以琼穿着雨衣。
3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查目的状语从句, 引导词为 so that. 句意: 大声朗读以便学生都能够听见。
4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句, 引导词为 since. 句意: 从我上次见到你已经十年了。
5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查让步状语从句, 引导词为 although. 句意: 尽管她很累, 但她仍然继续工作。as 也可以引导让步状语从句, 但需要倒装。in spite of 表让步, 但不能引导句子, 故选 B。
6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句。句意: 当我在中学的时候, 我学了一点俄语。
7. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句, 引导词为 when. 句意: 当我们到达车站的时候, 车已经离开了。”
8. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 固定结构 so...that..., 如此……以至于……。
9. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句。意思为有人午夜给我打电话, 我还没来得及接电话他就挂断了。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查目的状语从句, 引导词为 so that, 句意: 给他讲慢点, 以便他能更好地理解你说的话。
11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查条件状语从句, 引导词为 unless. 句意: 除非你快点, 否则你会错过火车。unless= if...not...。所以此句还可以改为 You will miss the train if you don't hurry up.

12. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查地点状语从句, 引导词为 where。句意: 你最好在有问题的地方做个标记。
13. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句, 引导词为 since。句意: 自从他离开学校, 我再也没有收到他的来信。
14. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查目的状语从句, 引导词为 so that。句意: 我加快速度以便我不会上课迟到。
15. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句, 引导词为 every time。句意: 我每次感冒都会背部疼痛。
16. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查让步状语从句, 引导词为 though。句意: 尽管爱迪生失败很多次, 但他从来没有放弃。
17. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查固定句型, 如此……以至于……, so…that…。句意: 孩子如此累以至于晚饭后立刻就上床睡觉了。
18. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查原因状语从句, 引导词为 because。句意: 因为小明昨晚发烧, 所以他没有背诵过课文。
19. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查让步状语从句, 引导词为 wherever。句意: 无论 David 去了什么地方, 他总是很受欢迎。
20. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 第一空为时间状语从句, 我们什么时候吃晚饭? 第二空为, 你爸爸回来的时候我们就吃晚饭。时间状语从句用一般现在时, 主句用一般将来时, 所以第一空选 when, 第二空选 returns。
21. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查条件状语从句, 引导词为 if。句意: 如果你做更多的运动, 你就会保持健康。
22. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查地点状语从句, 引导词为 where。
23. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查结果状语从句。固定句型 such…that, …如此……以至于……。Work 是不可数名词, 故排除 A、B 选项。中心词为 work, 所以用 such 而不用 so。故选 D。
24. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 让步状语从句出现 although 时不能出现 but, 故排除 C、D 选项。work 为实意动词, 变否定要借助助动词 do, 故选 A。
25. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 条件状语从句要用一般现在时, 主句要用一般将来时, 排除 B 选项。snow 为实意动词, 变否定要借助助动词 do, 故选 A。
26. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 固定结构。So + 形容词 + that 从句。
27. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 因果关系表结果用 so。句意: 汤姆头痛所以没有参加聚会。
28. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 条件状语从句引导词只能用 unless。句意: 除非你尝试, 否则你永远不会成功。
29. 【答案】B. 【解析】: even if 即使; so long as 只要; unless 除非, 否则, as soon as 一……就……。句意为: 你可以做你喜欢的任何事情, 只要它不违法。
30. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 目的状语只能选 in order to。C 项后要加句子。B 项本身错误, 若改为 so as to 就可以选了。
31. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 固定句型 not…until…, 直到……才……。句意: 医生直到手术结束才休息。
32. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句, 引导词为 since。句意: 自从我离开北京, 我们都没有彼此见过。
33. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查让步状语从句, 引导词为 though。句意: 尽管爱丽丝是小孩, 但是她却懂许多知识。
34. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句, 引导词为 when。句意: 当我回家的时候, 我的父母亲正在看电视。
35. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 当我出去的时候, 帮我照看孩子们。只有 D 项可以引导时间状语从句。
36. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查条件状语从句, 引导词为 if。句意: 如果明天不下雨, 我们就去参观长城。
37. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查固定句型 not…until…。句意: 直到我亲眼看到我才会相信。

38. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查条件状语从句。句意: 如果你用心学习英语, 你就会学好英语。
39. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查目的状语从句。句意: 露西总是坐在第一排以便她能听得更清楚。
40. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句。句意: 他一下车, 就收到许多鲜花。表示一……就……, 用 as soon as。
41. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句。句意: 我一到达那儿就会打电话给你。
42. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查时间状语从句。句意: 在做任何重要的事情之前, 你应该制定一个良好的计划。
43. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查条件状语从句。句意: 约翰今晚会的打电话来, 我不想出去。
44. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查固定结构。so + 形容词 + that 从句 如此……以至于……。
45. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查 ask sb. not to do sth., 即可排除 A B D。
46. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 考查地点状语从句。句意: 今天我们就在昨天停止的地方开始。
47. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 考查让步状语从句。句意: 在我成功的道路上无论什么样的困难, 我都会克服。只能用 whatever, 而且 whatever difficulties 作 meet with 的宾语。故选 A。
48. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 考查让步状语从句。句意: 无论花费多长时间, 我们都必须完成工作。however = no matter how, 故只能选 however long it takes。
49. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查让步状语从句。表示困难的程度。句意: 无论它有多么难, 我都会把它执行下去。故只能选 how。
50. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 考查让步状语从句, 连接词在句中作 do 的宾语, 所以只能选 whatever。句意: 无论你做什么, 你必须把它做好。

(九) 主谓一致



考纲要求

掌握主谓一致的三大原则, 即语法一致、逻辑意义一致、就近一致原则。



考点指向

考查英语句子中主语和谓语在特殊情况下是如何协调的。



例题解析

1. (2011 年第 19 题) Each of the students _____ the opportunity to be a volunteer for the 2011 World Horticultural Expo in Xian.

A. have

B. is

C. has

D. were

解析: 题意为: 每个学生都有机会成为一个 2011 年西安世界园艺博览会的志愿者。each 做主语时, 谓语动词用单数, 根据题意选 C。

2. In fact, the house as well as his two cars _____ him all the money he earned during the 20 years.

A. has been cost B. has cost C. have been cost D. have cost

解析: 句意为: 事实上, 那所房子以及他的两辆车花了他 20 年来所有的积蓄。as well as 连接两个部分作主语时, 谓语动词要根据前一部分来判断, 本句中为 the house, 因此谓语动词用单数形式; sth.costs sb.money 不用被动形式, 故选 B。



知 识 要 点

主谓一致《知识要点》详见本书相关教学资料包。(详见前言)



强 化 训 练

- How time flies! Ten years _____ passed.
A. have B. has C. is D. are
- Ten kilometers _____ a very long way to go in a day.
A. are B. has C. is D. have
- Neither she nor Dick and I _____ interested in maths.
A. is B. are C. am D. be
- Neither he nor I _____ from Canada. We are from Australia.
A. is B. was C. am D. be
- The writer and poet _____ come to our school.
A. are B. is C. have D. has
- All my classmates, except Wu Lin, _____ interested in singing English songs.
A. is B. am C. are D. be
- My mother as well as I _____ ready to help you.
A. is B. are C. am D. be
- He thinks that two months _____ quite a long time.
A. are B. is C. be D. was
- There _____ a pen, two pencils, and three books on the desk.
A. are B. is C. has D. have
- There _____ a sports meeting in our school next week.
A. are going to be B. are going to have
C. is going to be D. is going to have
- The number of pages in this book _____ three hundred.
A. is B. are C. has D. have
- Look! There _____ playing with the tourists on Yinhe Square.
A. are a number of deer B. are a number of deers
C. is a number of deer D. is a number of deers

13. Most of the Chinese people _____ hard-working and friendly.
A. were B. was C. has been D. are
14. Not only the parents but also Mary _____ London .They will come back in five days.
A. has been to B. have been to C. has gone to D. have gone to
15. Not only I but also Jane and Mary _____ tired of having one examination after another.
A. is B. are C. am D. be
16. The factory, including its machines and buildings, _____ burnt last night.
A. is B. are C. were D. was
17. Each man and each woman _____ bring some water here.
A. has B. have C. has to D. have to
18. The rich _____ not always happy.
A. are B. is C. has D. have
19. The old woman, together with her two grandsons, _____ crossing the road.
A. are B. is C. as D. have
20. There _____ a lot of people at the street corner when the accident happened.
A. was B. were C. have been D. had
21. I, who _____ your friend, will help you when in need.
A. has B. have C. is D. am
22. George, along with his classmates _____ trees every spring.
A. plant B. plants C. planted D. to plant
23. E-mail, as well as telephones, _____ an important part in daily communication.
A. are playing B. have played C. is playing D. play
24. A library with five thousand books _____ to the nation as a gift.
A. is offered B. has offered C. are offered D. have offered
25. The White family _____ very large.
A. is B. has C. are D. have
26. The family _____ sitting round the table now.
A. is B. was C. are D. were
27. Either you or I _____ going to the teacher's office after class.
A. is B. am C. are D. was
28. _____ either you or I going to the teacher's office after class?
A. Is B. Am C. Are D. Was
29. The famous singer and the famous dancer _____ our party this evening.
A. was to attend B. were to attend
C. is going to attend D. are going to attend
30. The famous singer and dancer _____ our party this evening.
A. was to attend B. were to attend

- C. is going to attend D. are going to attend
31. Many a student _____ that mistake before.
A. had made B. has been made C. have made D. has made
32. Now Tom with his classmates _____ football on the playground.
A. play B. are playing C. is playing D. plays
33. Climbing hills _____ better than having classes.
A. are B. is C. was D. have
34. Where to get the materials _____ at the meeting.
A. have not discussed B. have not been discussed
C. has not discussed D. has not been discussed
35. Neither of the novels which _____ popular with us _____ been translated into Chinese.
A. are; has B. are; have C. is; have D. is; has
36. —How many students are there in your school ?
—_____ the students in our school _____ over two thousand.
A. The number of; is B. The number of; are
C. A number of; of D. A number of; are
37. The number of people invited _____ fifty, but a number of them _____ absent for different reasons.
A. were; was B. was; was C. was; were D. were; were
38. One-third of the area _____ covered with green trees. About seventy percent of the trees _____ been planted.
A. are; have B. is; has C. is; have D. are; has
39. Bob is one of my friends who _____ helping me with English.
A. are B. was C. were D. is
40. He is the only one of the officers who _____ invited to the ball here.
A. are B. was C. were D. is

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B。【解析】: 时态应为现在完成时, 排除 C、D 选项。时间名词作主语, 尽管是复数形式, 它们作为一个单一的概念时, 谓语动词用单数, 排除 A。
2. 【答案】C。【解析】: 表示距离的名词作主语, 谓语动词用单数, 句子又是一般现在时, 故排除 A、B、D。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】: 就近原则。谓语动词的单复数取决于靠近它的主语。依据 Dick and I, 再有短语 be interested in, 故选 B。
4. 【答案】C。【解析】: 就近原则, be from 来自于, 故选 C。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】: 时态为现在完成时, 排除 A、B 选项。a writer and poem 指同一个人, 故选 D。
6. 【答案】C。【解析】: 就远原则。主语后面即使带有 except 引导的短语, 谓语动词仍与主语保持一致。主语为 all my classmates, 故只能选 C。
7. 【答案】C。【解析】: 就远原则, 主语后面即使带有 as well as 引导的短语, 谓语动词仍与主语保持一致。故选 A。

8. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 表示时间的名词作主语, 即使是复数形式, 谓语动词仍要用单数。故选 B。
9. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 就近原则, there be 结构谓语动词与靠近它的主语在数上保持一致。
10. 【答案】C. 【解析】: there be 结构的将来时, 故排除 B、D 选项。依据 a sports meeting, 故只能选 C。
11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: the number of 作主语, 谓语动词用单数。排除 B、D 选项。书的页数是三百, 故选 A。
12. 【答案】A. 【解析】: a number of 表示许多, 修饰可数名词, 但是 deer 的复数是它本身。故排除 B、C、D。
13. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 一般现在时, 排除 A、B、C 选项。
14. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 就近原则, 排除 B、D 选项。has gone to 表示去了某地, has been to 表示去过某地, 故选 C。
15. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 就近原则, 谓语动词依据 Jane and Mary, 故排除 A、C、D 选项。
16. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 就远原则和一般过去时态就确定了只能选 D。
17. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 情态动词 have to, 排除 A、B 选项。and 连接的并列主语被 each 修饰, 谓语只能用单数。
18. 【答案】A. 【解析】: the + adj 表示一类人, 谓语动词用复数。
19. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 就远原则, 谓语依据 the old woman, 故选 B。
20. 【答案】B. 【解析】: there be 结构和一般过去时态确定答案为 B。
21. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 关系代词 who 指代 I, 又是一般现在时态, 所以只能用 am。
22. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 就远原则和一般现在时态确定选 B。
23. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 就远原则和现在进行时态确定选 C。
24. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 就远原则和被动语态确定选 A。
25. 【答案】A. 【解析】: family 是集体名词作主语, 指整个集体, 谓语动词用单数。句子是主系表的结构, 故选 A。
26. 【答案】C. 【解析】: family 是集体名词作主语, 在此指集体的成员, 谓语动词用复数。又是现在进行时, 故选 C。
27. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由就近原则和 be going to do 句型确定选 B。
28. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 就近原则。
29. 【答案】D. 【解析】: and 连接并列的主语, 谓语动词用复数。又是将来时态, 故只能选 D。
30. 【答案】C. 【解析】: and 连接并列的主语指代同一人, 谓语动词用单数。又是一般将来时, 故只能选 C。
31. 【答案】D. 【解析】: many a + 单数名词, 尽管表示许多的含义, 但谓语动词要用单数。又是现在完成时, 故选 D。
32. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由现在进行时和就近原则确定选 C。
33. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 动名词短语作主语, 谓语动词用单数。又是一般现在时态, 故选 B。
34. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 特殊疑问词 + 不定式作主语, 谓语动词用单数。又是现在完成时态的被动语态, 故选 D。
35. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 第一空 which 指代 novels, 所以排除 C、D 选项。第二空的主语被 neither 修饰, 谓语动词只能用单数, 故选 A。
36. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 第一空的意思是我们学校学生的数目, 所以用 the number of; a number of 的意思是许多, 大量的。the number of 作主语, 谓语动词用单数。故选 A。

37. 【答案】C. 【解析】: the number of 作主语, 谓语动词用单数, 所以排除 A、D 选项。a number of 作主语, 谓语动词用复数, 排除 B。

38. 【答案】C. 【解析】: “分数或百分数 + 名词”作主语时, 谓语动词单复数取决于连用的名词。area 决定第一空用 is, trees 决定第二空用 have。故选 C。

39. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 先行词被 one of 修饰, 定语从句中谓语动词要用复数形式。又是一般现在时态, 故确定选 A。

40. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 先行词被 the only one of 修饰时, 定语从句中谓语动词要用单数形式。又是一般过去时态, 故选 B。

(十) 倒装句



考纲要求

考生需要掌握使用部分倒装和全部倒装的几种常见情况。



考点指向

主要是考查句子的正确语序、置于句首的副词、短语等。



例题解析

1. (2011 年第 17 题) _____ in this way can it be solved.

A. Just B. Only C. Need D. Finally

解析: 题意为只有通过这种方式, 才能解决问题。四个选项中只有 “only + 状语或状语从句” 置于句首时, 句子才部分倒装, 所以选 B。

2. Not until he left his home _____ to know how important the family was for him.

A. did he begin B. had he begun C. he begin D. he had begun

解析: 本题考查倒装句式。not until 位于句首时, 主句要用部分倒装形式, 同时 begin 发生在 left 之后或同时发生, 所以要用一般过去时态, 所以选 A。



知识要点

倒装句的《知识要点》部分详见本书相关教学资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. Only when you realize the importance of foreign languages _____ them well.
A. you can learn B. can you learn C. you learned D. did you learn
2. Not only _____ a promise, but also he kept it.
A. has he made B. does he make C. he made D. did he make
3. Not until I began to work _____ how much time I had wasted.
A. didn't I realize B. did I realize C. I didn't realize D. I realized
4. Never before _____ seen such a pretty girl.
A. am I B. was I C. have I D. shall I
5. _____ does the little girl eat in bed.
A. Certainly B. Sometimes C. Seldom D. Once
6. Little _____ about his own health though he was very ill.
A. he cared B. did he care C. does he care D. he cares
7. Seldom _____ him recently.
A. I met B. I have met C. have I met D. didn't I meet
8. Hardly _____ down _____ he stepped in.
A. had I sat ...than B. I had sat ...when
C. had I sat ...then D. had I sat ...when
9. No sooner _____ asleep than she heard a knock at the door.
A. she had fallen B. had she fallen C. she had fell D. had she fell
10. He did not see Smith. _____.
A. Neither did I B. Nor didn't I C. Neither I did D. So didn't I
11. I don't know how to swim, _____.
A. and my sister doesn't neither B. nor my sister can
C. nor does my sister D. and my sister does either
12. Only then _____ realize that he was wrong.
A. he did B. he does C. does he D. did he
13. —It was hot yesterday.
—_____.
A. It was so B. So was it C. So it was D. So it did
14. She has passed the test. _____.
A. So am I B. So have I C. So I have D. Also I have
15. _____ succeed in doing anything.
A. Only by working hard we can B. By only working hard we can
C. Only we can by working hard D. Only by working hard can we
16. —Do you know Jim quarreled with his brother?
—I don't know, and _____.

- A. nor don't I care
C. I don't care neither
- B. nor do I care
D. I don't care also
17. She plays the piano very well, _____.
A. so her brother does
C. so does her brother
- B. her brother does
D. so her brother
18. You say he works hard, _____, and _____.
A. so he does; so you do
C. so does he; so do you
- B. so he does; so do you
D. so does he; so you do
19. So carelessly _____ that he almost killed himself.
A. he drives
C. does he drive
- B. he drove
D. did he drive
20. A fish needs water and without water it will die. _____.
A. So does a man
C. So it is with a man
- B. So will a man
D. So is it with a man
21. —I don't think I can walk any further.
—_____, let's stop here for a rest.
A. Neither and I
C. I don't think so
- B. Neither can I
D. I think so
22. Not until he arrived home _____ he find that his wallet had been stolen.
A. did
B. would
C. when
D. that
23. So loudly _____ that every one of the class could hear him.
A. did he speak
B. did he spoke
C. spoke he
D. he spoke
24. Not only _____ to stay at home, but he was also forbidden to see his friends.
A. he was forcing
C. was he forcing
- B. he was forced
D. was he forced
25. Only in this way _____ make progress in your English.
A. can you
B. you can
C. are you
D. you are
26. I finally got the job I dreamed about. Never in all my life _____ so happy.
A. did I feel
B. I felt
C. I had felt
D. had I felt
27. Never _____ forget the days when _____ together with you.
A. shall I; I lived
C. I shall; I lived
- B. shall I; did I live
D. I shall ; did I live
28. Hardly _____ out at night.
A. does she go
B. goes she
C. she goes
D. she has gone
29. Not a single song _____ at yesterday's party.
A. she sang
B. sang she
C. did she sing
D. she did sing
30. —It is burning hot today, isn't it?
—Yes. _____ yesterday.
A. So was it
B. So it was
C. So it is
D. So is it

31. —It was careless of you to have left your clothes outside all night.
—My God! _____.
A. So did I B. So I did C. So were you D. So did you
32. —David has made great progress recently.
—_____, and _____.
A. So he has; so you have B. So he has; so have you
C. So has he; so have you D. So has he; so you have
33. He could hardly drive a car, _____.
A. so couldn't I B. couldn't I either C. I couldn't too D. neither could I
34. At the foot of the mountain _____.
A. a village lie B. lies a village
C. does a village lie D. lying a village
35. Spring begins in March, then _____.
A. April and May come B. April and May are coming
C. come April and May D. are coming April and May
36. Under a big tree _____, half asleep.
A. did sat a fat man B. a fat man sat
C. did a fat man sat D. sat a fat man
37. Look, _____.
A. here the bus comes B. here is the bus coming
C. here comes the bus D. here the bus is coming
38. —Where is Kate?" "Look, _____. She is at the school gate."
A. there she is B. there is she C. here you are D. here it is
39. Out _____, with a stick in his hand.
A. did he rush B. rushed he C. he rushed D. he did rush
40. Early in the day _____ the news _____ the enemy were gone.
A. come...that B. came...that C. comes...that D. came ...what

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: only + 状语从句置于句首, 要构成句子的部分倒装, 排除 A、C 选项。句子为一般现在时, 故只能选 B。

2. 【答案】D. 【解析】: not only 置于句首, 要构成句子的部分倒装, 排除 A、C 选项。根据后半句得知句子为一般过去时, 故选 D。

3. 【答案】B. 【解析】: not until 置于句首, 要构成主句的部分倒装, 排除 C、D 选项。答案 A 错在多了 not。

4. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 否定词 never 置于句首, 构成句子的部分倒装, 又因为句子为现在完成时, 故选 C。

5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 根据句子结构是倒装的形式, 所以只能选表示否定含义的副词 seldom。

6. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 否定词 little 置于句首, 要构成句子的部分倒装, 排除 A、D 选项。通过后半句的 he was ill 确定时态是过去时, 排除 C。故选 B。

7. 【答案】C。【解析】：否定词 seldom 放句首构成部分倒装和 recently 确定时态为现在完成时，故选 C。

8. 【答案】D。【解析】：否定词 hardly 置于句首构成前半句的部分倒装，排除 B。“hardly...when...”是固定结构，“一……就……”。故排除 A、C 选项。

9. 【答案】B。【解析】：否定词 no sooner 置于句首构成句子的部分倒装，排除 A、C 选项。no sooner...than...结构中，no sooner 之后的句子要用过去完成时，fall 的过去分词为 fallen，故排除 D。

10. 【答案】A。【解析】：neither 或者 nor 置于句首，要构成句子的倒装。排除 C 项。D 项本身错误。neither 或者 nor 已经包含了否定含义，故排除 B。

11. 【答案】C。【解析】：前句为否定含义，所以后半句只能用表示否定的 neither 或者 nor 来引导，并且要构成句子的倒装。故排除 B 项。A 项错在 neither 和前面的 doesn't 构成肯定了；D 项错在 either 是放在否定句中表示“也”。故只能选 C。

12. 【答案】D。【解析】：only + adv 置于句首，构成句子的部分倒装。时态是一般过去时，故只能选 D。

13. 【答案】C。【解析】：so 表示“的确如此”时，不构成句子的倒装，只是加强语气。句子时态为一般过去时，主系表结构，故选 C。

14. 【答案】B。【解析】：so 表示“也”置于句首构成句子的部分倒装，时态为现在完成时，故排除 A、C、D。

15. 【答案】D。【解析】：only + 介词短语置于句首构成句子的部分倒装。

16. 【答案】B。【解析】：否定词 nor 置于句首构成句子的部分倒装，所以选 B。

17. 【答案】C。【解析】：so 表示“也”，置于句首构成句子的部分倒装，所以选 C。

18. 【答案】B。【解析】：第一空的 so 表示“的确如此”，不倒装，排除 C、D 选项。第二空的 so 表示“也”，要倒装，故排除 A。

19. 【答案】D。【解析】：so...that...结构中，so + adj/adv 置于句首，要构成句子的倒装，排除 A、B 项。时态为一般过去时，排除 C。

20. 【答案】C。【解析】：当前面至少两种的情况也适合于后者时，要用句型 so it is with ...结构。

21. 【答案】B。【解析】：否定词 neither 表示“也不”，置于句首构成倒装。

22. 【答案】A。【解析】：not until 置于句首要构成主句的部分倒装。又是一般过去时态，所以用助动词 did。

23. 【答案】A。【解析】：so...that...结构中，so + adj/adv 置于句首，要构成句子的倒装，排除 D。时态为一般过去时，倒装时借助助动词 did，故选 A。

24. 【答案】D。【解析】：not only 置于句首，要构成句子的部分倒装，排除 A、B 选项。再有固定结构 be forced to do sth. 被迫去做某事，故选 D。

25. 【答案】D。【解析】：only + 介词短语置于句首构成句子的部分倒装，排除 B、D 选项。make 是实意动词，故排除 C。

26. 【答案】D。【解析】：否定词 never 置于句首构成句子的部分倒装，排除 B、C 选项。时态为过去完成时，排除 A。

27. 【答案】A。【解析】：否定词 never 置于句首构成主句的部分倒装而从句不倒装，故排除 B、C、D 选项。

28. 【答案】A。【解析】：否定词 hardly 置于句首构成句子的部分倒装，又是一般现在时态，所以倒装时借助助动词 does，故选 A。

29. 【答案】C. 【解析】：否定词 not 置于句首构成句子的部分倒装，又是一般过去时，故选 C。

30. 【答案】A. 【解析】：so 表示“也”，置于句首要构成句子的部分倒装，又是一般过去时，故选 A。

31. 【答案】B. 【解析】：so 表示“的确如此”，置于句首不构成倒装。故排除 A、D 项。后句表示“我确实粗心把衣服整个晚上都遗忘在外面了”。故排除 C 项。应选 B。

32. 【答案】B. 【解析】：so 表示“的确如此”，置于句首不构成倒装，so 表示“也”，置于句首要构成句子的部分倒装，故选 B。

33. 【答案】D. 【解析】：前半句表示否定，后句的情况也表示否定“也不”，故只能选 neither 引导并构成倒装，故选 D。

34. 【答案】B. 【解析】：表示地点的介词短语置于句首要构成句子的完全倒装。即谓语动词放于主语之前。故选 B。

35. 【答案】B. 【解析】：本题考查全部倒装，副词 then 放在句首主谓全部倒装。

36. 【答案】D. 【解析】：表示地点的介词短语置于句首要构成句子的完全倒装。即谓语动词放于主语之前。故选 D。

37. 【答案】C. 【解析】：表示地点的副词 here 置于句首，要构成句子的完全倒装。排除 A、D 选项。B 是现在进行时表示将来时，时态错误，故只能选 C。

38. 【答案】A. 【解析】：表示地点的副词 there 置于句首，要构成句子的完全倒装。但句子主语是代词时，不倒装。故选 A。

39. 【答案】C. 【解析】：本题考查完全倒装，但是当主语为人称代词时，句子不倒装。所以选 C。

40. 【答案】B. 【解析】：介词短语放句首，主谓全部倒装，本题又考查同位语从句，同位语从句中不缺成份用 that 连接，根据题意：这天很早的时候消息传来，敌人已经离开了。应为过去时态。所以选 B。

(十一) 虚拟语气



掌握 if 条件句中的虚拟语气、名词性从句中的虚拟语气。



考查表示请求、要求、命令、建议等词后接的从句的虚拟形式。



1. (2011 年第 11 题) I suggest that the meeting _____ next Friday.

A. will hold B. be held C. holds D. held

解析：题意为“我建议会议在下个星期五举行”。suggest 作“建议”讲时，后面的宾语

从句要用虚拟语气，动词形式为 (should) + 动词原形，should 可以省略，故选 B。

2. If we _____ the other road, we might have arrived here in time for the meeting.

- A. take B. had taken C. took D. have taken

解析：句意为“如果走了另一条路的话，我们可能就能及时赶到这里开会了”。由 might have arrived 判断，主从句均表示与过去事实相反的虚拟语气，所以从句谓语用 had done 形式，故选 B。



知 识 要 点

虚拟语气《知识要点》部分详见本书教学资料包。（详见前言）



强 化 训 练

- His doctor suggested that he _____ a short trip abroad.
A. will take B. would take C. take D. took
- Mary insisted that Tom _____ her the ring back.
A. gives B. give C. given D. have given
- Mother suggested that I _____ my homework first before watching TV.
A. did B. do C. shall do D. have done
- He insisted that nothing _____ till he arrived.
A. must be started B. ought to be started
C. could be started D. should be started
- Tom suggests that Ann _____ the house.
A. can sell B. sells C. sell D. sold
- The doctor proposed that my brother _____ his right hand.
A. avoid to use B. should avoid to use
C. avoid using D. avoided using
- Your advice that she _____ till next week is reasonable.
A. will wait B. is going to wait
C. waits D. wait
- My father was strict. He requested that I _____ television on week nights.
A. not watch B. must not to watch
C. not be watching D. have not watched
- You look so tired. It's time you _____.
A. go to sleep B. went to sleep C. should go to bed D. go to bed
- I would buy that car, if I _____ enough money.
A. have B. had C. will have D. had had
- _____ John had not hurt his leg, he would have won the race.
A. If B. Since C. Though D. When

12. You are late. If you _____ a few minutes earlier, you _____ him.
A. come; would meet B. had come; would have met
C. come; will meet D. had come; would meet
13. If you had told me in advance I _____ him at the airport.
A. would meet B. would had met
C. would have met D. would have meet
14. If it _____ another ten minutes, the game would have been called off.
A. had rained B. would have rained
C. have seen D. rained
15. If I _____ you, I _____ more attention to English idioms and phrases.
A. was, shall pay B. am, will pay
C. would be, would pay D. were, would pay
16. I wish you _____ yesterday.
A. have called B. had called C. should have called D. are called
17. I wish it _____ spring all the year round.
A. is B. were C. be D. will be
18. I would rather you _____ right away.
A. leave B. had left C. should have left D. left
19. It is time we _____ some actions to prevent pollution.
A. take B. taking C. took D. are taking
20. —Look at the prizes she's won.
—I am sure if I _____, I'd have won more prizes than she.
A. should try B. tried C. have tried D. had tried
21. He suggested that we _____ here at once.
A. should leave B. must leave C. left D. ought to leave
22. It is high time you _____ up your mind about choosing a job.
A. make B. would make C. will make D. made
23. He insists that he _____ morning exercises every day.
A. should do B. must do C. did D. does
24. He insists that doing morning exercises _____ good to people's health.
A. should do B. must do C. did D. does
25. His smile suggested that he _____ in the exam.
A. should succeed B. succeeds
C. succeed D. had succeeded
26. My suggestion was that the meeting _____ off till next week.
A. to put B. be put C. should put D. be putting
27. The two students talked as if they _____ friends for years.
A. should be B. would be C. have been D. had been
28. It was necessary that he _____ about what had happened.

- A. be told B. was told C. should tell D. tell
29. It is necessary that a worker _____ his work on time.
A. finished B. can finish C. finish D. has finished
30. It is important that he _____ his decision before Friday.
A. will make B. makes C. make D. must make

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: suggest 作“建议”讲时, 后面的宾语从句要用虚拟语气, 动词形式为 (should) + 动词原形, should 可以省略, 故选 C.

2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 玛丽坚决要求汤姆把戒指归还给她。insist 作“坚决要求, 该……”, “坚持认为……定要……”讲时, 后面的宾语从句要用虚拟语气, 动词形式为 (should) + 动词原形, should 可以省略, 故选 B.

3. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 句意: 妈妈建议我在看电视前先把作业完成。suggest 作“建议”讲时, 后面的宾语从句要用虚拟语气, 动词形式为 (should) + 动词原形, should 可以省略, 故选 B.

4. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 同题 2.

5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 同题 1.

6. 【答案】C. 【解析】: propose 作“建议, 提议”讲时, 后面的宾语从句要用虚拟语气, 动词形式为 (should) + 动词原形, should 可以省略。avoid 后跟动名词, 故选 C.

7. 【答案】D. 【解析】: advice 作“建议”讲, 其后的同位语从句要用虚拟语气, 动词形式为 (should) + 动词原形, should 可以省略, 故选 D.

8. 【答案】A. 【解析】: request 作“要求”讲, 其后的宾语从句用虚拟语气, 动词形式为 (should) + 动词原形。Should 可以省略。故选 A.

9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: It is time (that)...句型中。that 从句用一般过去时, 或者 should + 动词原形, should 不可以省略。故选 C.

10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 与现在事实相反的条件句谓语为动词的一般过去式, 故选 B.

11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 后半句是与过去事实相反的主句, 显然前句就为 if 条件句。故选 A.

12. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 此题明显表示与过去事实相反, 条件句用过去完成时, 主句用 should (would, might, could) + have + 过去分词的结构。故选 B.

13. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 通过前半句得知是与过去事实相反的条件句, 主句必须用 should (would, might, could) + have + 过去分词的结构, 故选 C.

14. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 通过前半句得知是与过去事实相反的条件句, 主句必须用 should (would, might, could) + have + 过去分词的结构, 故选 A.

15. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 此句是与现在事实相反。条件句用动词的一般过去时, be 统一用 were; 主句用 should (would, might, could) + 动词原形。故选 D.

16. 【答案】B. 【解析】: wish 的宾语从句要用虚拟语气。如果从句说过去, 从句就要用过去完成时, 即: had done 的结构。故选 B.

17. 【答案】B. 【解析】: wish 的宾语从句要用虚拟语气。如果从句说现在, 从句就要用一般过去时, be 统一用 were。故选 B.

18. 【答案】D. 【解析】: would rather 后的从句常用一般过去式, 表示与现在或将来相反的情况; 用过去完成时, 表示与过去相反的情况。故选 D.

19. 【答案】C. 【解析】: It is time (that)...句型中。that 从句用一般过去时, 或者 should + 动词原形, should 不可以省略。故选 C.

20. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 通过横线后的句子得知是与过去事实相反的条件句, 条件句用过去完成时,

即: had done 的结构, 故选 D。

21. 【答案】A. 【解析】: suggest 作“建议”讲时, 后面的宾语从句要用虚拟语气, 动词形式为(should) + 动词原形, should 可以省略, 故选 A。

22. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 同 19 题。

23. 【答案】A. 【解析】: insist 作“坚决要求, 该……”, “坚持认为……定要……”讲时, 后面的宾语从句要用虚拟语气, 动词形式为(should) + 动词原形, should 可以省略, 故选 A。

24. 【答案】D. 【解析】: insist 的意思为: “坚决认为, 坚持说”等时, 宾语从句一般不用虚拟语气, 应与主句时态一致。故选 D。

25. 【答案】D. 【解析】: suggest 作“暗示”讲时, 句子不用虚拟语气。句意: 他的微笑暗示着他考试成功了。暗示是过去时, 那成功就是过去的过去, 即过去完成时, 故选 D。

26. 【答案】B. 【解析】: suggestion 后的表语从句要用虚拟语气。从句谓语为 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。故选 B。

27. 【答案】D. 【解析】: as if, as though 引导的从句中, 如果谈论的是不可能或不真实的情况时, 从句要用虚拟语气。从句说过去, 就要用过去完成时, 故选 D。

28. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 此题考查虚拟语气在主语从句中的应用。常见形容词有: necessary, important, best, right 等。从句谓语动词用 should + 动词原形, should 可以省略。

29. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 同 28 题。

30. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 同 28 题。

(十二) 强调句



考纲要求

考生应能够恰当地使用强调句式对表达的内容进行强调。



考点指向

主要考查对强调句型的灵活运用。



例题解析

1. It was not until she got home _____ Jennifer realized she had lost her keys.

A. when B. that C. where D. before

解析: 本题考查对 not...until...句型的强调, 其结构为 It is/was not until...that..., 所以选 B。

2. I really don't know _____ I had my money stolen.

A. when was it that B. that it was when
C. where it was that D. it was where that

解析: 本题考查对于宾语从句为特殊疑问的强调, 其结构为特殊疑问词 + it + be + that, 所以选 C。



知识要点

强调句《知识要点》部分详见本书相关教学资料包。(详见前言)



强化训练

1. —I can't find Mr. Smith .Where did you meet him this morning?
—It was in the hotel _____ he stayed.
A. which B. that C. the one D. where
2. —Were all three people in the car injured in the accident?
—No,_____ only the two passengers who got hurt.
A. it was B. there is C. it were D. there was
3. —Who is making so much noise in the garden?
—_____ the children.
A. It is B. They are C. That is D. There are
4. It was what he said _____disappointed me.
A. which B. what C. when D. that
5. It was not until she got home _____Mary realized she had lost her keys.
A. that B. where C. which D. when
6. It was without saying goodbye _____her father left her.
A. when B. which C. that D. in which
7. It is on a winter night _____he spent with me .
A. that B. where C. as D. when
8. I don't know _____ that you will stay here.
A. how long is it B. how long it is C. it is how long D. is it how long
9. _____ was Jane that I saw in the library this morning.
A. It B. He C. She D. That
10. It was in 1969 _____the American astronaut succeeded in landing on the moon.
A. in which B. when C. that D. which
11. It was in the rice fields _____ we had our league meeting.
A. where B. that C. in which D. on which
12. It was on October 1st _____ new China was founded.
A. which B. when C. as D. that
13. It is not who is right but what is right _____is of importance.
A. which B. it C. that D. this

14. It was along the Mississippi River _____ Mark Twain spent much of his childhood.
A. how B. which C. that D. where
15. It was _____ the old clock that the old man spent the whole morning at home.
A. repairing B. repaired C. to repair D. in repair
16. Is it in that factory _____ Red Flag cars are made?
A. in which B. where C. which D. that
17. Was it in the room _____ Mr. Johnson lived _____ the exhibition was held?
A. that; that B. where; that C. where; where D. that; where
18. It was _____ he said _____ disappointed me.
A. that; what B. what; what C. what; that D. that; that
19. _____ was in 2000 _____ I graduated from the university.
A. That; this B. This; it C. It; this D. It; that
20. It was the boy _____ had been in prison _____ stole the money.
A. who; where B. that; how C. who; that D. that; which

答案与解析:

1. 【答案】B。解析: 此题考查强调句的结构。It is/was + 被强调部分 + that/who 从句。故选 B。
2. 【答案】A。解析: It is/was + 被强调部分 + that/who 从句。故选 A。
3. 【答案】A。解析: 此题考查对主语的强调, 属于强调句型, 故选 A。
4. 【答案】D。解析: 此题考查对主语从句的强调, 属于强调句型。故选 D。
5. 【答案】A。解析: 本题考查对 not...until...句型的强调, 其结构为 It is/was not until... that 从句, 所以选 A。
6. 【答案】C。解析: 考查强调句型。故选 C。
7. 【答案】A。解析: 考查强调句型。故选 A。
8. 【答案】B。解析: 考查特殊疑问句作宾语从句的强调句结构。特殊疑问词应置于从句句首, 并且要用陈述句式。故选 B。
9. 【答案】A。解析: 考查强调句型。故选 A。
10. 【答案】C。解析: 考查强调句型。故选 C。
11. 【答案】B。解析同上。
12. 【答案】D。解析同上。
13. 【答案】C。解析同上。
14. 【答案】C。解析同上。
15. 【答案】A。解析: 考查固定搭配 spend time (in)doing sth. 故选 A。
16. 【答案】D。解析: 考查强调句型。判定一个句子到底是不是强调句型, 只要删除 it is /was 以及 that, 如果句子结构还成立, 说明属于强调句型。
17. 【答案】B。解析: 第一空是考查定语从句关系副词在从句中作地点状语, 故排除 A、D 选项。第二空是强调句型, 故排除 C 选项, 选 B。
18. 【答案】C。解析: 此题考查对于主语从句的强调。第一空缺少主语从句的宾语, 故排除 A、D 选项。第二空是强调句型, 故排除 B 选项, 选 C。
19. 【答案】D。解析: 考查强调句型的基本结构。故选 D。
20. 【答案】C。解析: 第一空考查定语从句, 关系代词 who 在从句中作主语; 第二空考查强调句型的结构, 故选 C。

第二单元 完形填空



考纲要求

该题是在一篇难度适中的短文中留出 15 个空，每题 1 分，共 15 分。要求考生从 4 个选项选出最佳答案，使补全后的短文意思和结构恢复完整。



备考指导

所谓完形填空，就是在表达意义连贯的文章中有目的地挖去一些词语，形成文章的空格，要求考生在给出的对应备选答案中，从整个语段的内容、组织结构和语言点出发，全面考虑问题，综合运用所学词汇、语法知识、文化风俗背景知识和一般常识性知识，选出一个正确或最佳答案填充空格。完形填空后的文章，不仅要语法正确、用词恰当，而且意思、结构完整、合理，前后一致。

1. 明确考查要求

完形填空题主要是此时学生综合运用语言的能力，它要求考生：

- (1) 要有牢固的语言基础知识，能够熟练运用所掌握的常见词汇及惯用知识；
- (2) 具备较强的快速阅读和语篇的整体理解能力，能够根据上、下文线索通篇考虑；
- (3) 结合个人所具备的各方面常识（包括话题及功能等方面的背景知识）以及逻辑推理等与语言运用相关的经验做出正确的判断和最佳选择。

2. 解答完形填空的步骤：通览—试填—复核

(1) 通览——速读全文，把握大意

不看答案，跳读全文，通篇考虑，弄清作者思路，掌握大意，概略地了解文章的体裁、背景、内容、结构层次、情节、写作风格等等。一方面，要放松思想，克服心理紧张，不要一遇到个别生词就着急，往往这些生词能够根据上下文推断出其词义；另一方面，要善于抓住最能表现文章中心内容的启示性的关键句子、词语，即情节发展的线索，理解作者要表达的观点、态度。

(2) 试填——紧扣文章，推断答案

按文章前后顺序结合备选答案，边读、边分析、边推断正确选项。对试题的测试部分（即文中空格）进行分析。看缺的是什么词，起什么作用，同时观察对应选项答案的情况，从句

子的意思上去验证究竟用什么词类, 什么形式填空才正确。遇到一时难以确定答案的小题可以暂时不选, 先做后面的, 再用其他已选出答案的信息去促成这个难题的解决。

(3) 复核——瞻前顾后, 全面验证

试填后, 要把全文再读一遍, 注意看所选答案填入空白后能否做到文章意思通顺、结构完整, 是否有相互矛盾的地方。阅读第三遍视野将更开阔, 思路将更清晰, 也就更容易发现错误, 从而及时作出调整或修正。因此, 第三步的复读尤为重要。

3. 试题解题技巧

(1) 看清上下文, 找准定位词

把握文章内在逻辑, 注意上下文的联系; 发挥逻辑思维能力, 根据生活常识进行判断; 对较为复杂结构的句子, 要认真分析, 理解含义, 感受语境。找到对选择有提示作用的词或句子, 这些词有时可能是同义词或反义词。例如:

【例 1】Some parts of the water are very shallow. But in some places it is very _____.

- A. deep B. light C. cold D. dangerous

解析: 根据转折连词 but, 填入词应与 shallow 相反, 因此答案为 A。

【例 2】Mrs. O'Neil asked _____ questions and she didn't scold us either.

- A. no B. certain C. many D. more

解析: and 为并列连词, either 为副词, 用在否定句或否定词后加强语势, 由此可以确定所填的词也应是个否定意义的词, 因此答案为 A。

(2) 通顺逻辑, 寻求搭配

注意固定的搭配, 包括动词与介词的搭配、动词与名词的搭配以及形容词与名词的搭配等, 同时要根据内容选择正确的短语。

【例 3】_____ is known to us all, there is not enough water in all places for everyone to use as much as he likes.

- A. That B. It C. What D. As

解析: As is known to us all 为惯用搭配, 意为“众所周知”, 因此答案为 D。

(3) 扎实基础, 搞清辨异

【例 4】Soon I heard a _____ like that of a door burst in and then a climb of feet.

- A. sound B. cry C. voice D. shout

解析: 选项中的四个词都表示不同的声音, 但 BCD 项的三个都是指从嗓子里发出的声音, 而 sound 则表示各种各样的声音。此题为破门而入的声音, 故为 sound。

(4) 看清执行者, 确定所选词

【例 5】And video cameras can be used to _____ people's actions at home.

- A. keep B. make C. record D. watch

解析: 句中动作的执行者是 video cameras, 因此答案是 C, 意思为“记录”。

(5) 寻求上下逻辑, 从容确定关系

【例 6】It has been many years since I was last in London _____ I still remember something that happened during that visit.

- A. and B. for C. but D. as

解析: 根据句前的 many years 和后句的 still remember, 答案应为表示转折的连词 but。

(6) 从逻辑推理、常识等角度考虑, 挖掘文章的隐含意义

【例 7】In fact, sunny climates, wide-edged hats provide ____ from the sun.

- A. shade B. shadow C. security D. cover

解析: 由常识可知, 在炎热的夏天, 人们戴帽子的目的是遮住强烈的阳光, 所以帽子可以给人提供阴凉, 因此选择 A。而 B 项 shadow 指“阴影, 影子”, 用在此处不合适。



考题回顾

(单招 2010 年)

There was once a bad king, who was hated 1 all his people. One hot day, 2 he was taking a 3 along a river, he decided to have a swim 4 it. He was a good swimmer, but while he was in the water, he suddenly felt ill and he was 5 drowned. At that time two farmers were walking 6. They came over, jumped into the water and saved him. They did not know that he was the king until he was 7 of the water.

The king was happy, so he said to the farmers, — 8 anything? I'll give it to you, because you've saved my life.”

One of the farmers said, —My son broke his leg last year, and he still 9 walk well. Please send him to a good doctor.”

The king 10 to do so, and then spoke to 11 farmer, who was old and wise, —and 12 can I do for you, old man?”

The old man thought 13 several minutes and then he answered, —You can do a very important thing for me.”

—What's that?” asked the king. He thought the old man 14 for some money or a good job for his son.

—Don't 15 anybody that we saved you.” He answered the bad king.

- | | | | |
|------------------|-------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. by | B. with | C. of | D. to |
| 2. A. because | B. that | C. when | D. then |
| 3. A. walk | B. look | C. note | D. picture |
| 4. A. into | B. in | C. on | D. under |
| 5. A. completely | B. much | C. heavily | D. nearly |
| 6. A. far from | B. far away | C. near | D. nearly |
| 7. A. made | B. set free | C. pulled out | D. pulled away |
| 8. A. Lose | B. Take | C. Want | D. Being |
| 9. A. must | B. can't | C. needn't | D. won't |
| 10. A. helped | B. promised | C. refused | D. ordered |
| 11. A. the other | B. other | C. another | D. the another |
| 12. A. when | B. how many | C. what | D. which |
| 13. A. since | B. for | C. during | D. in |

14. A. asked B. wanted C. would ask D. would get
15. A. say B. speak C. talk D. tell

答案:

1~5 ACCBD 6~10 DCCBB 11~15 ACBCD

分析:

这是一篇故事型的文章，文章讲述了一个深受人们憎恨的国王在游泳时，被两个农民救起的故事。

1. A. by. 此句为被动语态，在被动语态中引出动作的执行者要用 by。
2. C. when, when “当……时候”。
3. C. take a walk 意为“散步”。
4. B. swim in the river 意为“在河里游泳”，或根据下句“while he was in the water...”
5. D. nearly *adv*, 意为“几乎”，其他的意思不通。
6. D. nearly *adv* 接近地, far from 后需接名词; far away “远离”，和意思不合; near *adj*
7. C. pull out of... “从……中把……拉出”。
8. C. 国王问“想要什么？”
9. B. can't “不能”，must not “禁止、不允许”，needn't “没必要”，won't=will not “不会”
10. B. promise “承诺，答应”，help “帮助”，refuse “拒绝”，order “命令”，根据文章的意思应该知道国王是答应如此做了。
11. A. the other “两个中的一个”。
12. C. —What can I do for you?” 常用于向别人提出帮助。
13. B. for 后跟一段时间。
14. C. ask for 固定短语，would ask 为“过去将来时”。
15. D. tell sb sth. 句式结构。say 强调说的内容; speak 常用于讲某种语言; talk 为交谈之意。



强化训练

完形填空

1

One day a mother rat and her babies were out in an open field. They were playing and having a good time when 1 a hungry cat came on the scene! It hid 2 a big tree and then crawled forward through the tall grass 3 it could almost hear talk. 4 the mother rat and her babies knew 5 had happened, the cat 6 from its hiding place and started to run after them.

The mother rat and her babies all fled at once, they hurried towards 7 home, which was under a pile of large stones. 8 the baby rats were 9 scared that they could not run very 10. Closer and closer the cat came. In no time the cat would be up on them. What was to be done? The mother rat stopped running, 11 round and faced the cat, shouting —Bow! Bow! Bowwow!” just like 12 angry dog. The cat was so surprised and 13 that it ran away.

The mother rat turned to her babies, —Now you see 14 important it is to learn 15 second

language!

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. naturally | B. suddenly | C. nearly | D. certainly |
| 2. A. on | B. between | C. by | D. behind |
| 3. A. before | B. when | C. until | D. while |
| 4. A. Before | B. After | C. Unless | D. Otherwise |
| 5. A. where | B. what | C. which | D. when |
| 6. A. jumped | B. started | C. jumping | D. starting |
| 7. A. to | B. for | C. its | D. their |
| 8. A. Because | B. But | C. Therefore | D. Although |
| 9. A. as | B. much | C. so | D. very |
| 10. A. freely | B. hardly | C. soon | D. quickly |
| 11. A. turned | B. walked | C. jumped | D. ran |
| 12. A. a | B. an | C. their | D. that |
| 13. A. pleased | B. excited | C. frightened | D. worried |
| 14. A. so | B. why | C. what | D. how |
| 15. A. our | B. their | C. a | D. an |

2

Do you know how to study better and make your study more effective? We all 1 that Chinese students usually study hard for long hours. This is very good, but it doesn't 2 a lot, for an effective students must have enough sleep, enough food and enough rest and enough 3. Every day you need to go out for a walk or 4 some friends of some nice places. It's good for 5.

When you 6 to your studies, your mind will be refreshed and you'll learn 7 and study better. Here takes English learning 8 an example. First you make a lot of progress and you feel 9. Then your language study seems to stay 10 and you may give up.

This can 11 for days or even weeks, yet you needn't give up. At some point your language study will 12 take another big jump. Everything will be 13 for you. If you get enough sleep, food, rest and exercise, studying English can be very effective and 14. Don't give up along the way. Learn slowly and you're 15 to get good results.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|--------------|-------------|
| 1. A. hope | B. know | C. worry | D. remember |
| 2. A. spend | B. need | C. help | D. give |
| 3. A. homework | B. exercise | C. housework | D. study |
| 4. A. ask | B. talk | C. meet | D. visit |
| 5. A. family | B. health | C. sleep | D. dinner |
| 6. A. want | B. return | C. stop | D. begin |
| 7. A. more | B. less | C. easier | D. worse |
| 8. A. like | B. as | C. at | D. with |
| 9. A. helpful | B. worried | C. happy | D. lonely |
| 10. A. strange | B. different | C. difficult | D. the same |

- | | | | |
|----------------|-----------|----------------|------------|
| 11. A. stop | B. last | C. happen | D. show |
| 12. A. again | B. not | C. hardly | D. always |
| 13. A. useful | B. OK | C. wrong | D. true |
| 14. A. quickly | B. boring | C. interesting | D. tired |
| 15. A. lucky | B. sure | C. decided | D. pleased |

3

The United States covers a large part of the North 1 continent, when the 2 first became a nation. After 3 its freedom from English, it has 13 states. 4 the states had a star on the American flag. As the nation 5, new states were formed and there 6 new stars on the flag. 7 a long time, there were forty-eight states. In 1959 two 8 stars were added to the flag, standing for 9 of Alaska and Hawaii.

Indians were the 10 people of the land and a great number of people came from England. It is 11 that reason that the 12 of the U.S is English and that 13 culture and customs are more 14 those English than 15 country in the world.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|--------------|---------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. America | B. America's | C. American | D. Americans |
| 2. A. state | B. land | C. earth | D. part |
| 3. A. win | B. winning | C. have won | D. won |
| 4. A. Every of | B. Every | C. Each of | D. Each |
| 5. A. grows | B. growing | C. grew | D. have grown |
| 6. A. are | B. were | C. have been | D. will be |
| 7. A. In | B. From | C. For | D. Through |
| 8. A. another | B. many | C. other | D. more |
| 9. A. the new states | B. new state | C. the new | D. the new nations |
| 10. A. first | B. most | C. foreign | D. largest |
| 11. A. of | B. in | C. on | D. for |
| 12. A. land | B. people | C. language | D. state |
| 13. A. useful | B. most | C. hardly | D. always |
| 14. A. as | B. like | C. same | D. with |
| 15. A. another | B. other | C. any others | D. any other |

4

Albert Einstein was from a Jewish family. He was born in Germany. When he was 1, he liked to ask questions. By the time he was fourteen years old, he 2 advanced mathematics 3 by himself. 4 then he had decided to become a physicist and 5 himself 6 abstract (抽象的) research.

His family was not rich, but his parents managed 7 him to technical school and 8 to the Federal Institute of Technology in Switzerland. After graduation, he began to teach. Later, he worked in a government office. Then 9 the money he saved, he continued his studies at the

university of Zurich. In 1905 he got a 10 degree. It was at that time 11 he began the research and studies which led 12 his famous Theory of Relativity (相对论).

For most people, his theory was 13 difficult to understand, Many scientists laughed 14 it and 15 would accept it. But Einstein stuck to it and went on with his research.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|----------------|------------------|
| 1. A. a boy | B. the boy | C. boy | D. child |
| 2. A. was learning | B. had learned | C. has learned | D. have learned |
| 3. A. all of | B. all over | C. all | D. all from |
| 4. A. By | B. At | C. From | D. In |
| 5. A. devoted | B. devote | C. devoting | D. to be devoted |
| 6. A. for | B. on | C. with | D. to |
| 7. A. to sending | B. to be sent | C. to send | D. sending |
| 8. A. later | B. after | C. before | D. late |
| 9. A. in | B. by | C. for | D. with |
| 10. A. doctors' | B. doctor | C. doctor's | D. doctors |
| 11. A. that | B. when | C. which | D. where |
| 12. A. to | B. into | C. with | D. from |
| 13. A. very | B. too | C. rather | D. so |
| 14. A. in | B. on | C. at | D. / |
| 15. A. little | B. few | C. a little | D. a few |

5

Summer holiday came. Little Thomas was very 1. His father said he was going to 2 him and his sister and his mother to China. The boy has been to many 3 and taken photos there. He often 4 them to his friends. But he saw the Great Wall, the Palace Museum and the Summer Palace only on 5. So he borrowed some geography books. He tried to find Chian's Beijing and Shanghai in the 6. He studied carefully what foods were 7 in those cities. He hoped to have a good time there.

The boy 8 much time on that and couldn't listen to his teachers carefully in classes.

Sometimes he 9 he was travelling in Beijing. He had no time to go over his lessons. So he fell 10 others and failed in the exams. Mrs. Smith who taught him maths called him in her 11 and told him to be a good student. He promised, but soon he 12 it. The woman had to tell his mother about it on the telephone this morning.

—Aren't you 13 of yourself, Thomas? You are the worst pupil in your 14,” said the mother.

—What does it have to do with me? The worst one was yesterday transferred to 15 school,” was the answer.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|------------|--------------|
| 1. A. sad | B. sorry | C. happy | D. worried |
| 2. A. carry | B. take | C. send | D. drive |
| 3. A. villages | B. mountains | C. forests | D. countries |

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|---------------|--------------|
| 4. A. sent | B. showed | C. sold | D. gave |
| 5. A. pictures | B. maps | C. photos | D. stamps |
| 6. A. TV | B. maps | C. DVD | D. radio |
| 7. A. color | B. expensive | C. cheap | D. delicious |
| 8. A. spent | B. paid | C. saved | D. waited |
| 9. A. went | B. stopped | C. dreamed | D. continued |
| 10. A. behind | B. off | C. over | D. in |
| 11. A. bedroom | B. office | C. kitchen | D. library |
| 12. A. copied | B. found | C. remembered | D. forgot |
| 13. A. glad | B. interested | C. shy | D. afraid |
| 14. A. class | B. family | C. team | D. row |
| 15. A. a better | B. the other | C. another | D. a higher |

6

Hans Anderson(安徒生), the well-known Danish writer, was born in 1805. At that time no one could 1 that this baby, the son of a poor shoemaker, would one day become a famous writer. As he was the 2 child, his parents and grandma loved Hans very much. He lived in a dream 3 of his own, full of glorious vision (美好的想象), and all the pots and pans were his 4.

When he was 11 years old, his father 5 and the boy had to leave school. His mother made a living by washing clothes, 6 Hans spent much time making toy theatres and puppets (木偶) and reading as many books as he could 7. His mother wanted him to learn to make clothes, but this was not his 8. The boy tried his best to become an 9 singer, so at 14 he left for the capital. For three years he lived in a 10 house, writhing and trying unsuccessfully to 11 a job in the theatre. the Director of Royal Theatre thought that he had talent but needed further 12. With his help, Anderson got a scholarship (奖学金), which made it 13 for him to finish his education.

Anderson spent much of his time traveling, 14 novels, travel books and fairy tales. People, 15 children, still like them now.

- | | | | |
|--------------------|---------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. understand | B. decide | C. believe | D. think |
| 2. A. only | B. naughty | C. strange | D. nervous |
| 3. A. town | B. world | C. village | D. yard |
| 4. A. sisters | B. brothers | C. classmates | D. friends |
| 5. A. left | B. died | C. went out | D. hurried off |
| 6. A. since | B. until | C. though | D. while |
| 7. A. borrow | B. steal | C. rob | D. write |
| 8. A. favourite | B. luck | C. idea | D. subject |
| 9. A. opera | B. art | C. exact | D. active |
| 10. A. comfortable | B. crowded | C. safe | D. nice |
| 11. A. lose | B. meet | C. find | D. miss |
| 12. A. learning | B. increasing | C. developing | D. training |

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|--------------|--------------|
| 13. A. impossible | B. possible | C. difficult | D. important |
| 14. A. printing | B. selling | C. producing | D. painting |
| 15. A. especially | B. ever | C. instead | D. rather |

7

Mr. Baker lived in New York. He had a big 1 in the center of the city. As a rich shopkeeper, he had his own house and cars. So he was never 2 money. And all his family lived a 3 life. He and his wife loved their only son Bruce. The young man only liked 4 and was weak in all his lessons and couldn't 5 his classmates. He had to leave middle school when he was eighteen. Later on, he 6 the army. Of course he couldn't be accustomed to (习惯) the army life. He 7 wanted to go to the city and see his parents, but he couldn't make any 8. He thought and thought and at last he got an 9. He came to the officer and said, "10 I have a month's leave, sir?" "For what?" "My wife was seriously hurt in a traffic accident and now she's 11," said Bruce. "The doctor will operate on her tomorrow. I have to 12 her for weeks.

"But I called your father just now, young man, ~~the~~ officer said 13. He told me on the telephone that nothing 14 to your wife at all."

"He said 15, sir," Bruce shouted. "I haven't got married yet!"

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. factory | B. school | C. shop | D. hospital |
| 2. A. afraid of | B. interested in | C. angry with | D. worried about |
| 3. A. happy | B. sad | C. poor | D. hard |
| 4. A. studying | B. playing | C. reading | D. writing |
| 5. A. fall behind | B. get on well with | C. make friends with | D. catch up with |
| 6. A. joined | B. left | C. loved | D. chose |
| 7. A. something | B. already | C. always | D. never |
| 8. A. mistakes | B. excuses | C. subjects | D. pity |
| 9. A. way | B. idea | C. road | D. note |
| 10. A. Need | B. Must | C. May | D. Have |
| 11. A. at home | B. at school | C. at work | D. in hospital |
| 12. A. play with | B. look after | C. look for | D. laugh at |
| 13. A. carefully | B. loudly | C. quietly | D. with a smile |
| 14. A. happened | B. was happened | C. pointed | D. was pointed |
| 15. A. right | B. wrong | C. safety | D. happily |

8

Rice is a big part of Chinese life. In the past, people greeted each other by 1. "Have you had your rice?" Some people still greet in this today.

The rice-growing season is 2 from north to south in this big country. In 3 China, the season is from May or June until August or September. Near the Yangtze River, rice 4 from April to June and harvested from August to October. In China's southeast, early (March to July)

and 5 (June to November) rice harvests are 6 very big.

China is the world's largest rice-growing country. In 2007, China 7 200 million tons of rice.

But it is not easy to 8 the world's largest population. In 9, thousands of Chinese died because they had no food to eat.

Later, a Chinese scientist, Yuan Longping, 10 a new kind of rice called hybrid rice (杂交水稻). 11 makes 20 percent more rice than other types of rice. Hybrid rice is a 12 plant, compared with common rice. It can grow in lots of water or in not much water. It 13 doesn't easily get diseases or worms.

Today, half of China's rice plants 14 Yuan's special hybrid. China uses Yuan's hybrid to grow much more rice than before.

Yuan is 15 as the "father of hybrid rice". And he won the World Food Prize for his work to help so many people.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------------|---------------|------------------|
| 1. A. speaking | B. telling | C. saying | D. talking |
| 2. A. different | B. the difference | C. same | D. the same |
| 3. A. north | B. northern | C. the north | D. the northern |
| 4. A. grows | B. plants | C. is planted | D. is produced |
| 5. A. late | B. later | C. latter | D. the late |
| 6. A. all | B. both | C. every | D. each |
| 7. A. grows | B. grew | C. plants | D. planted |
| 8. A. live on | B. live | C. feed | D. feed on |
| 9. A. 1960s | B. 1960's | C. the 1960s' | D. the 1960s |
| 10. A. discovered | B. invented | C. found | D. grew |
| 11. A. It | B. Which | C. That | D. What |
| 12. A. strong | B. stronger | C. strongest | D. the strongest |
| 13. A. too | B. either | C. also | D. as well |
| 14. A. is | B. likes | C. like | D. are |
| 15. A. known | B. famous | C. popular | D. pleased |

9

Modern life is impossible without traveling. The fastest way of traveling is by 1. With a modern airliner you can 2 in one day to places which it took a month or more to get to a hundred years ago.

Traveling by train is slower than plane, 3 it has its advantages. You can 4 the country you are traveling through. Modern trains have comfortable 5 and dining-cars. They make even the longest 6 enjoyable.

Some people prefer to travel by sea 7 possible. There are large liners (班轮、班船) and 8. You can visit 9 many other countries and different places. But traveling by sea is very pleasant way to 10 a holiday.

Many people like to travel by car. You can make your 11 timetable. You can travel three or four hundred miles or only fifty or one hundred miles a day, just as you 12. You can stop 13 you wish where there is something interesting to see, at a good restaurant where you can enjoy a good 14, or at a hotel to spend the night. That is why traveling by car is popular for pleasant trips, while people usually 15 a train or plane when they are traveling on business.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. ship | B. train | C. plane | D. car |
| 2. A. travel | B. reach | C. arrive | D. leave |
| 3. A. because | B. but | C. so | D. and |
| 4. A. look | B. see | C. watch | D. look over |
| 5. A. seats | B. rooms | C. toilet | D. chairs |
| 6. A. travel | B. trip | C. distance | D. journey |
| 7. A. where | B. how | C. when | D. which |
| 8. A. bank | B. bridge | C. boats | D. water |
| 9. A. same | B. difference | C. beautiful | D. different |
| 10. A. plane | B. make | C. spend | D. think |
| 11. A. own | B. useful | C. suitable | D. fit |
| 12. A. do | B. go | C. act | D. like |
| 13. A. whichever | B. whatever | C. whenever | D. wherever |
| 14. A. meal | B. breakfast | C. lunch | D. supper |
| 15. A. serve | B. take | C. have | D. need |

10

Long ago, there lived in Greece a 1 man. He was so well-known for his wide knowledge of almost everything that lots of people 2 all over the country came to learn things 3 him. The great man taught his students whole-heartedly and 4 their questions with patience.

One day a student asked him, ~~My~~ dear teacher, didn't you 5 you yourself have 6 questions about things than we do? On the contrary, we students have far more than you."

7 a smile, the teacher drew two circles—one as large as a big wheel, 8 smaller.

~~Of~~ course, I've learned much more. But a teacher does not necessarily have 9 questions than his students. Now, look at these two circles. Within the big one is my knowledge of things, and within the smaller one 10. Out of the circles is 11 is still unknown to us. 12 mine is larger, the line that 13 the circle is longer. That means I have more opportunities to face what is 14 unknown. And that's why I myself have more questions than you do. The 15 you learn, the more questions you will have. You will never learn enough, you know."

- | | | | |
|----------------|------------|-------------|------------|
| 1. A. learning | B. learned | C. studying | D. studied |
| 2. A. through | B. from | C. of | D. for |
| 3. A. of | B. from | C. for | D. on |
| 4. A. asked | B. replied | C. answered | D. talked |
| 5. A. talk | B. speak | C. tell | D. say |

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------|--------------|--------------|
| 6. A. many | B. much | C. many more | D. much more |
| 7. A. With | B. Or | C. On | D. At |
| 8. A. another | B. the other | C. other | D. others |
| 9. A. few | B. a few | C. fewer | D. a fewer |
| 10. A. you | B. your | C. your's | D. yours |
| 11. A. what | B. that | C. which | D. as |
| 12. A. Unless | B. Since | C. Though | D. Even if |
| 13. A. marks out | B. makes out | C. takes out | D. looks out |
| 14. A. already | B. still | C. yet | D. ever |
| 15. A. many | B. still | C. more | D. most |

11

After he had lived just one year in the new place, Bob told the owner of the house that he had to leave because he was not 1 to buy any chocolate.

It all happened three months ago when Bob returned home one evening and 2 a large dog in front of his gate. He liked animals very much and as he happened to have a piece of chocolate in his 3, he gave it the dog. The next day Bob was very 4 to see the dog was there again. It looked 5 and reached its paws for food. It 6 another piece of chocolate as a present. Bob called his new friend “Friday”. He never 7 the dog's real name, or who owned it. However, Friday was there at the same moment every afternoon and it was quite clear that he 8 chocolate to bones. He soon grew 9 with small pieces of chocolate and one day asked for a 10. If Bob failed to do his 11, Friday got very angry and refused to let him 12 the gate. Bob now wanted to 13 this but he did not know what to do!

He had spent such a large part of his 14 to keep Friday happy with chocolate that in the end he had to 15 somewhere else.

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|--------------|--------------|
| 1. A. kind | B. afraid | C. able | D. sure |
| 2. A. found | B. fed | C. felt | D. fell |
| 3. A. car | B. home | C. office | D. pocket |
| 4. A. angry | B. tired | C. surprised | D. afraid |
| 5. A. ill | B. full | C. old | D. serious |
| 6. A. lost | B. received | C. returned | D. passed |
| 7. A. understand | B. remembered | C. knew | D. forgot |
| 8. A. liked | B. wanted | C. hoped | D. preferred |
| 9. A. pleased | B. unhappy | C. full | D. sorry |
| 10. A. same | B. smaller | C. bigger | D. cheaper |
| 11. A. duty | B. housework | C. exercises | D. sport |
| 12. A. knock | B. close | C. touch | D. open |
| 13. A. enjoy | B. keep | C. show | D. stop |
| 14. A. time | B. food | C. chocolate | D. pay |

15. A. leave

B. move

C. travel

D. sleep

12

The old shoes had brought him so much trouble that Johnny decided to throw them away. He went to the rubbish pit (垃圾场) outside the city and threw his shoes 1 it. ~~Now~~ they can no longer bring me any trouble," he said. He returned home, 2 down on his bed, and slept. But he had a dog, and the dog often went to the rubbish pit to 3 food because Johnny never bought food for his dog, and the dog loved 4 master very much. When he saw the shoes in the pit, he knew 5 were his master's, so the dog 6 one heavy shoe in his mouth and went 7 back with it, and left it by his master's 8. Then the dog fetched 9 shoe in the same way. When Johnny woke up, he saw the shoes 10 his bed and he was afraid, ~~The shoes can walk~~ 11, they must be done away with," he thought. Then he made 12 fire in front of his house and put the shoes 13 it. Just at that moment a strong wind was blowing, and 14 the fire made the house begin to 15. Immediately neighbours came out to help but they could do nothing. The house burnt down, and the old shoes were saved by the dog again.

1. A. in

B. to

C. on

D. into

2. A. lay

B. lied

C. lain

D. laid

3. A. find

B. look for

C. saw

D. hold

4. A. their

B. his

C. that

D. my

5. A. these

B. it

C. that

D. they

6. A. brought

B. carried

C. got

D. took

7. A. fast

B. slowly

C. slow

D. quickly

8. A. table

B. bed

C. window

D. door

9. A. another

B. one

C. the other

D. other

10. A. in

B. on

C. beside

D. by

11. A. in himself

B. by himself

C. on themselves

D. by themselves

12. A. a large

B. large

C. big

D. a big

13. A. into

B. in

C. to

D. on

14. A. long before

B. at once

C. before long

D. very soon

15. A. turn

B. burn

C. fall

D. destroy

13

Old Mrs Robinson lived alone in a small house. Her son John lived with his wife and child on 1 street. He asked his mother to live with him, but his mother didn't want to 2 her little house.

At eight o'clock one morning the old woman 3 her son. She said, ~~Please~~ "Please come to my house." Then she put the phone down, John's wife said, ~~—~~ 4 was that?" ~~It was mother,~~ he answered. ~~What did she want?"~~ ~~She wants~~ 5. Perhaps she's ill. I'll take the car and go to work 6 her house." He took his car out and 7 to his mother's house quickly.

When the old woman opened the door, her son said, “What’s the 8, mother?” “Come in,” she answered. “There’s a thief in one of my rooms.” “A thief in 9 of your rooms?” said John. “When did you 10 him?” “I heard noises in a room yesterday evening,” she answered. “Which one?” John asked 11. They were in the dining-room now. “That one,” the old woman answered. “12 didn’t you telephone me then?” John asked.

“Because it was late, I did not want to 13 you,” she answered. “But the thief 14 stayed in the rooms all night, has he?” asked John. “Oh, 15,” the old woman answered. “I nailed the door up, and then I went to bed.”

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. the other | B. another | C. others | D. the others |
| 2. A. live | B. stay | C. leave | D. sell |
| 3. A. said | B. told | C. woke | D. telephoned |
| 4. A. What | B. Where | C. Who | D. When |
| 5. A. you | B. him | C. me | D. money |
| 6. A. to | B. through | C. beside | D. from |
| 7. A. bought | B. drove | C. walked | D. ran |
| 8. A. wrong | B. number | C. work | D. matter |
| 9. A. two | B. any | C. one | D. which |
| 10. A. see | B. catch | C. find | D. look for |
| 11. A. quickly | B. angrily | C. quietly | D. noisily |
| 12. A. How | B. When | C. Why | D. Where |
| 13. A. matter | B. trouble | C. sorry | D. know |
| 14. A. didn’t | B. isn’t | C. hasn’t | D. haven’t |
| 15. A. no, he has | B. no, he hasn’t | C. yes, he has | D. yes, he hasn’t |

14

Mr. Johnson lives outside the town. He works in a post office. His wife is often ill and six children 1 at school. He works hard but he is short of 2. At the end of every month his family are always 3.

One afternoon, on his way home, suddenly it began to 4. When he got home, he was wet through. He hurried to go to 5 after supper and his wife washed the clothes and shoes for him.

6 she went to bed, she brought the clothes into the room but 7 the shoes. The next morning Mr. Johnson couldn’t find his shoes. His wife found a pair of 8 shoes under the bed for him. Then he went to the 9 and told the policemen about it.

“10 ten dollars for my shoes, sir,” said the man. “Look! I have to 11 such a pair of worn-out shoes!”

Several days later the police 12 a thief and found the shoes. They were as worn-out as the 13 which Mr. Johnson was wearing.

“You’ve fooled us, Mr. Johnson,” said a policeman. “The shopkeeper told me a pair of new shoes like them 14 only seven dollars!”

—You're right, sir," said Mr Johnson. —I've 15 them for five years and I had them mended six times. And I paid the shoemaker three dollars for it!"

- | | | | |
|------------------|----------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. play | B. study | C. work | D. live |
| 2. A. water | B. food | C. clothes | D. money |
| 3. A. full | B. afraid | C. hungry | D. angry |
| 4. A. rain | B. snow | C. blow | D. shine |
| 5. A. work | B. sleep | C. bed | D. swimming |
| 6. A. After | B. Before | C. While | D. Because |
| 7. A. remembered | B. threw | C. dropped | D. forgot |
| 8. A. broken | B. new | C. nice | D. cheap |
| 9. A. bus stop | B. bus station | C. post office | D. police station |
| 10. A. borrow | B. paid | C. lent | D. lost |
| 11. A. look for | B. find | C. wear | D. dress |
| 12. A. caught | B. stopped | C. saw | D. killed |
| 13. A. one | B. ones | C. old | D. new |
| 14. A. cost | B. sold | C. took | D. spent |
| 15. A. bought | B. given | C. had | D. liked |

15

My wife and I spent two weeks in England last year. We went there in the autumn. We think it is the best 1 to visit England. The weather is 2 quite good and there aren't 3 many visitors in October.

We stayed in a small 4 in the West End. It was convenient as we did most of our sightseeing on foot. Taxis were too 5, we couldn't understand the bus route, and my wife didn't like 6 on the underground. She said it made her feel shut in.

We went to look at the places 7 all visitors see. We saw Buckingham Palace, the National Gallery Street and Piccadilly Circus. We 8 shopping in Oxford Street and 9 too much money. What we like 10, though, was going to the theater. We don't have the 11 to see such wonderful plays at 12. A lot of people say English food is very bad. We didn't think so. It's 13 that most of the restaurants are French or Italian or Chinese, but we had some very good meals.

In fact, we enjoyed our holiday 14 much that we have already booked again for this year. We are going to take our 15, for I'm sure we'll need them when it rains.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. season | B. way | C. ideas | D. reason |
| 2. A. fairly | B. usually | C. hardly | D. very |
| 3. A. very | B. too | C. greatly | D. much |
| 4. A. home | B. house | C. hotel | D. family |
| 5. A. low | B. short | C. expensive | D. tall |
| 6. A. journey | B. tripping | C. travel | D. travelling |

- | | | | |
|------------------|-----------------|--------------|-------------|
| 7. A. where | B. which | C. when | D. who |
| 8. A. bought | B. went | C. came | D. took |
| 9. A. used | B. bought | C. spent | D. cost |
| 10. A. very | B. least | C. most | D. well |
| 11. A. chance | B. time | C. condition | D. occasion |
| 12. A. school | B. home | C. room | D. house |
| 13. A. true | B. certain | C. sure | D. suggest |
| 14. A. very | B. too | C. quite | D. so |
| 15. A. umbrellas | B. dictionaries | C. books | D. teachers |

16

Joe wanted a computer. He asked his 1 for the money and they said he must get it himself. But how did he get it? He 2 about this when he walked home. Not many people wanted to ask children to work for them. Maybe he could take away snow for the neighbours. But this was not 3. He had to wait a long time for that. He couldn't cut grass for their gardens 4 he had no tools to do the work with.

Then he saw one of his classmates, Dick, delivering 5. “I could do that,” he thought. “Maybe I could 6 get the computer right away. I could pay 7 it a little each week”. He ran to 8 up with Dick. Joe asked him a lot of questions. He learned that it was 9 to get twenty-five dollars each week. He learned that the job took 10 three hours each night. Dick 11 him the phone number of the newspaper manager.

Joe almost 12 home. After he had told his mother what her thought, she 13. “I think it is a 14 idea,” she said, “I'll call the newspaper...”

“Wait, Mum,” Joe said, “I'll call. After that, I'm going to be a businessman now.”

Joe's mother smiled 15.

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------|---------------|------------|
| 1. A. teachers | B. parents | C. classmates | D. friends |
| 2. A. said | B. told | C. thought | D. spoke |
| 3. A. spring | B. summer | C. autumn | D. winter |
| 4. A. because | B. when | C. while | D. after |
| 5. A. newspapers | B. bikes | C. computers | D. tools |
| 6. A. now | B. even | C. just | D. only |
| 7. A. on | B. to | C. of | D. for |
| 8. A. take | B. catch | C. carry | D. get |
| 9. A. friendly | B. kind | C. possible | D. wrong |
| 10. A. for | B. about | C. before | D. after |
| 11. A. taught | B. gave | C. made | D. asked |
| 12. A. went | B. came | C. flew | D. got |
| 13. A. smiled | B. shouted | C. cried | D. worried |
| 14. A. big | B. large | C. great | D. bad |

15. A. sadly B. happily C. politely D. angrily

17

Mr. Clarke works in a middle school. He 1 maths there. He works hard and is often 2. He has no children and his wife 3 at home alone. She likes talking but she can't talk with 4 when her husband is at school. When he comes back, she talks a lot. Sometimes she 5 him up at midnight and begins to talk to him. It 6 the man not go to sleep for a long time. Mr. Clarke 7 it, but he doesn't know what to do.

Yesterday morning Mr. Clarke 8 unwell. And it was half past seven. He was still 9.

—What's wrong with you, dear?" asked the woman.

—My head is 10 now," Mr. Clarke said with a worried look. —Please 11 our school. I can't go to work today."

—OK," the woman said and began to talk to him by the bed again. Mr. Clarke had to get up and 12.

By lunch time the man came back. His wife asked, —Did you go to 13 this morning?"

—Yes, I did."

—What did the 14 say?"

—He looked me over and said I was in great need of quietness. He told me to 15 and prescribed(开药) me some sleeping pills."

—I will remind you to take them on time," said the woman.

—No, they're not for me, but for you!"

- | | | | |
|----------------------|---------------------|----------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. studies | B. learns | C. teaches | D. reads |
| 2. A. busy | B. free | C. wrong | D. right |
| 3. A. plays | B. cooks | C. washes | D. stays |
| 4. A. everybody | B. nobody | C. somebody | D. anybody |
| 5. A. wakes | B. sits | C. stands | D. looks |
| 6. A. hopes | B. wants | C. tells | D. makes |
| 7. A. likes | B. hates | C. enjoys | D. keeps |
| 8. A. heard | B. grew | C. felt | D. lived |
| 9. A. at home | B. at work | C. in bed | D. at school |
| 10. A. failing | B. hitting | C. dropping | D. aching |
| 11. A. telephone | B. answer | C. visit | D. touch |
| 12. A. shouted | B. left | C. cried | D. finished |
| 13. A. hospital | B. cinema | C. school | D. island |
| 14. A. policeman | B. worker | C. harmer | D. doctor |
| 15. A. talk with you | B. have a good rest | C. have a swim | D. have a good time |

18

When it was 20 years ago, I first met Mr. Andrews, my old headmaster. During the war I was studying at school in the north of England. My 1 had just returned to London, and there were

not 2 schools left for children. My father had to go from one school to another, trying to 3 them to take me as a pupil. We had 4 to all the schools near our home, but no one would take me. 5, we went to a school about five kilometers 6 from home. The headmaster kept us waiting for at least 7. I could hear boys playing on the playground outside.

When the headmaster's secretary let us 8 his office, Mr. Andrews said, "9 do you want to come here?" I had 10 of saying something about studying, 11 now I couldn't remember anything, only thought of the boys playing outside. "~~I~~ don't know 12 in London," I said. "~~I~~d like to play with 13 boys. I'll read a lot of books, too." "All right," Mr. Andrews said, "~~We~~ have one seat 14."

My two years at that school was 15 the happiest of my life.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-------------|---------------|--------------|
| 1. A. school | B. family | C. friends | D. parents |
| 2. A. good | B. helpful | C. cheap | D. enough |
| 3. A. make | B. hope | C. ask | D. let |
| 4. A. been | B. gone | C. walked | D. got |
| 5. A. In the end | B. At first | C. At once | D. By then |
| 6. A. far | B. away | C. back | D. down |
| 7. A. a while | B. a minute | C. an hour | D. a day |
| 8. A. in | B. to | C. inside | D. into |
| 9. A. What | B. When | C. Why | D. How |
| 10. A. remembered | B. thought | C. found | D. heard |
| 11. A. but | B. and | C. though | D. so |
| 12. A. anyone | B. someone | C. everyone | D. no one |
| 13. A. others | B. another | C. the others | D. the other |
| 14. A. more | B. free | C. each | D. only |
| 15. A. under | B. inside | C. above | D. among |

19

It was December 25, 1972, Marie Orr, a 13-year-old Australian girl, was happy. It was 1 and Marie's mother made an unusual cake. She put four small coins into 2. The four small coins were for good 3.

After dinner Marie and her 4 ate the cake. When they 5 the cake, there were three coins on the table. One coin was 6. Marie's mother didn't notice.

After Christmas Marie got 7. She coughed and couldn't speak. Six weeks 8 she felt better, but she 9 couldn't speak. So Marie went to the hospital.

Doctors at the hospital 10 Marie. They took an X-ray. Marie's mother asked the doctors, "~~Why~~ can't Marie 11?" The doctors said, "~~We~~ don't know. Maybe she will speak again. Maybe she won't. We're 12, but we can't help her."

For twelve years Marie didn't speak. She 13 and got a job. But she never spoke.

One day when Marie was 25 years old, she got ill. She began to cough. She coughed up a lot

of blood. She also coughed up 14 small and black from her throat. What was it? Marie didn't know. She took it to the hospital. A doctor said, "This is a coin."

The doctor told Marie, "I 15 you can speak again." Soon Marie began talking.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-----------------|--------------|
| 1. A. party | B. Christmas | C. holiday | D. winter |
| 2. A. the cake | B. her pocket | C. Marie's bag | D. the box |
| 3. A. friend | B. health | C. luck | D. life |
| 4. A. teacher | B. brother | C. daughter | D. family |
| 5. A. began | B. finished | C. did | D. made |
| 6. A. paid | B. found | C. missing | D. put away |
| 7. A. tired | B. home | C. back | D. ill |
| 8. A. after | B. ago | C. later | D. before |
| 9. A. still | B. also | C. sometimes | D. often |
| 10. A. looked for | B. looked at | C. looked after | D. looked up |
| 11. A. talk | B. listen | C. tell | D. hear |
| 12. A. sure | B. busy | C. worried | D. sorry |
| 13. A. got up | B. put up | C. grew up | D. sent up |
| 14. A. something | B. anything | C. everything | D. nothing |
| 15. A. wish | B. hope | C. know | D. think |

20

Coffee has been a part of people's life for thousands of years. Today it is still a 1 drink of millions of people in the world. Coffee is so popular, but do you know the story of coffee and how it was 2?

There is an old 3 that says coffee was discovered in Africa long time ago. One day, a farmer was watching his goats, and he saw them eat some small berries (干草种) from a 4. After they ate the berries, the goats 5 very active. The man often felt 6, so he decided to try the berries too. Surprisingly, he did not feel tired 7. Coffee plants were thus discovered. Then coffee was taken from Africa to Arabia, and there it was 8 used as medicine. The Arabs kept coffee a secret for many years. 9, coffee came to Turkey, then Italy, then France. From Europe, the coffee plant was taken to America. People found that coffee plants grew 10 in many parts of South America, so large coffee farms were started, and many coffee plants were 11. On these farms, coffee beans were picked from the plants by 12. Then the beans were 13 and prepared for market to sell. Different coffee beans were mixed together to 14 different kinds of coffee. Coffee was sent to all over the world, and soon became very 15.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. favourite | B. popular | C. like | D. love |
| 2. A. worked | B. invented | C. looked for | D. discovered |
| 3. A. farmer | B. worker | C. story | D. doctor |
| 4. A. tree | B. plant | C. animal | D. place |
| 5. A. became | B. were | C. felt | D. kept |

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------|----------------|--------------|
| 6. A. angry | B. hungry | C. tired | D. thirsty |
| 7. A. neither | B. also | C. any more | D. too |
| 8. A. last | B. first | C. second | D. begin |
| 9. A. Then | B. Later | C. After | D. Before |
| 10. A. well | B. good | C. fine | D. nice |
| 11. A. digged | B. watered | C. cut down | D. grown |
| 12. A. air | B. car | C. hand | D. sea |
| 13. A. hot | B. heat | C. wet | D. dried |
| 14. A. pick | B. produce | C. prepare | D. protect |
| 15. A. important | B. popular | C. interesting | D. delicious |

21

About a year ago, I went to stay at a Detroit hotel. I didn't want to 1 too much money with me. So I asked the desk clerk to put a hundred-dollar bill in the safe for me.

The next morning, however, the clerk said that he knew nothing about my 2. I didn't have any proof that I had given the money. There was 3 nothing left to do but go to the nearest lawyer.

The lawyer 4 me to return to the hotel with him and give another hundred-dollar bill to the clerk. So we did. An hour later, I went back to the desk and asked for my money. 5 I had the lawyer as an eyewitness to the second hundred-dollar bill, the clerk could not say he 6 nothing about it.

Another hour later, I put the second part of the lawyer's plan into action. This time both the lawyer and I went to the hotel to 7 for the hundred-dollar bill once again and when the clerk insisted he had given 8 to me. I said it was not true. The lawyer said to him, "I saw this gentleman give you a hundred dollars. If you don't hand it 9 immediately. I will be forced to call the policeman." The clerk realized he had been 10 so he gave me back another hundred-dollar bill.

"I don't know 11 to thank you enough for 12 my money back." I said to 13. "And what do you suppose he 14?" He said, "Oh, don't 15 me. That will be one hundred dollars, please."

- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------|---------------|---------------|
| 1. A. carry | B. lend | C. spend | D. hold |
| 2. A. dollar | B. money | C. safe | D. stay |
| 3. A. carefully | B. correctly | C. actually | D. clearly |
| 4. A. advised | B. promised | C. agreed | D. approved |
| 5. A. Though | B. When | C. Unless | D. Since |
| 6. A. believed | B. had | C. knew | D. heard |
| 7. A. search | B. ask | C. make | D. beg |
| 8. A. these | B. this | C. them | D. it |
| 9. A. over | B. in | C. up | D. out |
| 10. A. punished | B. helped | C. cheated | D. understood |
| 11. A. why | B. how | C. where | D. when |
| 12. A. returning | B. giving | C. getting | D. asking for |
| 13. A. the clerk | B. the police | C. the lawyer | D. eyewitness |

14. A. asked B. felt C. pretended D. answered
15. A. before B. thank C. leave D. fool

22

Last Friday, all the family went shopping in the town. I wanted to have a rest before catching the train. I 1 a newspaper and some chocolate and 2 into the station coffee shop. It was a cheap self-service place with long tables to 3 at. I put my heavy bag down on the floor, 4 the newspaper and the chocolate on the table and then went to get a cup of coffee.

When I came back with the coffee, there was someone 5 in the next seat. 6 was a boy, with dark glasses and old clothes, and his hair 7 bright red at the front. He had started to eat my chocolate!

Naturally, I was rather uneasy(不安) about him, but I didn't want to have any 8. I just read the newspaper, tasted my coffee and took a bit of chocolate. The boy looked at me in 9. Then he took a 10 piece of my chocolate. I could hardly believe it. Still I didn't say anything to him. When he took a third piece. I felt more angry than uneasy. I thought, "Well, I shall have the last piece." And I got it.

The boy gave me a strange look, then 11 up. As he left, he shouted out, "There's something 12 with that woman!" Everyone looked at me, 13 I didn't want to quarrel with the boy, so I kept quiet. I did not realize that I had 14 a mistake until I finished my coffee and was ready to 15. My face turned red when I saw my unopened chocolate under the newspaper. The chocolate that I had been eating was the boy's!

1. A. stole B. bought C. sold D. wrote
2. A. went B. sat C. seated D. liked
3. A. sit B. seat C. lie D. laugh
4. A. pushed B. took C. put D. pulled
5. A. jumping B. playing C. sitting D. sleeping
6. A. He B. It C. Who D. What
7. A. cut B. washed C. covered D. colored
8. A. coffee B. trouble C. chocolate D. matter
9. A. carelessness B. anger C. surprise D. happiness
10. A. first B. second C. very D. last
11. A. stood B. took C. cried D. looked
12. A. strange B. wrong C. OK D. funny
13. A. and B. but C. so D. while
14. A. spelt B. corrected C. made D. found
15. A. finish B. leave C. jump D. shop

23

A new term has begun. Teachers are 1 about the fact that new students are not easy to deal with. They like to bring cell phones and MP3 players to school. What is 2, some students even

use cell phones 3 out-of-class matters in class, or sometimes just for fun. Some 4 students listen to MP3 players when they are having a lesson that they are not interested in.

Are these new students really that 5? ~~Yes~~,” says Delaney Kirk, a professor at Drake University. 6 she adds it’s not their fault. 7, the teachers should be blamed. Mrs. Kirk first begun thinking about students’ manners six years ago. ~~I~~ had my first class in which students were sleeping or talking to each other. it seemed that 8 well had noting to do with them,” she says. ~~At~~ first, I got worried about this. But then I said to 9. ‘you’re giving 10, and you need to manage this kind of situation. These students need to know more about manners. It’s time to help them develop some good 11. They shouldn’t waste time doing nothing when they are young. Sooner or later, they may regret the time they 12 ”

Mrs. Kirk also 13 a list of suggestions to help teachers better manage their classes. The following are among her suggestions:

- On the first day of class, tell students how they will benefit by taking the class and the importance 14 listening carefully in class.
- Do not allow them to bring cell phones or MP3 players to the class at all.
- Tell them how to use cell phones or MP3 players 15.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. excited | B. worried | C. surprised | D. interested |
| 2. A. bad | B. worse | C. good | D. better |
| 3. A. do | B. doing | C. to do | D. did |
| 4. A. other | B. the other | C. others | D. another |
| 5. A. rude | B. polite | C. friendly | D. boring |
| 6. A. But | B. However | C. And | D. So |
| 7. A. Such as | B. For example | C. Instead of | D. Instead |
| 8. A. learn | B. learned | C. learning | D. learns |
| 9. A. me | B. myself | C. I | D. mine |
| 10. A. math | B. English | C. Chinese | D. lessons |
| 11. A. ideas | B. speeches | C. habits | D. classes |
| 12. A. had wasted | B. waste | C. have wasted | D. will waste |
| 13. A. makes | B. brings | C. gets | D. takes |
| 14. A. on | B. of | C. at | D. by |
| 15. A. careful | B. carefully | C. proper | D. properly |

24

Everybody 1 his teacher, and so do I. Whenever I think of my first teacher, I can’t help recalling 2 she helped me when I was a pupil in the primary school. When I first went to school I 3 in Mrs. Cai’s class. As a naive girl, I knew nothing about how to behave in class. I used to look about and 4 to the teacher. One day we were assigned homework. But I didn’t hear 5 about it. When I got home, my mother asked me, ~~Any~~ homework today, my dear?” ~~No~~, not any, Mum.” 6 these words I went out to play. 7 morning Mrs. Cai came up to me and asked me if I had

finished my homework. 8, I said, “I don’t think you have assigned any homework.” Hearing this, my classmates 9 laughing. I was asked to go to the office after class, my heart 10 fast. “I’m to be scolded,” I thought. To my surprise, I saw a comforting smile on her face. 11 me to take a seat, she began to tell me the importance of listening attentively in 12. “Xiao Zong, 13 as you are, it’s more important 14.” It was those words that made me come to realize my shortcomings. It is also those words that helped me 15 my heart into my lessons. I have no idea about where Mrs. Cai is now working. But I miss her badly, especially on Teachers’ Day.

1. A. thinks B. is thinking C. misses D. missed
2. A. why B. how C. what D. that
3. A. was happened B. happened to be
C. was happened to be D. was happening to be
4. A. not pay attention B. pay no attention
C. pay not attention D. paid not attention
5. A. everything B. something C. anything D. nothing
6. A. Speaking B. Telling C. With D. On
7. A. Next B. Next to C. The next D. In next
8. A. To be dumbfounded B. To be dumbfounding
C. To dumbfound of D. Dumbfounded
9. A. burst out B. bursted out C. bursted off D. burst
10. A. beats B. beat C. beating D. beating
11. A. To ask B. To be asking C. Asked D. Asking
12. A. the class B. class C. classroom D. the classroom
13. A. more clever B. cleverer C. much clever D. clever
14. A. to be diligent B. to study diligent C. to work hardly D. diligent
15. A. put B. give C. throw D. make

25

I walked along the sea for about an hour until I began to feel hungry. It was seven. By that time, I was not far from a favourite restaurant of mine. I often went there to eat two or three times a week. I knew the owner well.

I went into the restaurant. It was already crowded, and I ordered my meal. While I was waiting, I looked 1 to see if I knew anyone in the restaurant. Then I saw a man sitting at a corner table near the door keeping looking in my direction as if he knew me. I certainly didn’t know him, for I never forgot a 2. The man had a newspaper 3 in front of him. But I could see that he was keeping an 4 on me. When the waiter brought my soup, the man was 5 puzzled by the familiar way that the waiter and I called each other. He became even more puzzled as 6 went on. He could see that I was well 7 in the restaurant. At last he got up and went into the kitchen. After a few minutes he came out again, 8 for his meal and left.

When I had finished, I called the owner of the restaurant over and asked him 9 the man

had wanted. The owner told me he was a detective (侦探). ~~Really?~~ I was 10. ~~He~~ was certainly 11 in me, but why? I asked. ~~He~~ followed you here because he thought you were a man he was looking 12.” the owner said. ~~When~~ he came into the kitchen, he showed me a 13 of the man he wanted. He certainly looked like you! Of course, since we 14 you here, I told him he had made a mistake.” It’s 15 I came to a restaurant where I am known, or I might have been arrested (被捕)!

- | | | | |
|-------------------|----------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A. for | B. at | C. around | D. like |
| 2. A. name | B. face | C. person | D. friend |
| 3. A. open | B. closed | C. opened | D. close |
| 4. A. orange | B. arm | C. apple | D. eye |
| 5. A. badly | B. fast | C. quickly | D. clearly |
| 6. A. program | B. story | C. time | D. news |
| 7. A. taken | B. made | C. known | D. brought |
| 8. A. paid | B. took | C. spent | D. cost |
| 9. A. that | B. what | C. when | D. which |
| 10. A. worried | B. surprised | C. surprising | D. sad |
| 11. A. interested | B. interesting | C. worried | D. sure |
| 12. A. up | B. like | C. at | D. for |
| 13. A. book | B. photo | C. paper | D. magazine |
| 14. A. know | B. see | C. hear | D. look at |
| 15. A. bad | B. good | C. lucky | D. best |

26

Ella Fant lived with her only son John in a small house. She 1 John very much. In her eyes he couldn’t do anything 2. Every morning she would give his breakfast in bed and bring him the papers to 3. It isn’t really true that he was too lazy to work—in fact he had tried a few 4. First of all, he was a window-cleaner and in his 5 week he managed to treat at least six windows. Then he 6 a bus conductor and on his second day a passenger 7 his bag with all the fares collected. He even lost his job as a 8 because he sent off all the letters when he should have taken them 9 people’s houses. It seemed that there was no suitable work for him. So he decided to 10 the army. Mrs. Fant was so excited about this that she told the news to 11 her neighbors. —“John is going to be a soldier,” she said. —“~~He~~ is going to be the best soldier there ever was, I can tell you!”

Then the great day came when he was to march past the palace in the parade (阅兵式). His proud mother traveled to the city early in the morning to be sure of getting a good position in the 12.

The parade was full of sound and color. But when John and his fellow soldier came in sight, some of the people watching couldn’t help 13 at the one who couldn’t keep pace with the others as they marched along. But Ella Fant, who was filled with 14, shouted at the top of her voice,

Look at them! They're all out of step 15 my John! Isn't he the best!"

- | | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. enjoyed | B. lived | C. loved | D. hated |
| 2. A. right | B. well | C. wrong | D. fine |
| 3. A. read | B. watch | C. look at | D. see |
| 4. A. work | B. works | C. jobs | D. subjects |
| 5. A. one | B. first | C. second | D. another |
| 6. A. became | B. changed | C. turned | D. been |
| 7. A. picked | B. stole | C. needed | D. wanted |
| 8. A. post | B. postman | C. mail | D. driver |
| 9. A. on | B. at | C. of | D. to |
| 10. A. attend | B. join | C. in | D. take part in |
| 11. A. other | B. both | C. all | D. whole |
| 12. A. children | B. crowd | C. men | D. women |
| 13. A. looking | B. laughing | C. seeing | D. saying |
| 14. A. sadness | B. happiness | C. care | D. goodness |
| 15. A. besides | B. but | C. except | D. divided by |

27

A good dictionary is an important tool. It will tell you not only what a word means but also how it is 1. A dictionary needs to be printed again about every ten years. Languages develop and a good dictionary must 2 these changes.

A new English dictionary will only tell you 3 most people use the language today. It will not tell you what is right 4 wrong. It may tell you the right time to use the word. If only 5 people use a word, a dictionary will 6 tell you this or list it.

7 dictionary will tell you many interesting facts. If you type a word and the word is too long, 8 in your dictionary. All dictionaries show you where to break a word. And they also show a word to 9.

Every dictionary, of course, tells you 10 a word means. But some words, like ~~get~~ or ~~take~~, may have a lot of meanings. In some dictionaries, the meanings are listed first. In 11 the newest meanings are listed last. So before you use your dictionary, you should always read the front part. This part 12 how to use it.

Some dictionaries also show you where a word comes from. Do you know that the word ~~brand~~ comes from an old word? This old word means ~~to burn~~. This is because 13 years ago people burned their names on tables or boats to show who had 14 them. They also burned their own names on their farm animals 15 they would not be stolen.

- | | | | |
|------------|-----------|----------|-----------|
| 1. A. made | B. taught | C. used | D. worked |
| 2. A. see | B. show | C. watch | D. feel |
| 3. A. how | B. when | C. why | D. if |
| 4. A. and | B. or | C. but | D. not |

- | | | | |
|--------------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 5. A. a little | B. a few | C. many | D. a lot of |
| 6. A. neither | B. nor | C. both | D. either |
| 7. A. Every | B. Some | C. All | D. A few |
| 8. A. look up it | B. look for it | C. look it up | D. look it out |
| 9. A. speak | B. tell | C. work | D. do |
| 10. A. how | B. what | C. which | D. where |
| 11. A. another | B. the other | C. others | D. other |
| 12. A. decides | B. speaks | C. explains | D. talks |
| 13. A. hundreds of | B. hundred of | C. hundreds | D. hundred |
| 14. A. got | B. found | C. seen | D. built |
| 15. A. when | B. while | C. so that | D. such that |

28

In the 13th century, the famous Italian traveler, Marco Polo, traveled a long way to China. 1 his stay in China, he saw many wonderful things. One of the things he 2 was that the Chinese used paper money. In western countries, people did not use paper money until the 15th century. However, people in China began to use paper money in 7th century.

A Chinese man called Cai Lun 3 paper almost 2000 years ago. He made it from wood. He took the wood from trees and 4 it into paper. He put these pieces together and made them into a book.

Now paper still comes from trees. We use a lot of paper every day. If we keep on wasting so much paper, there will not be any 5 left on the earth. If there are no trees, there will be no paper. Every day, people 6 away about 2800 tons of paper in our city. It 7 17 trees to make one ton of paper. This means that we are cutting 48000 trees every day. Since it takes more than 10 years for a tree to grow, we must start using 8 paper. If we don't, we will not have enough time to grow more trees to take the 9 of those we use for paper.

So how can we save paper? We can use both 10 of every piece of paper, especially when we are making notes. We can choose drinks in 11 instead of those in paper packets. We can also use cotton handkerchiefs and not 12 ones. When we go 13, we can use fewer paper bags. If the shop assistant does give us a paper bag, we can save it and reuse it later.

Everyone can help to 14 paper. If we all think 15, we can help protect trees. But we should do it now, or it is too late.

- | | | | |
|------------------|------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A. Before | B. After | C. During | D. With |
| 2. A. discovered | B. thought | C. looked | D. heard |
| 3. A. found | B. saw | C. looked for | D. invented |
| 4. A. let | B. put | C. made | D. become |
| 5. A. grasses | B. trees | C. leaves | D. flowers |
| 6. A. throw | B. take | C. get | D. leave |
| 7. A. uses | B. plants | C. grows | D. takes |
| 8. A. less | B. more | C. fewer | D. some |

- | | | | |
|----------------|-------------|--------------|------------|
| 9. A. space | B. place | C. room | D. seat |
| 10. A. lines | B. sides | C. covers | D. backs |
| 11. A. bottles | B. cups | C. glasses | D. bowls |
| 12. A. silk | B. cloth | C. paper | D. plastic |
| 13. A. home | B. shopping | C. boating | D. skating |
| 14. A. make | B. use | C. save | D. waste |
| 15. A. fast | B. slowly | C. carefully | D. quiet |

29

Sam is a bus driver in a big city. All day he drives a bus through busy streets. Driving a big bus is very 1 work. It makes some drivers 2. But not Sam!

Sam is always happy. And the people who ride in his bus seem to be happy, too. This story shows 3.

Early one 4, Sam started his big green and yellow bus. He went off on the 5 work. ~~Oh~~, what a beautiful morning!" he sang. ~~Oh~~, what a beautiful day!"

At the first bus stop, a man was 6. ~~Good~~ morning, Mr. James," said Sam 7 a big smile. ~~How~~ are you?" ~~Wonderful!~~" Sam answered. ~~Just~~ wonderful! This is a fine day."

Mr. James smiled. He took a seat. As he looked 8 the window, he still smiled. At the 9 stop a man came running up. He was puffing(气喘吁吁). ~~I~~ have to (puff) catch a train (puff) at seven," he said. ~~Can~~ you (puff) get me to the station?"

~~Now~~, just sit down and rest," said Sam. ~~I'll~~ drive a little 10. We will be there in time. Then you 11 run again.

~~Thank~~ you!" said the man. He sat down.

Sam 12 drive just a little faster. He got to the station before seven!

~~Thank~~ you," said the man, as he got off the bus. ~~You~~ are the best driver in the city!"

As he drove on, Sam 13 talking again. By this time, many people were on the bus. They were 14 going to work. But Sam made the ride seem like fun.

~~It~~ is now ten minutes after seven," Sam called out. ~~The~~ sky is blue. It will not rain today. We all like sunshine, don't we?"

He began to sing, ~~I~~ love you, Mr. Sunshine, I love you, Mr. Sun. In all the world I love you best. You are the only one."

~~What~~ is that song, Sam?" a girl asked

~~It's~~ my song." he said. ~~I~~ made it up. I like to sing. It makes 15 people want to sing, too."

Sam was right! The man behind him started to sing!

- | | | | |
|---------------|--------------|----------------|------------|
| 1. A. easy | B. great | C. interesting | D. hard |
| 2. A. good | B. happy | C. bad | D. unhappy |
| 3. A. what | B. why | C. when | D. who |
| 4. A. morning | B. afternoon | C. evening | D. night |
| 5. A. month's | B. week's | C. day's | D. night's |

- | | | | |
|----------------|---------------|------------------|-------------|
| 6. A. waiting | B. talking | C. laughing | D. riding |
| 7. A. in | B. with | C. within | D. without |
| 8. A. into | B. out of | C. at | D. up |
| 9. A. first | B. last | C. other | D. next |
| 10. A. faster | B. slower | C. quicker | D. farther |
| 11. A. don't | B. won't | C. won't have to | D. mustn't |
| 12. A. could | B. would | C. did | D. might |
| 13. A. liked | B. started | C. enjoyed | D. finished |
| 14. A. all | B. both | C. none | D. every |
| 15. A. another | B. the others | C. others | D. other |

30

A computer can do a great deal of work. The police use computers. They put into the computer's 1 all the information about crimes (犯罪), criminals (罪犯) and traffic. The police can 2 this computer's information at any time.

Scientists today must have computers for their calculations. A man can do an 3 calculation in two or three minutes. 4 a computer do even thousands of difficult calculations in two or three minutes.

In some schools there is a computer 5. Children can do their maths 6 computers. For example, the computer writes questions on the 7 in front of the children, and answer them on their keyboards.

A computer can do almost everything! But it cannot do 8 without man. People must 9 the programs and test them often on the computer. For example, some years ago the American spacecraft (宇宙飞船) Mariner I, was going to Venus (金星), but there was a mistake in one of the programs and this 10 the spacecraft in only five minutes. It 11 eighteen and a half million dollars!

A computer can do everything, it can compose (作曲) music, 12 pictures, play chess, write poetry and it can sometimes find the right boy for the right girl.

In the 13 we are going to use computers for almost every day. 14 are computers going to begin to use us? Who is going to use 15? That is the question.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|---------------|--------------|----------------|
| 1. A. imagine | B. message | C. memory | D. keyboard |
| 2. A. see | B. look at | C. watch | D. look around |
| 3. A. easy | B. quick | C. difficult | D. busy |
| 4. A. Because | B. As | C. But | D. Since |
| 5. A. room | B. class | C. lesson | D. classroom |
| 6. A. with | B. in | C. of | D. at |
| 7. A. mouse | B. screens | C. programs | D. system |
| 8. A. something | B. everything | C. anything | D. nothing |
| 9. A. check | B. make | C. build | D. work |
| 10. A. broke | B. destroyed | C. fell | D. dropped |
| 11. A. cost | B. spend | C. take | D. use |

- | | | | |
|--------------|------------|----------|-----------|
| 12. A. write | B. draw | C. keep | D. have |
| 13. A. hour | B. week | C. year | D. future |
| 14. A. If | B. Whether | C. Or | D. How |
| 15. A. who | B. whom | C. which | D. whose |

答案与解析:

1

【文章大意】这是一则寓言故事。讲述了一只老鼠妈妈和它的孩子被猫追赶，老鼠妈妈急中生智学狗叫，吓跑了猫。然后告诉我们一个道理：学习另一种语言的重要性。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B。【解析】：本题主要考查这四个单词的意思。naturally 自然地；suddenly 突然地；nearly 几乎；certainly 当然。根据句意，B 项最符合当时的情况。
2. 【答案】D。【解析】：根据句意，猫藏在树后。
3. 【答案】C。【解析】：猫为了抓住老鼠，它一直爬到几乎可以听到老鼠们谈话的地方。
4. 【答案】A。【解析】：根据事件的发展，猫要在老鼠发现它之前采取行动。
5. 【答案】B。【解析】：宾语从句缺主语。
6. 【答案】A。【解析】：猫从藏身地跳出来。本句缺谓语或根据 and 连接“平行结构”，所以用过去时。
7. 【答案】D。【解析】：根据上文，不是一只老鼠，所以用复数。
8. 【答案】A。【解析】：根据上下文的意思可知。
9. 【答案】C。【解析】：so...that 句式结构。“如此……以致于”
10. 【答案】D。【解析】：句意为“因为小老鼠如此地怕，以致于它们不能跑快”。
11. 【答案】A。【解析】：老鼠妈妈转过身去才能和猫正面对抗。
12. 【答案】B。【解析】：元音音素前用“an”。
13. 【答案】C。【解析】：根据下文，猫跑了，说明它非常害怕。
14. 【答案】D。【解析】：感叹句。how 后跟形容词 important。
15. 【答案】C。【解析】：不定冠词和序数词连用，表“又一，再一”。

2

【文章大意】这篇短文告诉我们必须要有好的学习方法，劳逸结合，高效出成果。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B。【解析】：我们都了解中国学生通常学习时间很长。
2. 【答案】C。【解析】：句意是“帮助不大”，help 符合句意。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】：下文有提示，要有足够的锻炼。
4. 【答案】D。【解析】：根据下文可知，只能和 visit 搭配。
5. 【答案】B。【解析】：上文的散步、拜访朋友或参观地方都是有利于健康的。
6. 【答案】B。【解析】：return 后跟介词 to 搭配。
7. 【答案】A。【解析】：and 连接平行结构，后面 study better 中 better 为比较级，所以用 more。
8. 【答案】B。【解析】：take...as an example 为固定短语，“以……为例”。
9. 【答案】C。【解析】：根据上文取得进步，当然感到高兴。
10. 【答案】D。【解析】：根据后句的 give up “放弃”，说明没有进步，保持原状。
11. 【答案】B。【解析】：根据句意，last “持续”。
12. 【答案】A。【解析】：你的语言学习将会有再一次的飞跃。
13. 【答案】B。【解析】：根据句意可知。

14. 【答案】C。【解析】：与 effective 相呼应的褒义词是 interesting。
 15. 【答案】B。【解析】：根据上下文意思。“不要放弃，慢慢学，你一定会得到好结果的。”

3

【文章大意】这篇短文告诉我们美利坚合众国的由来：美国是由州组成的国家，并且每增加一个州，就在旗子上增加一颗星。结合世界历史知识，完成此篇短文。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：此处 North American continent 为北美大陆。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：和前面的 North American continent 相对应。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】：介词后面跟动名词。
4. 【答案】C。【解析】：本题考查 every 和 each 的区别。every adj 用作定语，与单数可数名词连用，后不能接 of 短语。each 用作 adj 或 pron。
5. 【答案】C。【解析】：用过去时和后面时态一致。
6. 【答案】B。【解析】：与前面分句并列，故用过去时。
7. 【答案】C。【解析】：引导一段时间用 for。
8. 【答案】D。【解析】：more 用在数词和名词中间表示“又、再”。
9. 【答案】A。【解析】：新的州就指的是阿拉斯加和夏威夷。
10. 【答案】A。【解析】：根据常识可知。
11. 【答案】D。【解析】：这是强调句。for that reason 意思是“由于这个原因”。
12. 【答案】C。【解析】：根据句子后面的 English 可知。
13. 【答案】B。【解析】：根据上句 a great number of people came from England 可知。
14. 【答案】B。【解析】：be more like 意思为“更像……一样”。
15. 【答案】D。【解析】：形容词比较级表最高级，“比较级 + than any other + 名词的单数”，“比其他任何一个……都怎么样。”

4

【文章大意】这篇文章主要讲述了著名物理学家爱因斯坦的学习历程以及他的著名理论——相对论。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】A。【解析】：首次提到的单数名词前用 a。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：by 后跟一个过去的时间，这里表示“从过去到过去”，所以用过去完成时。
3. 【答案】C。【解析】：by oneself 独自地，这里强调他独自完成所有的学习。
4. 【答案】A。【解析】：这句和上句一样的句式和时态。两句话可以相互照应。
5. 【答案】B。【解析】：and 连接“平行结构”，和前面的 become 一样都是作 decide 的宾语。
6. 【答案】D。【解析】：devote oneself to 为固定短语。“致力于，献身于……”。
7. 【答案】C。【解析】：manage to do sth 设法做某事。
8. 【答案】A。【解析】：根据句意，later 后来。
9. 【答案】D。【解析】：with “用”。
10. 【答案】C。【解析】：名词的所有格。a doctor's degree 一个博士学位。
11. 【答案】A。【解析】：本句为强调句型。“It is/was + 被强调部分 + that/who + 其余部分”。
12. 【答案】A。【解析】：固定短语 lead to 导致、通向。
13. 【答案】B。【解析】：固定短语 too...to 太……而不能。
14. 【答案】C。【解析】：固定短语 laugh at 嘲笑。
15. 【答案】B。【解析】：a few /few 代可数名词复数 a little /little 代不可数名词。few/ little 表否定“几乎没有”。A few/a little 表肯定。“少数几个/一点”根据前句“这理论太难而不能理解。许多科学家嘲笑。”

可以看出几乎没人能接受。

5

【文章大意】这篇短文讲述的是一学生因向往假日到中国旅行而耽误了学习的故事。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：暑假对于小 Thomas 来说是高兴的事儿。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：take sb to a place 带某人去某地。
3. 【答案】D。【解析】：从上下文知。
4. 【答案】B。【解析】：show...to..., 给……看……。
5. 【答案】A。【解析】：从句意推测出。
6. 【答案】B。【解析】：find...in the maps 在地图上找。
7. 【答案】D。【解析】：结合上下文语境，这里应是谈食物的味道。
8. 【答案】A。【解析】：spend...on..., 在……上花费……
9. 【答案】C。【解析】：对照前后句可知。
10. 【答案】A。【解析】：fall behind 落后
11. 【答案】B。【解析】：根据句意可知。
12. 【答案】D。【解析】：注意关键词 but。
13. 【答案】C。【解析】：对照下句的关键词 the worst pupil 可知。
14. 【答案】A。【解析】：从句意可知。
15. 【答案】C。【解析】：was transferred to another school 被转入他校。

6

【文章大意】本文是有关丹麦作家安徒生的生平事迹。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：根据句意“没人会相信……”
2. 【答案】A。【解析】：句意为“由于他是家中唯一的孩子”。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】：他生活在他自己梦幻般的世界里。
4. 【答案】D。【解析】：所有的……都是他的朋友。
5. 【答案】B。【解析】：由下文可知。
6. 【答案】D。【解析】：while 意为“然而”。表转折，和上句形成对比。
7. 【答案】A。【解析】：从句意可排除 B、C、D。
8. 【答案】C。【解析】：句意为“但这不是他的想法”。
9. 【答案】A。【解析】：try his best to become an opera singer 尽力想成为一名歌剧歌手。
10. 【答案】B。【解析】：他在一个拥挤的房子里住了三年。
11. 【答案】C。【解析】：find a job 找到工作。
12. 【答案】D。【解析】：need further training 需要更进一步训练。
13. 【答案】B。【解析】：那（奖学金）使他完成教育成为可能；与第二段第一句对应。
14. 【答案】C。【解析】：写小说、游记及童话。
15. 【答案】A。【解析】：especially 特别地。

7

【文章大意】本文所谈的是 Berker 先生的家庭情况及其儿子在校学习和在军队服役的表现。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：下文有提示，shopkeeper 是关键词。

2. 【答案】D。【解析】：因此他从不为钱而担忧。
3. 【答案】A。【解析】：a happy life 快乐地生活。
4. 【答案】B。喜欢玩，功课差。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】：联系上文语境 “...weak in all his lessons”，应为赶不上别人。
6. 【答案】A。【解析】：join the army 参军。
7. 【答案】C。【解析】：依据句意排除 A、B、D 选项。
8. 【答案】B。【解析】：意为找不到借口。
9. 【答案】B。【解析】：get an idea 有了主意。
10. 【答案】C。【解析】：征求军官意见。
11. 【答案】D。【解析】：be in hospital 生病住院。
12. 【答案】B。【解析】：我得去照看她几周。
13. 【答案】D。【解析】：...said with a smile ……笑着说。
14. 【答案】A。【解析】：句意为“你妻子什么事也没有发生”。
15. 【答案】B。【解析】：从前后句可知。

8

【文章大意】本文介绍了水稻的相关知识和袁隆平培育出的杂交水稻的优点以及对社会的贡献。

【答案及详解】

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：引出说的内容用 say。
2. 【答案】A。【解析】：be different from 固定短语，“与……不同”
3. 【答案】C。【解析】：in the north China 在中国北方。
4. 【答案】C。【解析】：水稻自然是被种植。
5. 【答案】A。【解析】：与 early 对应。
6. 【答案】B。【解析】：两季用 both。
7. 【答案】D。【解析】：2007 年已经过去，plant 用过去时。
8. 【答案】C。【解析】：feed 有“喂养”之意。live/feed on 以……为食
9. 【答案】D。【解析】：the 1960s 二十世纪六十年代。
10. 【答案】D。【解析】：此处应为“种植”之意。
11. 【答案】A。【解析】：it 代替杂交水稻。
12. 【答案】B。【解析】：-compared with common rice” 两者比较用比较级。
13. 【答案】B。【解析】：either 表“也”，用于否定句。
14. 【答案】D。【解析】：plants 为复数。
15. 【答案】A。【解析】：be known as 作为……而出名。

9

【文章大意】本文讲述了现代生活离开旅游是不可能的，最快捷旅游方式是乘飞机，但乘火车、乘船、驾车都是旅行的好方式，且各有优势。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：此句意为“最快捷的旅行方式是乘飞机”。
2. 【答案】A。【解析】：从语篇得知，全篇都在谈旅行。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】：由前半句可知，表转折。前半句说“乘火车旅行比乘飞机慢”。
4. 【答案】B。【解析】：由语境推得。A. 看，瞧；B. 看见，强调结果；C. 观看；D. 检查，故选 B。
5. 【答案】A。【解析】：“comfortable seats”意为“舒适的座位”。
6. 【答案】D。【解析】：travel 泛指旅行；trip 为旅行，访问的总称，或短途旅行；journey 着重指旅程，

故选 D。

7. 【答案】C。【解析】: when possible 当可能时。
8. 【答案】C。【解析】: 此句意为“有大型的班轮和班船”。
9. 【答案】D。【解析】: 此句意为“你可以访问许多不同的国家和地区”。
10. 【答案】C。【解析】: “spend a holiday”意为“度假”，固定短语。
11. 【答案】A。【解析】: “make your own timetable”制作自己的时间表。
12. 【答案】D。【解析】: “just as you like”意为“正如你所喜欢的那样”。
13. 【答案】D。【解析】: 由语境推得。A. 无论哪一个；B. 无论什么，C. 无论何时；D. 无论何地。
14. 【答案】A。【解析】: “enjoy a good meal”意为“享用一顿美餐”。
15. 【答案】B。【解析】: “take a train or plane”意为“乘火车或乘飞机”。

10

【文章大意】本文通过两个大小不同的圆来说明，你越有知识，你越感到知识的缺乏。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B。【解析】: learned adj 有学问的
2. 【答案】B。【解析】: 来自全国各地的人向他学习。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】: learn...from 向……学习
4. 【答案】C。【解析】: answer questions 回答问题。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】: say 后跟具体说的内容。
6. 【答案】C。【解析】: many 只修饰可数名词复数前的形容词比较级。
7. 【答案】A。【解析】: 固定短语 with a smile “带着微笑”。
8. 【答案】B。【解析】: 两个中的另一个用“the other”。
9. 【答案】C。【解析】: 句子后出现“than”，用比较级。
10. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据句意，“小圆圈里的是你的”。相当于你的知识，所以用名词性物主代词。
11. 【答案】A。【解析】: 表语从句，缺主语。
12. 【答案】B。【解析】: since 既然，表原因。
13. 【答案】A。【解析】: mark out 标出，画出；make out 看出，了解；take out 取出，拿出；look out 小心
14. 【答案】B。【解析】: 根据句意可知。
15. 【答案】C。【解析】: the + 比较级...the + 比较级...表“越……就越……”

11

【文章大意】这则故事讲述了 Bob 因买不起巧克力来喂狗，不得不搬家。

【答案及详解】

1. 【答案】C。【解析】: be able to do sth. 根据句子意思，“Bob 不得不离开，因为他买不起巧克力”。
2. 【答案】A。【解析】: 根据句意“发现门前有一条大狗”。
3. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据句意，“碰巧他的衣兜里有块巧克力”。
4. 【答案】C。【解析】: 对于那条狗的再次出现，Bob 感到很惊奇。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】: 根据后面的句子，可以推断出狗当时的表情。
6. 【答案】B。【解析】: 根据句意。
7. 【答案】C。【解析】: 根据上句和下一句，Bob 并不认识这条狗。
8. 【答案】D。【解析】: 后面的“to”是个提示。固定短语“prefer...to...”喜欢…胜过…
9. 【答案】B。【解析】: 根据句意。
10. 【答案】C。【解析】: “这条狗对小块的巧克力感到不满意，因此要更大的巧克力”。
11. 【答案】A。【解析】: 根据这四个单词的意思可知。

12. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据句意, “如果 Bob 不给它巧克力, 它就不让他开门。”
 13. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据故事的发展, Bob 很想让这一行为终止。
 14. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 和第一段相照应。Bob 在喂这条狗上花费了很多。
 15. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 最后, Bob 不得不搬到别处。

12

【文章大意】主人 Johnny 丢弃了他的旧鞋子, 他的狗又把鞋子从垃圾场叼了回来, Johnny 一觉醒来, 发现鞋子自己“走”回来了, 就燃起了一堆大火并把鞋子放在火上, 此时, 大风起, 火烧了 Johnny 的房子, 但鞋子又被他的狗“救”了出来。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 从上文可知这里应为动态介词 into。
 2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: lie down 躺下, lie 的过去式是 lay, 过去分词是 lain, lay 的意思是“放置”“下蛋、产卵”, 过去式和过去分词都是 laid。
 3. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 从上下文知这里应为(那条狗常常)找寻食物。
 4. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 拟人化(下句有提示 he)。
 5. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 鞋子有两只, 用复数代词 they 代替。
 6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 这里是想表达狗叼了一只鞋子, A、B、C 都不恰当。
 7. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由本句中的 heavy 和 went 两词可推断出。
 8. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 联系上下文可知。
 9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 两只鞋中的另一只。
 10. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 上文的“by his master's bed”已提示。
 11. 【答案】D. 【解析】: walk by themselves 自己走。
 12. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 为了不让鞋子“走掉”, 火的面积应大, 即需要一大堆火。
 13. 【答案】D. 【解析】: put the shoes on it 把鞋子放在火上。
 14. 【答案】C. 【解析】: before long 不久。从上下语境看, 选项 C 比 B、D 更恰当, long before 很久以前。
 15. 【答案】B. 【解析】: burn 意思是“燃烧”, destroy 意思是“毁坏”, 是及物动词。

13

【文章大意】文章描述的是一位独居的老母亲, 晚上听到一间房子有声音, 怀疑有贼, 唯恐打扰儿子休息, 就将门钉上, 早晨才给儿子打电话的故事。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: on another street 在另一条街上。
 2. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 从句意看, 他的母亲不想离开她的小屋。
 3. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 下文有提示“Then she put the phone down”。
 4. 【答案】C. 【解析】: Who was that? 意为“那是谁?”
 5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 从上下语境可知此答案, “母亲有事需要找儿子”。
 6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本句意为“……从她那儿去上班。”
 7. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 从前半句 he took his car out 可看出, 驱车前往他母亲的住处。
 8. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 固定句型。“出了什么事?”或“什么怎么了?”
 9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 上句已有提示。
 10. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 从上下句意看, 答案应为 C, 其后的 heard 是关键词。
 11. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 从句意看, 应是悄悄地问, 答案应为 C。
 12. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 从句意及下句的关键词 because 可知。
 13. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 意为“我不想打扰你”。

14. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 现在完成时的第三人称单数形式, 后面反义疑问句用 has 是提示。

15. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 从上下句意看, 母亲做的是肯定回答。

14

【文章大意】家里贫困的 Johnson 先生, 丢了一双鞋子去警察局报警。几天后, 警察抓住了小偷却埋怨 Johnson 欺骗了他们。原来, Johnson 认为他鞋子的价格应包括买时所付的钱和 5 年中 6 次请人修补所花的钱。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: study at school 在校学习。
2. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 联系上下句可知答案。
3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 选项 A、B、D 在这里均不符合文意, 因为前句提到他缺钱。
4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 注意下句的关键词 wet。
5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: go to bed 上床睡觉; 这里选项 C 比选项 B 更符合上下文语意。
6. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 从句意可知。
7. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 注意关键词 but 及下文的 worn-out。
8. 【答案】A. 【解析】: a pair of broken shoes “一双破鞋”, 下文 a pair of worn-out shoes 是提示。
9. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 注意后面的 policemen。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: pay...for...是固定短语, “为……付款”。
11. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 从句意本身可知答案。
12. 【答案】A. 【解析】: catch a thief 捉住贼。
13. 【答案】B. 【解析】: “鞋子”应是复数。
14. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 从句主语是 a pair of new shoes like them。
15. 【答案】C. 【解析】: “我已买了 5 年了”, 这里不能用终止性动词 buy。

15

【文章大意】本文描述的是去年我妻子和我在英格兰观光的情景。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 我们认为秋天是游览英格兰最好的季节。
2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: usually 通常。
3. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 没有太多的参观者。
4. 【答案】C. 【解析】: a small hotel 一家小宾馆。
5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 出租车价太高, 这里不宜用 tall。
6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: like + doing sth “喜欢干某事”
7. 【答案】B. 【解析】: which 引导定语从句, 先行词为 places, 从句缺宾语。
8. 【答案】B. 【解析】: go shopping 买东西。
9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: spend too much money 花了太多钱。
10. 【答案】C. 【解析】: what we like most 我们最喜欢的。
11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: chance 机会。
12. 【答案】B. 【解析】: at home 在家, 在国内。
13. 【答案】A. 【解析】: It's true that...是一种固定句式。
14. 【答案】D. 【解析】: so...that..., 如此……以致于……
15. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 注意后面的关键词 when it rain.

16

【文章大意】这是一篇培养孩子如何自立的文章。文章讲的是 Joe 准备打工赚钱买计算机的故事。

【答案及详解】

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 他向他的父母要钱。
2. 【答案】C. 【解析】: think about 思考。
3. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 联系前后可知答案。snow 为关键词。
4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 其后的从句表原因。
5. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 下文的 newspaper manager 是关键词。
6. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 或许我甚至马上可以买电脑。even 甚至。
7. 【答案】D. 【解析】: pay for 付……款。
8. 【答案】B. 【解析】: catch up with sb 赶上某人。
9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 他得知送报每周挣 25 美元是可能的。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 每晚花费大约 3 小时。
11. 【答案】B. 【解析】: give somebody something 给某人某物。
12. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 本句意为“Joe 几乎是飞回家的”。从 fly home 也可看出 Joe 的心情。
13. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 从后面的句子可知这里应为 smiled。
14. 【答案】C. 【解析】: a great idea 好主意。
15. 【答案】B. 【解析】: Joe 的母亲高兴地笑了。

17

【文章大意】本文描述了 Clarke 夫妻的日常生活情况。Clarke 先生是一个中学数学老师，工作繁忙、辛苦；Clarke 夫人一人呆在家里，她喜欢交谈，而通常又没有交谈的对象。这样当 Clarke 先生回到家里，夫人总是谈得很多……

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: teach maths 教数学。
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 对老师来说辛勤工作当然也就很忙。
3. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 妻子独自呆在家里。
4. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 联系前后句可知。
5. 【答案】A. 【解析】: wake sb up 叫醒某人。
6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: make sb not do sth 使某人不能做某事。
7. 【答案】B. 【解析】: Clarke 先生很讨厌这个，但他不知怎么办。
8. 【答案】C. 【解析】: feel unwell 感觉身体不好。
9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: be still in bed 还在床上。
10. 【答案】D. 【解析】: “我现在头疼”。
11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: telephone our school 给我的学校打电话。
12. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 起床，走开了。
13. 【答案】A. 【解析】: go to hospital 去看病。
14. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 医生说什么。
15. 【答案】B. 【解析】: have a good rest 好好休息，符合句意。

18

【文章大意】本文讲述的是 20 年前我随家人回伦敦时，找寻学校上学的事。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 我家刚刚搬回伦敦。
2. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 没有足够多的学校供孩子们上学。
3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: ask sb to do sth 要求/请求某人做某事。

4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: had been to 去过……
5. 【答案】A. 【解析】: in the end 最后, 终于。
6. 【答案】B. 【解析】: five kilometers away 五公里远。
7. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 只有选项 C 符合句意。
8. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 从句意可知应为动态介词 into。
9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意为“为什么你想要来这儿”。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 我原想说些有关学习方面的事。
11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 表转折。
12. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 此句为否定句。
13. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 我想和其他男孩子们玩耍。
14. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 有一个座位空着。
15. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 其他三个答案不符合句意。

19

【文章大意】一位 13 岁的澳大利亚女孩 Marie 圣诞节后生病了, 从此她便说不出话来。12 年后, 她生病开始咳嗽、咳血, 同时还咳出了一个又小又黑的东西——医生说那是一枚硬币。此后不久, Marie 又开始讲话了。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 前句已有提示。
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 她在蛋糕里放进了四枚硬币。
3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 联系上下文, 排除选项 A、B 和 D。
4. 【答案】D. 【解析】: her family 在此意为“她的家人”。
5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 当他们吃完蛋糕, 桌子上有三枚硬币。
6. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 综合一、二段可知答案, 即一枚硬币不见了。
7. 【答案】D. 【解析】: got ill 生病了。
8. 【答案】C. 【解析】: six weeks later 六周以后。
9. 【答案】A. 【解析】: but 为关键词, 后句也有提示。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 此句意为医院的医生看了看 Marie。
11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 为什么 Marie 不能说话。
12. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 意为“我们感到抱歉, 我们帮不了她”。
13. 【答案】C. 【解析】: grow up 长大了。
14. 【答案】A. 【解析】: something small and black 又小又黑的东西。
15. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本句意为“我想你又能说话了”。

20

【文章大意】文章简要介绍了咖啡的发现及传播过程。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】A. 【解析】: favourite “最喜欢的, 作定语”。popular 受欢迎的, 一般作表语, 而且从语境上看前者更适当。
2. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 下文有提示。...how it was discovered.....它是怎么被发现的。
3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 上句说“不过, 你知道咖啡的故事以及咖啡是怎么发现的吗?”
4. 【答案】B. 【解析】: “a plant” 为“一种植物”, 下文中有一句“Coffee plants were thus discovered.”意为“咖啡植物就这样被发现了。”
5. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 表变化的过程。此句意为“吃过这些种子的山羊变得非常兴奋”。

6. 【答案】C。【解析】：由上一句和下一句可推知。A 项为生气，B 项为饥饿，C 项为困倦，D 项为口渴。
7. 【答案】C。【解析】：not...any more 不再。
8. 【答案】B。【解析】：first 最初，第一。
9. 【答案】B。【解析】：later 后来。
10. 【答案】A。由下文可知，well 修饰动词 grow。
11. 【答案】D。【解析】：A 项挖、掘；B 项浇水；C 项砍掉（倒）；D 项种植。由句意可知 D 项最佳。
12. 【答案】C。【解析】：by hand 意为“手工，用手”。
13. 【答案】D。【解析】：由语境得出。A. 热的；B. 加热；C. 潮湿；D. 弄干。
14. 【答案】B。【解析】：A. 采、摘，B. 制造、生产，C. 准备，D. 保护、防御。B 项最恰当。
15. 【答案】B。【解析】：总结全文，由第一段最后一句得出。该句是说“咖啡如此流行”。

21

【文章大意】这则故事讲述了一位顾客在律师的帮助下，从酒店服务员处要回自己的 100 元钱，但最后律师费是 100 元的故事。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】A。【解析】：carry 除了有“搬、运”意思之外，还可以指“携带”钱、文件等，其他三个动词不合题意。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：根据下句，知道肯定是在谈钱。
3. 【答案】D。【解析】：A. 仔细地；B. 正确地；C. 事实上；D. 清楚地。根据句意，选 D。
4. 【答案】A。【解析】：从上文得知，作者没有提出回旅馆的要求，可见是律师建议的。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】：since 在这里的意思是“既然”，表示原因。
6. 【答案】C。【解析】：因为第二次给钱时，有律师在场，收银员不能说他不知道。
7. 【答案】B。【解析】：ask for 是“向……要”的意思，其他选项不合题意。
8. 【答案】D。【解析】：it 用来指代上文提到的 the hundred dollar bill。
9. 【答案】B。【解析】：hand in 是“上交、交出”的意思，符合题意。
10. 【答案】C。【解析】：收银员此时已经意识到中了律师的圈套，只好归还给作者第一次（放在他那儿）的钞票。
11. 【答案】B。【解析】：作者不知道怎样感谢律师。
12. 【答案】C。【解析】：get money back 收回、取回。符合题意。
13. 【答案】C。【解析】：主人公肯定是要感谢律师。
14. 【答案】D。【解析】：根据句意可知。
15. 【答案】B。【解析】：律师最后要作者付给他 100 美元作为报酬，显然不要作者说“感谢”。

22

【文章大意】这篇文章讲述了我外出购物时一次尴尬的经历。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B。【解析】：为了消磨时间，我买了报纸和巧克力。
2. 【答案】A。【解析】：由后文可知，我走进了一家咖啡店。
3. 【答案】A。【解析】：to sit at 是作 tables 的后置定语，意为“可以在旁边就坐的桌子”。
4. 【答案】C。【解析】：按常理我应当把报纸等放在桌子上，而不是推到或拉到桌子上。
5. 【答案】C。【解析】：由下文可知，回来时我发现他开始吃我的东西，说明他坐在桌旁。
6. 【答案】A。【解析】：由下文可知，对方是一个男孩。
7. 【答案】D。【解析】：头发应是被染成大红色的。
8. 【答案】B。【解析】：面对这样一个男孩，我不想惹麻烦。

9. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由下文可知, 我吃的是这个男孩的巧克力, 这引起了对方的某种反应, 比较四个选项, 再根据上文, 名词 surprise 比较合乎当时的情况。

10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 习惯用语 “a + 序数词 + 名词”, 常用来表示 “再一个, 又一个”。且后文还有 a third piece。

11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据文意可知, 那个男孩起身要走。

12. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 男孩生气了, 必定说了发泄的话, 比较四个选项, wrong 为最佳答案。

13. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 男孩骂了我导致大家都朝我看, 而我不想与他争吵, 可见我的反应与上文描述的气氛恰恰相反, 故用 but 构成转折关系。

14. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 固定短语 make a mistake “犯了个错误”。

15. 【答案】B. 【解析】: “我”在喝完咖啡准备离开时发现自己的过错, 故应选 leave。

23

【文章大意】上课玩手机、听音乐、不听老师讲课, 一般都被认为是不礼貌的行为, 但老师如何管理这些学生呢? 本文将给出一些建议。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据下文可知, 老师们担心这个事实。

2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 联系上下文可知, 此处应该为 “更糟糕的是”。

3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: “使用某物做某事” 用 use sth to do sth。

4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由上文可知, 此处意为 “一些其他的学生”。

5. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 上课玩手机、听音乐、不听老师讲课, 一般都被认为是不礼貌的行为。

6. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由下文可知, Delaney Kirk 认为学生行为粗鲁不是他们的过错, 与她面前的观点相反。

7. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据上下文可知, Delaney Kirk 认为 “学生行为粗鲁不是他们的过错, 而是老师们应受到责备”。instead of 后接名词或代词, instead 可单独用于句首, 说明一种相反的情况。

8. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 该空要填的单词在从句中作主语, 只有 C 项能在从句中作主语。

9. 【答案】B. 【解析】: say to oneself 意为 “自言自语地说”, 故用主语 I 的反身代词 myself。

10. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由上下文可知, 此句应该为 “你正在 (给学生) 上课”。

11. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由上文可知, 这里应该是指帮助他们养成良好的 “习惯”。

12. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意为: “他们迟早会为已经浪费的时间感到懊悔。”

13. 【答案】A. 【解析】: “列出一个清单” 为 make a list。

14. 【答案】B. 【解析】: the important of ..., “……的重要性”。

15. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据上文可知, 此处 Mrs. Kirk 的建议应该为告诉学生如何恰当地使用手机与 MP3。修饰动词 use 应用副词 properly。

24

【文章大意】这篇文章讲述的是一个学生怀念老师的故事。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 根据 “..., and do I” 可知是一般现在时, 再从句意看, C 项最合适。

2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 根据句意 “我情不自禁地想起她是怎么帮我”。

3. 【答案】B. 【解析】: happen 为不及物动词, 不能用于被动语态, 所以排除 A 和 C 项。根据从句时态, 所以用一般过去时。

4. 【答案】B. 【解析】: pay no attention to “没注意”。

5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 否定句中用 anything。

6. 【答案】C. 【解析】: With these words “说了这番话”。
7. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 特指的第二天。
8. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 过去分词作状语, 描述我当时的情况。
9. 【答案】A. 【解析】: burst 的过去式、过去分词不能加 ed, 应为 burst, burst. burst out laughing “不禁大笑, 突然笑起来”。
10. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 现在分词作状语, my heart 为动作的执行者。
11. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 现在分词作状语, 主句中 she 是动作的执行者。
12. 【答案】B. 【解析】: in class 固定短语 “在课堂上”。
13. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 本句是倒装句, 没有比较的含义。
14. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据句意和固定句型 “It is adj + to do sth” 做某事怎么样。
15. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 根据句意可知。

25

【文章大意】本文描述的是一个侦探跟错侦破对象的故事。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: look around 环顾四周。
2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 本句意为 “我的记忆力很好, 见了面就不会忘的”。
3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 那人面前摊开着一份报纸。
4. 【答案】D. 【解析】: keep an eye on me 瞅着我。
5. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 从上下文可知, 显然他被迷惑了。
6. 【答案】C. 【解析】: as time went on 随着时间的过去。
7. 【答案】C. 【解析】: well known in the restaurant 在这家饭店很熟悉。
8. 【答案】A. 【解析】: paid for his meal 付了账。
9. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 问店主那个人想要什么。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: be surprised 惊奇。
11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: be interested in..., 对……感兴趣。
12. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 因为他原以为你是他要寻找的人。
13. 【答案】B. 【解析】: a photo of the man he wanted 他想要找的那个人的一张照片。
14. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 注意 since 在这里的用法。
15. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 我来到一家熟悉的餐馆真是幸运。

26

【文章大意】本文谈的是一位母亲和一位儿子的故事。“儿子总是自己的好。”

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 句意为她非常爱儿子。
2. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 他的一切都是对的。
3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 注意关键词 papers。
4. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 依据句意及下文可知, 另需注意前面的 “a few”。
5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: in his first week 在第一周里。
6. 【答案】A. 【解析】: become a bus conductor 成为一名公交车售票员。
7. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 一位乘客偷走了他装车费的包。
8. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 从其后的 sent off all the letters 可推测出答案。
9. 【答案】D. 【解析】: take sth to someplace 把某物带到某地。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: join the army 参军。

11. 【答案】C. 【解析】: all her neighbours 所有的邻居。
12. 【答案】B. 【解析】: “人群”，其他三个答案均不符合句意。
13. 【答案】B. 【解析】: can't help doing sth 情不自禁地干某事；laugh at sb 嘲笑某人。
14. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 从句意可看出 Ella Fant 心里非常高兴。
15. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 从整体中除去，介词应是 except。

27

【文章大意】本文介绍了词典的相关知识。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 此句意为“一本好词典不仅告诉你词的含义并且告诉你词的用法”。
2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 语言在发展，一本好字典应展示这些变化。
3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 从句意可知。
4. 【答案】B. 【解析】: or 表示两者间的选择。
5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: a few 表示有一些，修饰后面的可数名词 people。
6. 【答案】D. 【解析】: either...or 固定短语。
7. 【答案】A. 【解析】: every 强调每一个，并且只能选 A，后面跟单数名词。
8. 【答案】C. 【解析】: “查阅”为 look up，代词 it 作宾语时应放在 look 与 up 中间。
9. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 用排除法排除其他选项。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: what does...mean? 为固定句型。
11. 【答案】C. 【解析】: others 泛指其余的。
12. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 这部分解释了如何使用词典。
13. 【答案】A. 【解析】: hundred 前面没有具体数目修饰，应该用 hundreds of 表示“成百上千”。
14. 【答案】D. 【解析】: build 建造。
15. 【答案】C. 【解析】: so that 以便于，引导目的状语从句。

28

【文章大意】文章简述了纸的发明，纸的制作原料以及为什么要节约用纸，如何节约用纸等内容。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C. 【解析】: During his stay in China “在他呆在中国期间”。
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由上文“他看见了许多奇妙的东西”推知。
3. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 从下文可知。A. 发现，B. 看见，C. 寻找，D. 发明。
4. 【答案】C. 【解析】: make...into, “把……制成……”。
5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由前两句推知。前两句说，“至今纸仍来自于树”，“我们每天要用大量的纸”。
6. 【答案】A. 【解析】: throw away “扔掉”。
7. 【答案】D. 【解析】: It takes sth to do sth. “花费……来做某事”
8. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由前半句可知，fewer 也表示更少，但用于修饰可数名词。
9. 【答案】B. 【解析】: take the place of “代替”。固定短语。
10. 【答案】B. 【解析】: cover 是“正面、封面”的意思，故不选。
11. 【答案】A. 【解析】: drinks in bottles “瓶装饮料”。
12. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由下一句推知。A. 丝绸；B. 布；C. 纸；D. 塑料。
13. 【答案】B. 【解析】: go shopping 去购物。
14. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 见下题。
15. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 此两题均从上下文推知。此两句意思分别为“人人都会节约用纸”，“如果我们认真想一想，都能做有助于保护树木的事”。

29

【文章大意】本篇讲述的是一位乐于工作，并尽量使每位乘客也感到高兴、快乐的公交汽车司机 Sam 的故事。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】D。【解析】：在拥挤的街道上开着大公交车是件辛苦的工作。
2. 【答案】D。【解析】：辛苦、艰难的工作使得其他司机感到不高兴。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】：从前两句可知。
4. 【答案】A。【解析】：从后面的几句可知这里应为“one morning”一天早晨。
5. 【答案】C。【解析】：the day's work 那天的工作。
6. 【答案】A。【解析】：在车站等候。
7. 【答案】B。【解析】：with a smile 带着微笑。
8. 【答案】B。【解析】：look out of the window 看着窗外。
9. 【答案】D。【解析】：at the next stop 在下一站。
10. 【答案】A。【解析】：从前后句可知。另外，下文也有提示。
11. 【答案】C。【解析】：won't have to run again 将不必再跑。
12. 【答案】C。【解析】：强调用法。
13. 【答案】B。【解析】：注意句中的关键词 again。
14. 【答案】A。【解析】：从句意看，不可能是其他选项。
15. 【答案】D。【解析】：所选词应能做定语，同时其后的 people 又是复数名词。

30

【文章大意】本文简要介绍了目前计算机能做些什么。

【答案及解析】

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：put into the computer's memory “把……放入电脑存储器”。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：警察随时都可看电脑的信息。
3. 【答案】A。【解析】：此句意为“一个人能在两分钟内做完一个容易的计算”。
4. 【答案】C。【解析】：与上句人类的运算速度相比较，表转折。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】：在学校有电脑（教室）。
6. 【答案】A。【解析】：A、B 项均可表示用，但 A 后跟手段、工具等，B 接语言、文字、声音、写或画的材料，故选 A。
7. 【答案】B。【解析】：screens 显示器。
8. 【答案】C。【解析】：前面有否定词 not。
9. 【答案】A。【解析】：check 检查与其后的 test 测试正合逻辑。
10. 【答案】B。【解析】：destroy 毁坏、摧毁。
11. 【答案】A。【解析】：cost 常用物作主语，take 常用此句型：It takes sb some times to do sth, spend 句子的主语一般是人。
12. 【答案】B。【解析】：draw pictures “画画”。
13. 【答案】D。【解析】：in the future “在未来”。固定短语。
14. 【答案】C。【解析】：表选择。
15. 【答案】B。【解析】：动词后要用宾格。

第三单元 阅读理解

高考阅读理解题一般分为五种类型，每种类型的题目都有相应的解题技巧，掌握了这些技巧对考生做阅读理解题有着事半功倍的效果，现将各种题型解题技巧总结如下：

一、主旨题

1. 问题的形式：

- (1) The writer's purpose of writing this passage is _____.
- (2) In this passage the writer tries to tell us that _____.
- (3) The main idea of the passage is _____.
- (4) This passage mainly tells us about?
- (5) What's the topic of the article?
- (6) What is the best title for the passage _____.

2. 做题技巧：

这种题型要求学生能够把握文章主题，理解中心思想，分析归纳文章的段落大意或给出标题等，难度比较大，属于高层次题型。

一篇文章（或一段文章）都是围绕一个中心意思展开的。能概括文章或段落中心意思的句子叫作主题句，主题句在段落开始的情况较为普遍，有时主题句位于段末，往往是对前面细节的总结和归纳。因为考生需要读完全文才能把握文章主题，所以在解答此类题时，考生不要急于去找答案，不论它出现在什么位置，都把它作为最后一道题来做。做完另外几道题，无疑会有助于学生加深对整个文章的理解。

Jack Brown, an office worker, lives in Washington. He inherited (继承) a million dollars when he was 23, but he wasn't happy at all. When his college friends were looking for their jobs, he didn't have to. Jack decided to living a simple life like everyone else. He gave \$10,000 of his money to a charity (慈善机构) to help poor children live a better life. Today he is 36. He still wears cheap shoes and clothes and drives a small car only, but he is very happy.

Up to now Jack has helped some children from poor countries all over the world, by sending them each \$200 a month. The money was used for the children's study, food, medicine and clothing. Jack receives a report each year on the children's progress (进步). They can write to each other. but usually the children do not speak English.

When Jack first heard about these children, he wanted to help them. —“I was nothing special,” he said. —“Until I went to these countries and met the children I was helping, I didn't know anything about their life.” Once Jack went to meet a little girl in Africa. He said that the meeting was very

exciting. —~~When~~ I met her. I felt very, very happy.” he said. —And I saw that the money was used for a good cause. It brought me happiness. I want to do everything I can to go on helping those children.”

What's the main idea of the story? _____

- A. Help others, and you will feel happy.
- B. It's necessary to write letters to poor children.
- C. Live a simple life, and you can give others help.
- D. It's the most important to help the children in Africa.

解析：这是一篇主旨题，要求把握文章主题，理解文章的中心思想。本文主要叙述 Jack Brown 在继承了一笔财产之后，帮助了很多，从而自己也获得了快乐。故选 A。

二、细节题

1. 问题的形式：

- (1) Which of the following is NOT true according to the information in the passage?
- (2) Which of the following statements is correct according to the passage?
- (3) According to the passage, when (where, why, how, who, etc.) ...
- (4) From the passage we know that _____.
- (5) In the passage, the author states that _____.
- (6) Which of the following is true except...?
- (7) Which of the following is true?
- (8) Which of the following is not mention?
- (9) Which of the following is mentioned except....?

2. 做题技巧：

细节理解题就是我们常见的 wh-题，它们大多是根据文章中的具体信息如事实、例证、原因、过程、论述等进行提问的。有些问题可以在文章中直接找到答案，有些则要我们在理解的基础上将有关内容系统化之后才能找到。做此类题的方法一般是先用寻读法找出与问题相关的词语或句子，再对相关的部分进行细读，找出正确答案。

这种问题的正确选项所包含的信息通常连续出现在同一段，而且往往无列举标志词，如 first, second, third 等。做题时只需阅读有关段落，根据一个选项中的关键词在其前后找其他两个正确选项，剩下一个原文中未提到的，为正确答案。

The Artist and the Beggar

An artist was coming home by train one day. He hadn't much money but was very kind. He gave his last few coins(2) to a beggar, but he saw another one, and forgot that he didn't have any money in his pockets. He asked the man if he liked to have lunch with him, and the beggar, of course, agreed. So they went into a small restaurant and had a good meal.

In the end, the artist could not pay the bill(3), and the beggar had to do so. The artist felt very sorry for it, so he said to the beggar, —Come home with me in a taxi, my friend. And I'll give you the money for our lunch.”

—“Oh, no!” the beggar answered quickly. “I had to pay for your lunch, but I’m not going to pay for your taxi home!”

Notes: (1) beggar/beg/ n. 乞丐 (2) coin/kin/n. 硬币 (3) bill/bil/n. 账单

Which of the following is NOT true according to the information in the passage?

- A. The artist is a kind man.
- B. He gave his last few coins to the first beggar.
- C. He forgot that he had no money then.
- D. The beggar paid for the Taxi.

解析: 这是一道细节理解题, 要求核对每一项信息。由 “I had to pay for your lunch, but I’m not going to pay for your taxi home!” 可知, 没有为他付 “打的” 费。故 D 选项正确。

三、观点态度题

1. 问题的形式:

- (1) In the author’s opinion, _____
- (2) What is the opinion of the writer in this passage?
- (3) What’s the purpose of writing the passage?
- (4) What is the mood of the passage?
- (5) The author’s attitude towards...might be summarized as (seems to be) _____

2. 做题技巧:

这类题考查对文章中观点、感情、态度、目的、意图的理解。做题时要从文章的用词、语气、或对某个细节的陈述来推断作者的态度、观点等。

(1) 不要把自己的态度揉入其中, 还要区分作者的态度还是作者引入别人的态度。

(2) 当作者的态度没有明确提出时, 要学会根据作者的语言的褒贬去判断作者的态度, 如: wonderfully, successfully, doubtfully 等

(3) 作者的态度一般与文章主旨有很大的关系。

(4) 作者对某事支持还是反对, 态度一般都很明确, 而带中立色彩的词最不可能是正确答案, 表示 “客观” 的词多为正确选项, 如 objective (客观的), impartial (公平的), unbiased (无偏见的) 等。还有, 既然作者写了文章, 他的态度就不可能是漠不关心的, 因此 uninterested 等词往往可以排除。

When I was growing up in America, I was ashamed of my mother’s Chinese English. Because of her English, she was often treated unfairly. People in department stores, at banks, and at restaurants did not take her seriously, did not give her good service, pretended not to understand her, or even acted as if they did not hear her.

Q: Why was the author’s mother poorly served?

- A. She was unable to speak good English.
- B. She was often misunderstood.
- C. She was not clearly heard.
- D. She was not very polite.

解析: 通过文章的细节, 如 Chinese English... Because of her English, she was often treated unfairly...等, 我们可以推断出作者的观点态度。应该选 A。

四、推理判断题

1. 问题的形式:

- (1) We can infer (推断) from the text that _____
- (2) The author seems to suggest (暗示) that _____
- (3) It is implied (暗示) in the passage that _____
- (4) It can be inferred from the passage that _____
- (5) It can be concluded (得出结论) from the passage that _____

2. 做题技巧:

既理解某句, 某段的意义, 也理解全篇的逻辑关系, 并据此进行推理和判断, 就是推理判断题。此题型要求在理解原文表面文字信息的基础上, 做出一定判断和推论, 从而得到文章隐含的深层意义。推理要以文章所提供的事实为依据, 不能凭空想象, 这样才能做出正确的判断。此类试题属于深层理解题, 要求考生具备必要的逻辑常识和生活常识。针对推理题的不同形式, 可以采取以下做法:

(1) 假如题干中有具体线索, 根据具体线索找到原文相关句(一句或几句话), 然后做出推理;

(2) 假如题干中无线索, 先看一下4个备选项, 排除不太可能的选项, 然后根据最有可能的选项中的关键词找到原文相关句, 做出推理;

(3) 如果一篇文章中其他题都未涉及文章主旨, 那么推理题可能与文章主旨有关, 考生应该定位到文章主题所在位置(如主题句出现处), 假如其他题已经涉及文章主旨, 那么要求推断出来的内容可能与段落主题有关, 则应该找段落主题所在处; 如果与段落主题无关, 有时与全文段落的重要结论有关, 这时可以寻找与这些结论相关的原文叙述。

(4) 在选择答案时, 若选项大同小异, 模棱两可, 应根据题意要求, 选择最切合原文内容的一个。

(5) 推理判断必须以事实为据, 利用相关部分提供的背景知识、正确的思维过程和严密的逻辑性进行推断。切忌脱离原文, 凭空臆断。

训练题:

It was a very hot day, and there were no trees along the street. Mr. Smith closed his shop earlier than usual for a very important appointment. He went out into the street and began walking to the bus stop. He was very fat. The sun was shining brightly down the street, soon he was sweating all over (浑身是汗).

A small boy came out of another shop in the street and followed Mr. Smith. He stayed very near him all the time, and he kicked (踢) Mr. Smith's shoes for several times. Mr. Smith looked at him angrily each time.

After the fourth time, Mr. Smith stopped, turned round and said to the small boy, "What are you doing? Stopping following me like that! You're going to hurt my feet."

"I'm sorry, but don't stop me, please!" the small boy said, "It's very hot today and there isn't any other shade in the street!"

We can infer from the text that the story would most probably happen in _____.

A. spring B. summer C. winter D. autumn

解析：我们从 “The sun was shining brightly down the street, soon he was sweating all over (浑身是汗).” “太阳直射在地面上, 不一会他的浑身就湿透了。” “It very hot today and there isn’t any other shade in the street!” “今天的天气很热, 街上没有任何的阴凉。” 由这两句可以推断出是夏天, 故选 B 项。

五、猜问题

1. 问题的形式:

(1) The word “ ” in the paragraph means .

(2) The underlined word means .

(3) What does the underlined word probably mean?

2. 做题技巧:

阅读理解中不可避免会遇到一些生词 (有些是熟词生义), 疑难语句, 有时问题中也会出现。遇到这些问题, 我们可用下面几种方法解决:

技巧 1: 根据同义词或反义词来判断

如: Tom is lazy but his brother is industrious.

该句中 but 表示转折, 就暗示了 lazy 和 industrious 是一对反义词, 由此可知 industrious 意为 “刻苦的、勤奋的”。

技巧 2: 根据定义和释义来推测

如: She is studying glaucoma, a kind of disease on the eyes.

我们可能猜不出 glaucoma 的确切词义, 但通过后面的解释可知道 glaucoma (青光眼) 是一种眼睛疾病。

技巧 3: 根据常识来推测

如: Water usually boils at 100 centigrade.

众所周知, 水的沸点是 100 摄氏度, 由此不难判断出 centigrade 的意思是 “摄氏度”。

技巧 4: 运用构词法进行猜测

如: The colors of Hawaii in summer are unforgettable.

forget 意为 “忘记”, un 为否定前缀, 因此 unforgettable 就是 “令人难忘” 之意。

训练题:

A good teacher works in quite a different way. His audience take an active part in his play: they ask and answer questions, they obey orders, and if they don’t understand something, they say so.

The word “audience” in the paragraph means .

A. students B. people who watch a play
C. people who act on the stage D. people who listen to something

答案: A. 解题关键: 常识 teacher—student.

训练题:

Ted lives in a big city. Today he’s very happy. It’s the first day of school. Ted go back to

school. He wants to see his friends. He is going to meet his new teachers.

Ted gets up early in the morning. He washes and puts on his new clothes. Look! He is having breakfast with his parents. Now, he is ready for school.

He goes to school by bike. He meets his friends outside the school gate. They are talking about something. Then the bell (铃声) rings (铃响). Everyone runs to his or her classroom.

1. Where does Ted live? _____
A. He lives in a small house.
B. He lives in a big city.
C. He lives on a farm.
2. Does Ted want to go back to school? _____
A. No, he doesn't B. Yes, he wants. C. Yes, he does.
3. Who does he want to see? _____
A. His friends B. His brother C. His father
4. Who is he having breakfast with? _____
A. His father B. His brother C. His parents
5. How does Ted go to school? _____
A. He goes to school by bus.
B. He goes to school by bike.
C. He goes to school on foot. (步行)

2

Mrs. Black lives in a small village. Her husband is dead. Her son, Jack, lived with her. He worked in a shop in the village, but then he found a job in town named Greensea. He went to live there. Mrs. Black was very angry. She got on a train and went to see her son. Then she said to him, —~~ack~~, why do you never telephone me”

Jack laughed, —~~But~~, mother, you haven't got a telephone. ” —~~No~~,”she answered, —haven't, but you have got one. ”

1. The old Black _____.
A. is dead B. lives with his wife
C. went to a small village D. worked in a shop
2. Jack lived with his mother _____ he worked in the village.
A. before B. when C. after D. so
3. Greensea is _____.
A. a big city B. a small village C. a town D. a man's name
4. Jack didn't phone his mother because _____.
A. he had no phone B. he was very busy
C. his mother had no phone D. he went home every day
5. Jack's mother was very angry because _____.
A. Jack didn't want to ring her up

- B. Jack had a telephone but she hadn't
- C. she didn't know how to make a telephone
- D. she didn't know she couldn't be called

3

Susan, the US

My best friend is Fanny. She is clever and interesting. We always look after each other. The first week we met, I got sick and she looked after me every day.

Betty, England

My best friend is Ana. She is honest and serious. We were born in the same city in England. Then I moved to America with my family. I thought I would never see Ana again. When I went to college in New York, Ana and I shared the same room!

Ken, Japan

I love to spend time with Daisuke because he is funny and smart. We enjoy talking about the funny things we did when we were children, and tell the same stupid jokes over and over again.

Lily, Australia

Linda is a very confident girl and she is really kind. Some people may wonder why Linda and I are best friends because we are totally different, but I think this is why we are such good friends.

1. Who is Susan's best friend? _____
 A. Ana. B. Fanny. C. Linda. D. Daisuke.
2. Where is Ken from? _____
 A. Australia. B. The US. C. England. D. Japan.
3. What is Linda like? _____
 A. Confident and kind. B. Funny and smart.
 C. Honest and serious. D. Clever and interesting.

4

Coffee has become the most popular American drink. Today people in the United States drink more coffee than people in any of the other countries. People drink coffee at breakfast, at lunch, at dinner and between meals. They drink hot coffee or coffee with ice in it. They drink it at work and at home. They eat coffee ice-cream and coffee candy. Coffee is black and very strong. Different people like to drink it in different ways. Some people like coffee with cream or sugar in it. Other people like coffee with both cream and sugar in it. In all ways it is served. Coffee has become an international drink.

1. Coffee is an _____ drink.

- A. interesting B. international C. ice-cream D. American
2. Different people like to drink coffee _____.
A. at work or at home B. in different ways
C. with cream or sugar D. between meals
3. Today Americans drink _____ coffee than people in any of the other countries.
A. as much as B. less C. more D. most
4. “Coffee is black and very strong.” The word STRONG here means _____.
A. 坚固的 B. 淡的 C. 清的 D. 浓的
5. _____ is the most popular American drink.
A. Black tea B. Coffee C. Water with ice D. Whisky

5

On Christmas Eve—the night before Christmas Day—children all over Britain put a stocking at the end of their beds before they go to sleep. Their parents usually tell them that Father Christmas will come during the night.

Father Christmas is very kind and hearted. He gets to the top of each house and climbs down the chimney into the fireplace. He fills each of the stockings with Christmas presents.

Of course, Father Christmas isn't real. In Jim and Kate's house, “Father Christmas” is really Mr. Green. Mr. Green doesn't climb down the chimney. He waits until the children are asleep. Then he quietly goes into their bedrooms and fills their stockings with small presents. When they were very young, Mr. Green sometimes wore a red coat. But he doesn't do that now. The children are no longer young, and they know who “Father Christmas” really is. But they still put their stockings at the end of their beds.

1. Christmas Eve is _____.
A. the night of Christmas Day B. the evening of Christmas Day
C. Christmas Day D. the night before Christmas Day
2. Father Christmas often puts presents _____.
A. into children's hats B. into children's stockings
C. under children's beds D. into children's shoes
3. When the children were very young, _____.
A. they didn't know who Father Christmas was
B. they knew that Father Christmas wasn't real
C. they thought their father was Father Christmas
D. they knew who put the presents into their stockings
4. When the children are older, they _____.
A. know that Father Christmas is real
B. ask their mother to fill their stockings with presents
C. know that Father Christmas is really their father
D. know that Father Christmas is really their friend

5. Father Christmas comes into the house through the _____.

- A. chimney B. back door C. front door D. window

6

The Weather

In winter the weather in England is often very cold. In spring and autumn there are sometimes cold days, but there are also days when the weather is warm. The weather is usually warm in summer. It is sometimes hot in summer, but it is not often very hot. There are often cool days in summer.

When the temperature is over 27°C, English people say it is hot. When the temperature is about 21°C, they say it is warm.

In the north of Europe it is very cold in winter. In the south of Europe the summer is often very hot. In the south of Spain[1] and in North Africa[2] the summer is always hot.

Water freezes[3] at 0°C. When water freezes, it changes from a liquid[4] into ice. Water boils[5] at 100°C. When water boils, it changes from a liquid into steam[6].

Notes: [1]Spain/speɪn/n. 西班牙 [2]Africa/'fɪkɪə/n. 非洲 [3]freeze/'friːz/v. 结冰

[4]liquid/'lɪkwɪd/n. 液体 [5]boil/bɪl/v. 沸腾; (水) 开 [6]steam/stiːm/n. 蒸汽

1. What is the weather like in summer in England? _____

- A. Hot B. Warm C. Cool D. A, B and C

2. What do you think "the north of Europe" means? _____

- A. A part of a country. B. The capital of Europe.
C. A country in the north of Europe. D. A part of Europe.

3. When water freezes, it changes from _____ into _____.

- A. water, ice B. water, steam C. steam, ice D. ice, water

4. The writer wants to tell us something about _____.

- A. the weather in Europe B. the weather in England
C. some knowledge of the temperature D. three states of water

7

A Trip to the Forest

One day Bob took two of his friends into the mountains. They put up their tents (帐篷) and then rode off to a forest to see how the trees were growing.

In the afternoon when they were about ten kilometers from their camp (营地), it started to snow. More and more snow fell. Soon Bob could hardly see his hands before his face. He could not find the road. Bob knew there were two roads. One road went to the camp, and the other went to his house. But all was white snow. Everything was the same. How could he take his friends back to the camp?

Bob had an idea. The horses! Let the horses take them back! But what would happen if the

- A. Eight hours. B. Nine hours. C. Ten hours. D. Eleven hours.
5. What do our lungs need most?
- A. Fresh air. B. Cold air. C. Warm air. D. Exercises.

9

To save time, many Americans buy foods which can be quickly made ready for the table. On holidays, families enjoy delicious meals. For example, on Thanksgiving Day, the fourth Thursday in November, family members get together for a turkey dinner with pumpkin pie (南瓜派).

The United States is known around the world for its fast food, such as hamburgers, sandwiches, pizzas, salad bars, and many kinds of ice cream. People can easily find fast food chains (连锁店), such as McDonald's and KFC, in most of the big cities in the world.

These years, many people have taken more and more care of their health while eating. They come to know eating too much meat will make them overweight. Many of them are also worried about food additives (添加剂). Some of them may be harmful to the body.

- Many Americans buy _____ to save time.
A. ready-made food B. food to cook at home
C. inexpensive food D. foreign food
- Thanksgiving Day is on _____.
A. November 4th B. Every the 4th Tuesday in November
C. the fourth Thursday in November D. Every November the fourth
- Pizza is a kind of _____ food.
A. take-away B. home-cooking C. fast D. Chinese
- What does the word 'overweight' mean? It means _____.
A. thinner B. fatter C. worse D. better
- People are worried about all the following, except _____.
A. overweight B. their health C. food additives D. fast food

10

A farmer was put in prison (监狱). One day, he got a letter from his wife. "I am worried about our farm," she wrote, "It's time to plant potatoes, but I can't do all the digging (挖) by myself." The farmer thought over and then had an idea. He wrote to his wife, "Don't dig the fields. This is the place where my gold (金子) is. Don't plant potatoes until I come home. A few days later, the farmer got another letter from his wife. It said, "Two days ago, about ten prison guards (监狱看守) came to our fields. It looked as if they were looking for something. They have dug our field." The farmer wrote to his wife at once. "Now you can plant our potatoes," he wrote.

- The farmer was put in prison, _____.
A. because he had done something wrong
B. because he had a lot of gold in the fields
C. the writer didn't say anything about why the farmer was put in prison

- D. for nothing
2. The farmer's wife was much worried about _____.
A. her husband B. their farm C. planting potatoes D. herself
3. The farmer told his wife _____ first.
A. not to dig the fields B. to dig the fields
C. to ask the prison guards for help D. to find the gold in the fields
4. Why did the prison guards dig the farmer's fields? _____.
A. They wanted to help the farmer B. Their leader ordered them to do so
C. The farmer asked them to do so D. They wanted to find out the gold
5. Why did the farmer ask his wife to plant potatoes at once? Because _____.
A. their fields had been dug
B. the gold was found out
C. the prison guards asked him to do so
D. the prison guards were digging the fields

11

A science book gives facts. Some science books tell us about animals. Some tell us about plants. Some tell us about outer space. This page tells us about animals.

Do you know that not only the fish but also some animals live in the sea? For example, the whale is not a fish. It can't breathe in the water. It swims in the water. But it comes up for air.

The blue whale is the world's biggest animal. There are other sea animals, too. One is called the dolphin. Dolphins need air to live. They breathe air, as whales do. Dolphins are very clever. They sometimes seem to speak to each other.

Many other animals live near the sea. Seals (海豹) and otters (水獭) love the sea. They swim and play there. They eat fish and sea plants. Seals and otters have thick fur. The fur keeps them warm.

1. The passage mainly tells us about _____.
A. fishes B. plants C. science D. sea animals
2. The blue whales live in the sea. They breathe air as _____ do.
A. dolphins B. fish C. crocodiles D. sea plants
3. Which of the sentences below is NOT true? _____.
A. The whale can swim in the sea like a fish.
B. The whale can breathe in the sea like a fish.
C. Both whales and dolphins are sea animals.
D. Seals and otters like living near the sea.
4. What food do seals and otters like eating? _____.
A. Meat. B. Fruits.
C. Both fish and sea plants. D. Leaves.
5. Some sea animals can keep themselves warm because _____.

- A. they are big animals B. they like playing in the sea
C. they have thick fur D. they eat enough food every day

12

Long, long ago there was a very foolish thief. Do you know what he did one day? When he wanted to steal (偷) the bell on his neighbor's door, he walked up to the door, took hold of (抓住) the bell and pulled hard. The bell made a very loud noise. The thief was afraid and went home. Then he sat down to think, —“I must do something about the noise,” he said. He thought and thought. At last he had an idea. —“A, I'll put some cotton in my ears. Then I won't be able to hear the noise.” The next day he went to the door of his neighbor, and took hold of the bell. This time he pulled even harder. The bell rang loudly, but the thief did not hear anything. With another hard pull he got the bell out. Just then the neighbor came running out. —“What my bell? I'll teach you a lesson (教训),” the angry man shouted. And he hit the thief on the nose. The foolish thief did not know how the neighbor found out he was stealing the bell. —“Why did he come out just then?” he wondered (感到疑惑).

1. The thief was trying to get _____.
A. his neighbor B. his neighbor's doorbell
C. some cotton D. a door with a bell on it
2. The thief put some cotton in his ears. He thought it would be _____ for him to steal the doorbell.
A. safe B. difficult C. dangerous D. easy
3. The neighbor ran out probably (很可能) because _____.
A. he knew his doorbell was being stolen
B. he thought someone was eager (渴望的) to visit him
C. he realized (意识到) something strange happened
D. Both B and C
4. The neighbor hit the thief to _____.
A. give him lessons B. punish (惩罚) him for stealing
C. help him with the bell D. be his teacher
5. Which of the following is TRUE? _____.
A. The thief understood why he was hit on the nose.
B. The thief knew why the neighbor came out.
C. The thief thought the neighbor couldn't hear the noise the bell made.
D. The thief didn't want to know why the neighbor ran out.

13

Uncle Li and Uncle Wang are good friends. They live next to each other and their farms are both at the foot of the mountain. So they can help each other. But neither of them likes to use his head. They're both poor though they work hard. Most villagers have built new houses, but they still

live in the low and broken houses. They never find out why.

Once Uncle Li went to town to buy some medicine for his wife. In the town he heard the apples in a city were expensive. He told Uncle Wang about it as soon as he went back. They decided to carry some apples to the city. They borrowed some money from their friends and bought nearly 1,000 kilograms of apples in the villages and carried them to the city on a tractor. Bad luck! A lot of apples has already been carried there when they arrived. A few days later they had to sell them at a low price (价格). They felt unhappy and returned to their village.

—“I can’t understand why we sustained (蒙受) losses in business while others always profit (盈利)” Uncle Li asked one day.

—“The tractor was too small”, Uncle Wang said without thinking, —“We’ll carry more apples on a truck next time!”

—“I agree!” said Uncle Li, —“How foolish (傻的) we were!”

- Uncle Li and Uncle Wang live in the low and broken houses because _____.
A. they hope to save money
B. they’re both poor
C. their farms are at the foot of the mountain
D. they’re not far from their farms
- The two farmers carried the apples to the city to _____.
A. make a journey
B. visit some places of interest
C. meet their friends
D. make a profit
- The two farmers had to sell their apples at a low price because _____.
A. theirs weren’t as good as the others’
B. theirs were much less than the others’
C. a lot of apples had been already carried to the city
D. they forgot to carry them on a truck
- Uncle Li and Uncle Wang were unhappy because _____.
A. they had sustained losses in business
B. they had lost some money in the city
C. something was wrong with the tractor
D. other people profited in the city
- Which of the following is true? _____.
A. The two farmers found out why they were poor.
B. The two farmers will soon get rich.
C. Neither of the farmers is clever.
D. The two farmers decided to buy a truck.

Computers are useful machines. They can help people a lot in their everyday life. For example, they can help people save much time, and they can help people work out many problems they can’t

do easily. Our country asks everyone to learn to use computers except the old people. Today more and more families own computers. Parents buy computers for their children. They hope computers can help them improve (提高) their studies in school. Yet many of the children use computers to play games, to watch video or to sing Karaoke, instead of studying. So many teachers and parents complain (抱怨) that computers can not help children to study but make them fall behind. So computers are locked by parents in the boxes. In some other countries, even some scientists hate computers. They say computers let millions of people lose their jobs or bring them a lot of trouble. Will computers really bring trouble to people or can they bring people happiness? It will be decided by people themselves.

1. Why do we say the computer is a useful machine? Because _____.
 A. our country asks us to learn it B. it can help us a lot
 C. we can use it to play games D. it can help us to find jobs
2. What do many teachers and parents complain about? _____.
 A. Their students and children use computers to play games
 B. Computers let them lost their jobs
 C. Computers make the students and children fall behind
 D. Computers bring people a lot of trouble
3. In this passage we know computers _____.
 A. also bring us trouble B. bring us happiness only
 C. are hated by people D. are bad for people's health
4. Can computers really help children to study? _____.
 A. Yes, they can B. It's hard to say C. No, they can't. D. Of course not
5. How do you understand the last sentence of this passage? I think it means _____.
 A. computers are used by people B. people can live well without computers
 C. one must decide how to use computers D. computers are strange machines

15

Now satellites (卫星) are helping to forecast (预报) the weather. They are in space, and they can reach any part of the world. The satellites take pictures of the atmosphere (大气), because this is where the weather forms (形成). They send these pictures to the weather stations. So meteorologists (气象学家) can see the weather of any part of the world. From the pictures, the scientists can often say how the weather will change.

Today, nearly five hundred weather stations in sixty countries receive satellite pictures. When they receive new pictures, the meteorologists compare (比较) them with earlier ones. Perhaps they may find that the clouds have changed during the last few hours. This may mean that the weather on the ground may soon change, too. In their next weather forecast, the meteorologists can say this.

So the weather satellites are a great help to the meteorologists. Before satellites were invented, the scientists could forecast the weather for about 24 or 48 hours. Now they can make good forecasts for three or five days. Soon, perhaps, they may be able to forecast the weather for a week

or more ahead (提前) .

1. Satellites travel _____.
A. in space B. in the atmosphere C. above the ground D. above space
2. Why do we use the weather satellites to take pictures of the atmosphere? Because _____.
A. the weather satellites can do it easily B. clouds form there
C. the weather forms there D. the pictures can forecast the weather
3. Meteorologists forecast the weather _____.
A. when they have received satellite pictures
B. after they have compared new satellite pictures with earlier ones
C. before they received satellite pictures
D. during they study satellite pictures
4. Maybe we'll soon be able to forecast the weather for _____.
A. one day B. two days
C. five days D. seven days or even longer
5. The main (主要的) idea of this passage is that satellites are now used in _____.
A. taking pictures of the atmosphere B. receiving pictures of the atmosphere
C. doing other work in many ways D. weather forecasting

16

Snow fell on the mountain. It snowed and snowed. The snow did not melt (融化) . It became deep and heavy. The snow on the bottom pressed (挤压) together, it became ice. The ice was very wide and thick. It began to move down the mountain. It was like a river of ice. It was a glacier(冰河).

Sometimes the glacier moved only a few inches (英寸) each day. As it moved, it took rocks and dirt with it. It changed the land. In some places, it left hills. In some places, when the glacier melted, it made rivers and lakes.

A million years ago, there were many big glaciers. Glaciers covered many parts of the world. The glaciers changed the land.

Glaciers are still at work today. A glacier in the north of Canada is cutting a new path (路) down the side of a mountain. This glacier will change the land, too.

1. The snow that fell on the mountain _____.
A. became snowman B. melted C. became ice D. turned to rain
2. The story says, —The snow did not melt. It became deep and heavy—. The word —it— means _____.
A. snow B. rain C. wind D. sun
3. Which of the following does this story lead you to believe? _____.
A. There are not as many glaciers as there used to be
B. Glaciers do not change the land as they move over it.
C. Glaciers are found only in warm places.
4. How fast did the glacier move? (Which sentence is exactly like the one in your book?) ____.

- A. Sometimes the glacier moved only once a year.
 - B. Sometimes the glacier moved over ten miles each day.
 - C. Sometimes the glacier moved only a few inches each day.
5. The main idea of the whole story is that _____.
- A. snow is heavy
 - B. the high land never changes
 - C. glaciers changed the land

17

Tom lived by himself a long way from town. He hardly went to town, but one day he went into town to buy a few things. After he bought them, he went into a restaurant and sat down at a table. When he looked around, he saw some old people put glasses on before reading their newspapers. So after lunch he decided to go to a shop to buy himself one pair, too. He walked along the road, and soon found a shop. The man in the shop let him try on a lot of glasses, but Tom always said, —No, I can't read with these.” The man became puzzled(迷惑的), and he said, —Excuse me, but can you read?” —No, of course I can't!” Tom said angrily. —If I could read before, do you think I would come here to buy your glasses?”

1. Tom lived _____.
A. with his family B. near town C. in the country D. in town
2. Tom didn't go to town _____.
A. never B. often C. sometimes D. sometime
3. Why did Tom decide to buy a pair of glasses? _____.
A. Because he thought if he bought them, he could read.
B. Because they were very bright.
C. Because they were cheap.
D. Because he could read newspaper.
4. Tom went to the shop to _____.
A. have a rest B. have dinner C. wear glasses D. buy a pair of glasses

18

Do you know why different animals or pests (昆虫) have their special colours? Colours in them seem to be used mainly to protect themselves. Some birds like eating locusts(蝗虫), but birds cannot easily catch them. Why? It is because locusts change their colours together with the change of the colours of crops (庄稼). When crops are green, locusts look green. But as the harvest (收获) time comes, locusts change to the same brown colour as crops have. Some other pests with different colours from plants are easily found and eaten by others. So they have to hide themselves for lives and appear only at night. If you study the animal life, you'll find the main use of colouring is to protect themselves. Bears, lions and other animals move quietly through forests. They cannot be easily seen by hunters. This is because they have the colours much like the trees. Have you ever found an even more strange act? A kind of fish in the sea can send out a kind of very black liquid

(液体) when it faces danger. While the liquid spreads over (散开), its enemies (敌人) cannot find it. And it immediately swims away. So it has lived up to now though it is not strong at all.

1. From the passage we learn that locusts _____.
 - A. are small animals
 - B. are easily found by birds
 - C. are dangerous to their enemies
 - D. change their colours to protect themselves
2. How can pests with different colours from plants keep out of danger?
 - A. They run away quickly.
 - B. They have the colours much like their enemies.
 - C. They hide themselves by day and appear at night.
 - D. They have to move quietly.
3. Bears and lions can keep safe because _____.
 - A. they have the colours much like the trees
 - B. they move quietly
 - C. they like brown and grey colours
 - D. they live in forests
4. Why can the kind of fish live up to now? _____.
 - A. Because it is very big and strong.
 - B. Because the liquid it sends out can help it escape from its enemies.
 - C. Because the liquid it sends out can kill its enemies.
 - D. Because it swims faster than any other fish.
5. Which is the best title for this passage? _____.
 - A. The Change of Colours for Animals and Pests.
 - B. Colours of Different Animals and pests.
 - C. The Main Use of Colours for Animals and Pests.
 - D. Some Animals and Pests.

19

Li Lei, Beijing

I found the summer vacation was not so interesting as I imagined (想象). It was very hot, so I had to spend most of the time staying at home, watching TV, listening to the radio and playing with my dog. Sometimes, I went to visit my relatives (亲戚).

Gina, New York

I went to the countryside with my family and stayed there for about two weeks. The air there was nice and clean. Every day, we fed the chickens, milked the cows, played with the dogs and went fishing. We enjoyed ourselves very much. We watched to go there again.

Alice, London

My summer vacation was great. I went to Switzerland (瑞士) with my friends and stayed there

for a week. It wasn't very hot there. We went to a climb the Alps (阿尔卑斯山). We felt very tired but excited. We also saw some beautiful lakes, went boating and took many photos.

- Li Lei did NOT _____ during the summer vacation.
A. watch TV B. go fishing C. play with his dog
- Where did Gina spend the summer vacation? _____
A. At home B. In the countryside. C. In Switzerland.
- Alice spent her summer vacation with _____.
A. her friends B her family C. her relatives
- What can we learn from the passage? _____
A. Li Lei didn't enjoy his vacation.
B. It was not very hot in the countryside.
C. Gina went boating during her vacation.
- What is the passage mainly about? _____
A. Activities you can do on vacation.
B. Trips to different countries.
C. Three people's summer vacations.

20

Five years ago, I met her in a shopping center. I was walking through the shop when I saw her. Then she came back to my house with me. After that, we became friends.

Once she had to go into hospital to have an operation (手术) on her leg. I was worried about her and looked after her every day. I made breakfast for her. I was not good at cooking, but she never complained (抱怨). I also helped her take showers.

I have no idea why we can be good friends, because she is quite different from me. I like writing, reading and playing computer games. But she loves outdoor activities. She likes playing balls best. She also loves sleeping.

She will run all around the house to lick (舔) my face if someone shouts "Kiss for Dad". That is the only name she knows me by—Dad, though I call her by many names—Pickle, Missile and Little. But her real name is Pixar. This week she turns seven years old.

- Where did the writer met Pixar?
A. On the street. B. In a hospital. C. In a shopping center.
- Pixar was _____ years old when the writer met her.
A. two B. five C. seven
- What does the writer like doing? _____
①Reading ②Playing balls ③Sleeping
④Playing computer games ⑤Writing
A. ①②④ B. ②③⑤ C. ①④⑤
- What can we learn from the passage? _____
A. Pixar once had an operation on her head.

- B. Pixar doesn't like playing outside.
 C. Pixar is the writer's dog.
5. What's the best title for the passage? _____
 A. How to Make Friends B. My Good Friend C. How to Be a Good Friend

21

I'm Mike. I am a student. In my teachers' eyes, I am not a very good student, because I don't study hard at my lessons and I am sometimes late for school.

Last Wednesday, I was late for school. My teacher was a little angry. —“Come to school on time tomorrow, or I will telephone your father,” said my math teacher. I was afraid. So I got up early the next morning. After a quick breakfast, I rode my bike to school. Soon I was riding across a bridge. Just at that time, I heard somebody shouting for help. I stopped and found a little girl struggling in the river. I got off my bike, jumped into the river and swam to the girl as quickly as I could. I tried my best to push the girl to the bank. At last the girl was saved. When I got to the classroom, the class had been on for 15 minutes. My teacher criticized (批评) me.

Till now, I haven't told my math teacher why I was late that morning. But I didn't regret (后悔) it at all.

- Why don't Mike's teachers like him? _____
 A. Mike is often late for school.
 B. Mike doesn't study hard at his lessons.
 C. Mike often saves the children falling into the river.
- How did Mike go to school last Thursday? _____
 A. On foot B. by bike C. by bus
- What's the Chinese meaning of the word “struggling” in the text? _____
 A. 挣扎 B. 嬉戏 C. 潜水
- Why did Mike come to school late again on Thursday morning? _____
 A. He got up late in the morning.
 B. He saved a girl on his way to school.
 C. His bike was broken on the way to school.
- What's the best title of the text? _____
 A. A brave student B. A cruel (残忍的) teacher C. A misunderstanding (误会)

22

Zhang Lin works in a large travel agency in Beijing. English is her foreign language. Now she is talking about her job. —“I was born and brought up in Beijing and I'm very happy to work here. I like this job because I'm interested in travel. On the whole, this agency deals with many foreign customers. Some of them are from Europe and America. Most of them are businessmen. They book flights. They book hotel rooms. And sometimes they change their bookings. My job is to make all these arrangements. Of course, English is important. I use it all the time. I like my job not

because the pay is high, but because I can meet all kinds of interesting people.”

1. Zhang Lin works ____ in Beijing.
A. in a travel agency B. in a large company
C. in a small agency D. in a small company
2. Zhang Lin's grown up in _____.
A. China B. a foreign country C. Europe D. America
3. Zhang Lin's job is all the following except _____.
A. teaching English B. booking hotel rooms
C. changing bookings D. booking flights

23

Every year there is a Spring Festival in China. Usually it is in January or February. It is the most important festival in China. So before it comes, everyone has to prepare things. They buy pork, beef, chicken, fruits and many other things. And they often make a special kind of food—“dumplings”. It means “come together”. On the day before the festival, parents buy new clothes for their children. Children also buy presents for their parents. On the Spring Festival Eve (除夕) all the family members come back to their hometown. This is a happy moment. Some sing and dance, some play cards and others get the dinner ready. When they enjoy the meal, they give each other the best wishes for the coming year. They all have a good time.

1. Which is the most important festival in China? _____.
A. The Mid-Autumn Festival. B. The Spring Festival. C. Children's Day.
2. When is the Chinese Spring Festival usually celebrated?
A. In March or April. B. In May or June. C. In January or February.
3. _____ is the special kind of food for the Spring Festival in China.
A. Chicken B. Dumpling C. Fish
4. What's the meaning of the food “dumplings” for Chinese people in the Spring Festival?
A. Look up. B. Help yourself. C. Come together.
5. The family _____ when they are having dinner together on the Spring Festival Eve.
A. give each other the best wishes
B. buy each other presents
C. sing, dance and play cards

24

In 1620, about half the USA was covered by forests. Today the forests have almost gone. A lot of good land has gone with them, leaving only sand. China doesn't want to copy the USA's example. We're planting more and more trees. We've built the “Great Green Wall” of trees across northern part of our country. The Great Green Wall is 7,000 kilometers long, and between 400 and 1,700 kilometers wide. It will stop the wind from blowing the earth away. It will stop the sand from moving towards the rich farmland in the south. More “Great Green Walls” are needed. Trees must

be grown all over the world. Great Green Walls will make the world better.

- In 1620, about _____ the USA was covered by forests.
A. a third B. half C. two thirds D. a fourth
- A lot of good land has gone with _____.
A. sand B. water C. wind D. forests
- The Great Green Wall in China is _____ long.
A. 7,000 kilometers B. 1,700 kilometers
C. 7,000 meters D. 400 kilometers
- Trees must be grown in _____.
A. China B. the USA C. some countries D. every part of the world
- _____ will make the world better.
A. The Great Wall B. Tall buildings
C. Great Green Walls D. Flowers and grass

25

The Water World Swimming Pool is open every day from eight o'clock in the morning until half past seven in the evening. It costs two dollars sixty to enter the pool. There is a special cheap price for students with a student card. The price is one dollar forty. But you must bring your student card with you.

On Wednesday morning the pool is only open to mothers and babies. So mothers can enjoy themselves in the water with their babies. Please leave your older children at home on Wednesday morning.

The new Water World Cafe will be open up on June 22nd. From the cafe you can watch the swimmers or enjoy a drink after you swim.

Please call 2105369 for more information. We look forward to seeing you at the Water World Swimming Pool.

- How long is the Water World Swimming Pool open every day? _____.
A. Eleven hours. B. Seven hours.
C. Eleven and a half hours. D. Seven and a half hours.
- What is the price for students with a student card to enter the pool?
A. Two dollars. B. One dollar forty.
C. Two dollars sixty. D. One dollar.
- A ten-year-old boy can't go to the Water World Swimming Pool _____.
A. on Saturday B. on Sunday
C. on Wednesday afternoon D. on Wednesday morning
- From the cafe you can watch the swimmers or enjoy a drink after you swim _____.
A. on May 21st B. on May 22nd
C. on June 23rd D. on June 21st
- This passage is a(n) _____.

- A. advertisement B. note C. story D. slogan

26

The students were having their chemistry (化学) class. Miss Li was telling the children what water was like. After that, she asked her students, —What's water?" No one spoke for a few minutes. Miss Li asked again, —Why don't you answer my question? Didn't I tell you what water is like?"

Just then a boy put up his hand and said, —Miss Li, you told us that water has no colour and no smell. But where to find such kind of water? The water in the river behind my house is always black and it has a bad smell." Most of the children agreed With him.

—In sorry, children." said the teacher, —Our water is getting dirtier and dirtier. That's a problem".

1. The students were having their _____ class.
A. English B. Chinese C. chemistry D. maths
2. Miss Li was telling the children what _____ was like.
A. water B. air C. earth D. weather
3. A boy said, —The water in the river behind my house is always _____. ”
A. white B. black C. clean D. clear
4. Most of the children _____ the boy.
A. agreed with B. wrote to
C. heard from D. sent for
5. The water in the river has colour and smell because it is getting _____.
A. more and more B. less and less
C. cleaner and cleaner D. dirtier and dirtier

27

Who wants to carry a bulky bag to school? No children. Nobody wants one shoulder to be lower than the other, and paining (疼痛) too. In India, most of us would look at the reduction (减少) of textbooks as a way out. But in a country like America, there are always more choices. A company called goReader has created a —school bag" which is the size of a laptop computer (笔记本电脑), weighing about 2.5 kg. The goReader has a color screen and can —hold" all the textbooks that a student may need, says a report in The Asian Age newspaper.

The company plans to work closely with the publishers (出版商) of textbooks so that these books can be supplied on the Internet. All the students will have to do is to download (下载) their textbooks. Making notes and marking important parts of a lesson can be done just as lots of students have done on their textbooks before.

At present, the plan is being tested out in a university. Richard Katzmann, the owner of the company is having his creation tested at Chicago's DePaul University, where he studied. Does that mean it is goodbye to the new paper, and the smell of the black ink?

1. What does the underlined word —bulky" in the first line mean? _____

- A. light B. small C. big and heavy D. old
2. What would Indians do to solve (解决) the problem? _____
- A. They would reduce the textbooks.
B. They would tell the parents to help students.
C. They would tell the teachers to help students.
D. They would take students to school by bus.
3. The writer may think that Americans have a _____ way to solve the problem.
A. more stupid B. worse C. better D. quicker
4. The goReader may be a machine _____.
A. that can work as a teacher B. that can be used as textbooks
C. that can cheat students D. that can hurt students
5. When the new machine is used, it is possible that _____.
A. students might study harder
B. students might study at home
C. students might not need teachers
D. students might study without paper textbooks

28

Most people want to be happy, but few know how to find happiness. Money and success alone do not bring lasting happiness. Aristotle, a Greek thinker, said, “Happiness depends upon ourselves.” In other words, we make our own happiness. Here are a few suggestions to help you be happier.

The first secret of happiness is to enjoy the simple things in life. Too often, we spend so much time thinking about the future—for example, getting into college or getting a good job—that we fail to enjoy the present. You should enjoy life’s simple pleasures, such as reading a good book, listening to your favorite music, or spending time with close friends. People who have several close friends often live happier and healthier lives.

Another secret to living a happy life is to be active, and have hobbies where you forget your problems and time. Many people experience this dancing, or playing a sport, such as swimming. You can forget about your problems, and only think about the activity.

Finally, many people find happiness in helping others. Studies show that people feel good when they spend their time helping others. If you want to feel happier, do good things for someone. You can help a friend with his or her studies, go shopping to buy food for an elderly person, or simply help out around the house by washing the dishes.

1. The best title (标题) of the passage is _____.
A. Money Makes You Happy
B. The Secrets of Happiness
C. Ideas for Helping Other People to Be Happy
D. Good Friends Make You Happy

2. The second paragraph tells us that _____.
 A. the more friends you have, the happier you will be
 B. we shouldn't think about our future
 C. happiness is to enjoy the simple things in life.
 D. some people fail to live a happy life
3. The passage gives us _____ pieces of advice on happiness.
 A. one B. two C. three D. four
4. The writer thinks that _____.
 A. everyone knows how to live a happier life
 B. it's wrong to spend time on work
 C. hobbies take up too much time
 D. doing good things for someone can make you happier
5. Which of the following is not mentioned in the passage? _____.
 A. Reading a good book. B. Traveling to a foreign country.
 C. Playing a sport. D. Spending time with close friends.

29

John was ten years old and he was very lazy[1]. He had to go to school, of course, but he was bored[2] there and tried to do as little work as possible. His father and mother were both doctors and they hoped that he would become one, too, when he grew up. But one day John said to his mother, —When finish school, I want to become a garbage collector[3].”

—“Garbage collector?” his mother asked. She was very surprised. —That's not a pleasant job. Why do you want to become a garbage collector?”

—“Because then I'd only have to work one day a week,” John answered.

—“Only one day a week?” his mother said, —What do you mean?”

—“Well,” John answered, —I know that the ones who come to our house only work on Wednesday, because I only saw them on that day.”

Notes: [1] lazy/leizi/adj. 懒的 [2] bored/bd/adj. 厌烦的 [3] garbage collector 垃圾工

1. John _____ at school.
 A. didn't do any work B. did much work
 C. did very little work D. tried to finish his work
2. John's parents wanted him to become _____.
 A. a garbage collector B. a doctor
 C. a teacher D. a worker
3. John hoped to be a garbage collector because _____.
 A. he knew it was an important and necessary job
 B. he thought he would work only one day a week
 C. he often saw some garbage collectors come to his house
 D. the garbage collectors really work only one day a week

4. John thought that the garbage collectors only work one day a week because _____.
 A. it was a rule
 B. some garbage collectors told him so
 C. his parents told him so
 D. he saw them work only on Wednesday

30

James is a good student and he has lots of friends, but he also has a problem. Some older boys are bullying (欺负) him at school. James is very unhappy and he doesn't know what to do about it. Here are some suggestions to him and other teenagers in this situation.

Don't feel worried. It's not your fault(过错)! Being bullied can make you feel very lonely and angry, but you are not alone. Don't feel that you have to hide the problem. You should find a person you can trust, and tell them. It might be your teacher, your parents, or even your friend's parents. After you tell someone, you will get some support and feel some relief (解脱).

Speaking to an adult might make you nervous, but here are other things you can do. Some people express their feelings more easily on paper. Write a letter to someone or keep a diary. Include all the details (细节) about what the bullies do, as well as when and where the bullying happens. You can use it as proof to show what is going on. And it is a wonderful idea to show your letter or diary to a teacher or another responsible adult. Then the bullies will feel very afraid if their names appear in a letter!

Also, don't show you are sad and don't try and fight with the bullies. You could get in trouble yourself. Ignore them and just walk away. The bullies will soon stop.

- What do you think the text is trying to tell us? ____
 A. What to do about being bullied.
 B. How to be a good student at school.
 C. What to write well in a diary.
 D. How to give suggestions to teenagers.
- Why does the text advise you not to feel worried if bullied? ____
 A. Because you are not alone.
 B. Because it is not your fault.
 C. Because someone has known about it.
 D. Because you're doing something wrong.
- You'd better go and find a person you can trust and ____.
 A. know what happens
 B. learn from them
 C. ask for help
 D. make them lonely
- If you remember and follow the suggestions above, ____.
 A. nobody will speak to the bullies
 B. everybody will feel some relief
 C. someone will express their feelings

D. the bullies will soon stop

5. What does the underlined word “ignore” mean in the text? _____

A. take no notice of

B. take care of

C. make full use of

D. get more help from

答案及解析:

1

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由文中第一句话可知。

2. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由这句话 “Ted go back to school. He wants to see his friends.” 可知, 他想回学校。

3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 “He wants to see his friends.” 可知, 他想见他的朋友们。

4. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 “Look! He is having breakfast with his parents” 可知, 他正在和父母亲一起吃饭。

5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “He goes to school by bike” 可知, 他骑自行车去上学。

2

1. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 “Mrs. Black lives in a small village. Her husband is dead.” 可知, The old Black 是死了。

2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “Her son, Jack, lived with her. He worked in a shop in the village.” 可知, Jack 是在乡村工作期间和母亲住在一起。

3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 “but then he found a job in town named Greensea.” 可知, Greensea 是一个镇。

4. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 “But, mother, you haven't got a telephone” 可知, Jack 不给他妈妈打电话的原因是他妈妈没有手机。

5. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 这道题用排除法做。

3

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “My best friend is Fanny.” 可知, Susan 最好的朋友是 Fanny。

2. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由 “Ken, Japan” 可知 Ken 来自日本。

3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 “Linda is a very confident girl and she is really kind” 可知, Linda 是一个自信和蔼的女孩。

4

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由文章最后一句话可知。

2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “Different people like to drink it in different ways.” 可知, 不同的人喝咖啡的方式不同。

3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 “Today people in the United States drink more coffee than people in any of the other countries” 可知, 美国人比世界上其他国家的人喝咖啡要多。

4. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 这是一道词义猜测题, 根据常识, 应该是浓烈的。

5. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由文章第一句话可知。

5

1. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由文章第一句话可知。

2. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “... fills their stockings with small presents” 可知, 圣诞老人把礼物放进孩子们的袜子里。 “stocking” “袜子”。

3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 “When they were very young, Mr. Green sometimes wore a red coat. But he doesn't

do that now. The children are no longer young, and they know who ‘Father Christmas’ really is.” 可推断孩子们小的时候不知道圣诞老人是谁。但是长大后知道了他们的父亲才是他们的圣诞老人。no longer 不再。

4. 【答案】C。【解析】：同上。

5. 【答案】A。【解析】：由 “He gets to the top of each house and climbs down the chimney into the fireplace.” 可知，圣诞老人通过烟囱进入房间里。

6

1. 【答案】D。【解析】：由 “The weather is usually warm in summer. It is sometimes hot in summer, but it is not often very hot. There are often cool days in summer.” 可知，英国的天气时而暖和，时而炎热，时而凉爽。

2. 【答案】D。【解析】：根据字面意思理解欧洲的北方指的是欧洲的一部分地区。

3. 【答案】A。【解析】：由 “When water freezes, it changes from a liquid into ice.” 可知。

7

1. 【答案】D。【解析】：由 “...and then rode off to a forest to see how the trees were growing.” 可知，他们去森林里去看树去了。

2. 【答案】D。【解析】：由 “But all was white snow. Everything was the same.” 可知，因为下雪，地面被雪覆盖，所以无法找到回去的路了。“be covered by” “被……所覆盖”。

3 【答案】B。【解析】：由 “...What was that under the tree? It was one of their tents!” 可知，他们看到了他们的帐篷，说明他们已经回到了营地。

4. 【答案】C。【解析】：由文章最后一段可知。

5. 【答案】A。【解析】：通过阅读全文可知。

8

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：由 “Our bodies grow most while we are asleep” 可知。

2. 【答案】A。【解析】：排除法，如果睡不好觉，我们会感到累。

3. 【答案】B。【解析】：由 “If we do not get enough fresh air, we will feel tired when we wake up.” 可知。

4. 【答案】C。【解析】：由 “Boys and girls who are eight or nine years old need ten hours of sleep every night.” 可知。

5. 【答案】A。【解析】：由 “Our lungs (肺) need to get enough fresh air.” 可知。

9

1. 【答案】A。【解析】：由文章第一句话可知，美国人买已制作好的食物。“ready-made” “制作好的”。

2. 【答案】C。【解析】：由 “...on Thanksgiving Day, the fourth Thursday in November...” 可知。

3. 【答案】C。【解析】：由 “The United States is known around the world for its fast food, such as hamburgers, sandwiches, pizzas, salad bars, and many kinds of ice cream.” 可知，披萨是一种快餐。

4. 【答案】B。【解析】：这是一道词义猜测题。Overweight 是超重的意思。

5. 【答案】D。【解析】：由 “They come to know eating too much meat will make them overweight. Many of them are also worried about food additives (添加剂). Some of them may be harmful to the body.” 可知。

10

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：文中并没有说他坐牢的原因。“put in prison” “坐牢”。

2. 【答案】B。【解析】：由 “I am worried about our farm,” she wrote. “It’s time to plant potatoes, but I can’t do all the digging(挖) by myself.” 可知，她担心他们的农场。

3. 【答案】A。【解析】：由 “He wrote to his wife,” Don’t dig the fields...” 可知。

4. 【答案】D。【解析】：由阅读全文可知。

5. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 “They have dug our field...” 可知, 地已经被挖过了。

11

1. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由 “This page tells us about animals.” 可知这篇文章讲的是动物, 又通过下文了解是全海上动物, 所以选 sea animals。
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 “Dolphins need air to live. They breathe air, as whales do.” 可知。
3. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “For example, the whale is not a fish. It can't breathe in the water. It swims in the water. But it comes up for air.” 可知, whale 不是鱼, 不能在水里游泳。
4. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 “... They eat fish and sea plants” 可知。
5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由文章最后两句话可知。

12

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “When he wanted to steal(偷) the bell on his neighbor's door...” 可知, 他想偷邻居的门铃。
2. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由阅读文章可知, 他在耳朵里塞入棉花为的是不让人听见, 能安全地偷到门铃, 所以选 safe 更合适。
3. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 根据常理推断。
4. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “Steal my bell? I'll teach you a lesson” 可知, 邻居打他是为了教训他的偷盗行为。
5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 通过读文章可知, 这个愚蠢的人以为自己把耳朵塞住, 别人也就听不到了。

13

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由 “They're both poor...” 可知, 因为穷, 他们住着破旧的房子。
2. 【答案】D. 【解析】: 由 “In the town he heard the apples in a city were expensive...” 可知, 这两位农民把苹果运到城市的目的是为了获得利润。“profit” “利润”。
3. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 “Bad luck! A lot of apples has already been carried there when they arrived.” 可知。
4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 “A few days later they had to sell them at a low price (价格). They felt unhappy and returned to their village.” 可知, 他们不高兴是因为他们经济遭受了损失。“sustain” “遭受”, “loss” “损失”。
5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 这要建立在理解全文的基础上, 通过阅读我们知道这两个人都很愚蠢。用排除法做此题。

14

1. 【答案】B. 【解析】: 由文章第一二句话可知。
2. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 “So many teachers and parents complain(抱怨) that computers can not help children to study but make them fall behind.” 可知
3. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由读文章知, B, C, D 三项太片面。只有 A 项正确。
4. 【答案】A. 【解析】: “Will computers really bring trouble to people or can they bring people happiness? It will be decided by people themselves.” 电脑带给我们的是麻烦还是快乐? 这是由人们自己决定的。不同的人带来不同的结果, 所以电脑带给我们的是麻烦还是快乐, 很难说清, 所以选 It's hard to say。
5. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 这篇文章最终是希望大家能正确地使用电脑。

15

1. 【答案】A. 【解析】: 由 “... They are in space” 可知。
2. 【答案】C. 【解析】: 由 “The satellites take pictures of the atmosphere (大气), because this is where the weather forms (形成) ..” 可知

3. 【答案】B。【解析】：“When they receive new pictures, the meteorologists compare (比较) them with earlier ones... In their next weather forecast, the meteorologists can say this.”气象学家在收到图片之后，与先前的图片进行对比，然后才能做出天气预报。

4. 【答案】D。【解析】：由文章最后一句话可知。

5. 【答案】D。【解析】：卫星的主要作用是帮助预测天气。

16

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：Snow fell on the mountain. It snowed and snowed.....it became ice.”

2. 【答案】A。【解析】：根据意思，it 指代的是 snow。

3. 【答案】A。【解析】：由最后两段推理，现在的冰河没有以前多了。

4. 【答案】C。【解析】：由第二段第一句话可知。

5. 【答案】C。【解析】：通过读文章很容易就能知道冰河改变陆地。

17

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：由文章第一句话可知。

2. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“He hardly went to town”可知，他不经常去镇上。hardly 几乎不，几乎没有；never 从不。

3. 【答案】A。【解析】：由“When he looked around, he saw some old people put glasses on before reading their newspapers. So after lunch he decided to go to a shop to buy himself one pair, too.”可知，他买眼镜是因为他认为戴上眼镜就能认识字了。

4. 【答案】D。【解析】：由“So after lunch he decided to go to a shop to buy himself one pair,”可知，他去商店是去买一副眼镜。

18

1. 【答案】D。【解析】：“Some birds like eating locusts(蝗虫), but birds cannot easily catch them. Why? It is because locusts change their colours together with the change of the colours of crops(庄稼).”知蝗虫是通过改变它们的颜色来保护自己的。

2. 【答案】C。【解析】：由“Some other pests ... So they have to hide themselves for lives and appear only at night.”可知。

3. 【答案】A。【解析】：由“...They cannot be easily seen by hunters. This is because they have the colours much like the trees.”可知，它们不容易被发现是因为他们跟树的颜色相似。

4. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“A kind of fish in the sea can send out... So it has lived up to now though it is not strong at all.”可知。

5. 【答案】C。【解析】：这是一道主旨题，通过阅读全文可知，这篇文章主要讲得是动物和昆虫有不同的颜色，以及这些颜色对它们起的保护作用。

19

1. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“Every day, we fed the chickens, milked the cows, played with the dogs and went fishing.”可知，他没有去钓鱼，所以选 B。

2. 【答案】B。【解析】：由第二段第一句话可知。

3. 【答案】A。【解析】：由第三段第二句话可知

4. 【答案】A。【解析】：“I found the summer vacation was not so interesting as I imagined(想象).”从这句话看出他认为暑假没有他想象的那么有趣。

5. 【答案】C。【解析】：这篇文章主要描述了三个人的暑假生活。

20

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：由文章第一句话可知。
2. 【答案】A。【解析】：由“Five years ago, I met her in a shopping center.” “This week she turns seven years old.” 这两句可知，作者是5年前碰到他，今年他7岁，所以作者5年前碰到他时他2岁。
3. 【答案】C。【解析】：由“I like writing, reading and playing computer games.”可知
4. 【答案】C。【解析】：这道题用排除法做，A，B两项和原文不符，只能选C。
5. 【答案】B。【解析】：这是一道主旨题，主要讲的是他的好朋友 Pixar。

21

1. 【答案】B。【解析】：通过读第一段可知，老师不喜欢 Mike 的原因是 Mike 学习不努力。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“I rode my bike to school.”可知，他是骑自行车去上学。
3. 【答案】A。【解析】：这是一道词义猜测题，根据常识，不会游泳的人在水里“挣扎”喊救命。“struggle (挣扎)”。
4. 【答案】B。【解析】：通过读文章可知，他迟到是因为救了一个落水的女孩。
5. 【答案】C。【解析】：学生救人迟到了，老师误会了学生。所以选C。

22

1. 【答案】A。【解析】：由文章第一句话可知。
2. 【答案】A。【解析】：由“I was born and brought up in Beijing”可知，她出生在北京，所以选 China。
3. 【答案】A。【解析】：由“They book flights. They book hotel rooms. And sometimes they change their bookings.”可知，只有A选项没有。

23

1. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“Every year there is a Spring Festival in China... It is the most important festival in China.”可知，春节是中国最重要的节日。Spring Festival 春节。
2. 【答案】C。【解析】：由第二句话可知。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“And they often make a special come together kind of food—‘dumplings’”可知
4. 【答案】C。【解析】：由“It means ‘come together’”可知。come together 聚集，在本文中的意思是“团聚”。
5. 【答案】A。【解析】：由“When they enjoy the meal, they give each other the best wishes for the coming year.”可知，他们是互相送祝福。

24

1. 【答案】B。【解析】：由文章第一句话可知。
2. 【答案】D。【解析】：由“Today the forests have almost gone. A lot of good land has gone with them, leaving only sand.”可知，这里的 them 指的是 forests。
3. 【答案】A。【解析】：由“The Great Green Wall is 7,000 kilometers long”很容易就能找出答案。
4. 【答案】D。【解析】：由“Trees must be grown all over the world.”可知。all over the world 全世界。
5. 【答案】C。【解析】：由文章最后一句话可知。

25

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：由文章第一句话可知。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“There is a special cheap price for students with a student card. The price is one dollar forty.”可知。

3. 【答案】D。【解析】：由文章第二段可知。
4. 【答案】C。【解析】：由文章第三段可知。
5. 【答案】A。【解析】：通过阅读全文我们可以知道这是一则广告。advertisement 广告。

26

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：由文章第一句话可知，他们正在上化学课。chemistry 化学。
2. 【答案】A。【解析】：由文章第二句话可知。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“... The water in the river behind my house is always black and it has a bad smell”可知。
4. 【答案】A。【解析】：由“Most of the children agreed with him.”可知。agree with 同意。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】：由文章最后老师说的一句话可知，我们的河水变得越来越脏。

27

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：这是一道词义猜测题。“bulky” adj. 体积大的；庞大的；笨重的。
2. 【答案】A。【解析】：“In India, most of us would look at the reduction (减少) of textbooks as a way out.”可知。
3. 【答案】C。【解析】：文中主要介绍了美国的一种 school bag，说明作者认为这一种更好一点。
4. 【答案】B。【解析】：由题意可知。
5. 【答案】D。【解析】：由最后一句话可知。

28

1. 【答案】B。【解析】：这是一道主旨题，通过阅读全文可知，这篇文章主要指获得快乐的方法。
2. 【答案】C。【解析】：由第二段第一句话可知。
3. 【答案】C。【解析】：由“The first ...， Another secret...， Finally...，可知，总共有三条建议。
4. 【答案】D。【解析】：由“many people find happiness in helping others”知获得快乐的秘密在于帮助别人。
5. 【答案】B。【解析】：这是一道细节题。由第二段“The first secret of happiness is to... such as reading a good book... or spending time with close friends”和第三段“Another secret to living a happy life is to be active... or playing a sport...”可知，只有 B 项没有，所以选 B。

29

1. 【答案】C。【解析】：由“... and tried to do as little work as possible.”可知。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“His father and mother were both doctors and they hoped that he would become one, too”可知，他父母亲希望他也能成为一名医生。One 在这里是代词，指代 doctor。
3. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“Because then I'd only have to work one day a week”这句话可知。
4. 【答案】D。【解析】：由文章最后一句话可以看出 John 认为收垃圾的人一周只工作一天，是因为他只有每周星期三才看到他一次。

30

1. 【答案】A。【解析】：通过阅读第一段可知，作者主要想表达如果在学校受欺负了怎么办。
2. 【答案】B。【解析】：由“Don't feel worried. It's not your fault”这句可知。
3. 【答案】C。【解析】：由“You should find a person you can trust, and tell them”知。
4. 【答案】D。【解析】：由最后一句话可知。
5. 【答案】A。【解析】：这是一道词义猜测题。“ignore”“忽视，忽略”和“take no notice of”意思相近。

第四单元 短文改错

一、考试说明要求

要求考生根据已学知识判断所给短文是否有错，如果有错，则将其更正。错误类型包括词法、句法、语法、行文逻辑等。该题目主要考查考生的英语基础知识以及在语篇中综合运用英语的能力。

二、题型特点

短文改错题型的特点是：

1. 知识综合性强，覆盖知识面广，要求考生熟练掌握所学的词汇、句型和语法知识，同时还要求考生具备敏锐的观察能力和较强的分析能力。
2. 短文中的错误形式为错词、缺词、多词、固定搭配和逻辑错误五种。
3. 测试考生发现、判断和改正错误的能力。
4. 一篇短文只给十个测试点，它们各自分布在已标出的十个测试点中，九个测试点有错误，一个测试点没有错误。

三、短文改错错误标注要求

此题要求找出并改正所给短文中的错误。对标有题号的每一行做出判断；如无错误，在该行右边的横线上画一个（√）；如有错误（每行只有一个错误）则按情况改错如下：

若此行多一个词：把多余的词用斜线（\）划掉，在该行右边横线上写出该词，并用斜线把该词划掉。

若此行缺一个词，在缺词处下方加一个漏字符（∧），并在该行右边横线上写出该加的词。

若此行错一个词，在错词下画一横线，并在该行右边横线上写出改正后的词。

四、短文改错解题步骤

1. 慢速浏览全文一遍，掌握其大意。
2. 对照上下文分析句意，找出错误。
3. 复读全文，验证答案。
4. 标出无错误测试点。

223

结构可称为平行结构。在平行结构中，词性时态等形式须保持前后一致。

①Playing football not only makes...but also give us a sense of fair play and team spirit.
give → gives

②I would describe myself as a shy and quietly girl. quietly → quiet

③However, we seldom felt lonely or helplessly . helplessly → helpless

(4) 数的一致

名词的数须与其修饰语保持一致。

You can find all kinds of information in just a few minute on the Internet.

minute → minutes

(5) 主饰一致

句中主要词（中心词）应与其修饰词保持一致。

①I would learn a lot of new word from these books, but I had terrible problems.

word → words

②She said that she and my schoolmate all wished me success.

all → both 或 she and my schoolmate → she and my schoolmates

(6) 指代一致

用于指代的各类代词应在数、格、性上与上下文保持一致。

①Every year more and more people start a stamp collection of your own.

your → their

②It is us who are to blame for the poverty because we used to.....

us → we

③What is more, you have to be friends with your pupils and take good care of him.

him → them

(7) 语态一致

句中谓语动词或非谓语动词应与上下文语态保持一致。

①Books may be keep for four weeks. may be keep → may be kept

②I have some records giving to me as birthday gifts. giving to me → to be given to me

(8) 搭配一致

句中的固定搭配应保持完整并与上下文一致。

①I felt so nervous as I shook like a leaf. so → as

②They make their lives by collecting and selling used things.

make their lives → make their living

③But it doesn't matter that I would win or not. that → whether

④I have neither brothers nor sisters—in any other words, I am an only child.

in any other words → in other words

(9) 逻辑一致

这是一种隐蔽性较强的错误，检查时应通篇考虑，重点在连词、代词、肯定与否定及相对应的动词如 come 与 go 等。

①And when I saw your wife and children waiting for me with warm smiles of welcome on

their faces, I immediately knew that everything would be all right.

everything → they

② Unfortunately, I won't be able to meet you at the airport although I have classes in the afternoon.

although → because

③ She was smiling but nodding at me.

but → and

微笑和点头在语意上是并列的关系。

(10) 代词的性、数一致

① The Johns did his best to make me feel...

主语 The Johns 用以指代一家人或夫妇俩，后面的代词 his 应该用 their。

② They must not break the rules too often if we want to win the games. They → We

③ I don't believe Mary, for he is always telling lies. he → she

六、真题解题示范与分析

下面就是 2008 年高等职业教育单独招生统一考试英语短文改错题

Keep healthy is an important way of our life. A person has good health is more efficient (有效的) in

86. Keeping

87. who

^

carrying out their task either as a student in a school, a worker in an office and even a house wife at home. There are different way to keep healthy. It is necessary to have a healthy diet every day. Different kinds of food has different functions in building up and keeping our bodies strong. Other way to keep healthy is to exercise regularly. Learning what to relax(放松) our body is certainly ~~is~~ an efficient way to keep healthy.

88. his

89. or

90. ways

91. √

92. have

93. Another

94. how

95. is

【答案与解析】

本文讲述了生活中保持身体健康的方法。

86. Keep 改为 Keeping. Keep healthy 不能作主语，它在这里表建议或命令，而 Keeping healthy(动名词短语)可以作主语，表示保持身体健康的事。

87. person 与 has 之间加 who 或 that. person 之后的 has good health 部分是个定语从句，who(that)在定语从句中作主语。

88. their 改为 his. 此处 their 与本句中主语 person 是同一个人。

89. and 改为 or. a student in school, a worker in an office 与 a housewife at home 是选择关系。

90. way 改为 ways. 此处 way 受到 are different 的限制。

91. 正确。

92. has 改为 have. 此处 has 不与 food 对应，而与 kinds 对应。

93. Other 改为 Another. 此处讲的是另外一种保持身体健康的方法。纵观全文，一共讲了三种保持身体健康的方法。

94. what 改为 how. 此处表示放松身体的方式或方法。

95. 去掉 in。此处 in 与本句逻辑不相容。此处不能理解为“用一种有效的方法”，而要理解为“保持身体健康的一种有效方法”。

七、实践练技

请用正确的短文改错方法完成下面的改错任务。

(A)

Plants grow good in spring and summer,
because the weather is warm with many rain.
When autumn comes, the weather becomes
cool and dry. Plants grows slowly in autumn.
Some them can even die before winter comes. But
some plants still live in winter. In autumn its
leaves turn yellow and fall. And they don't lose
as more water through their leaves as they do
in spring and summer. When spring will comes,
new leaves grow.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(B)

Do you think animals can tell you how the weather will
be like? Some people believe the groundhog can, that is a
small furry animal. There's a special day in America calling
the Groundhog's Day which falls on February 2nd. In the day,
if the groundhog comes of his home in the ground and see
his shadow(影子), he will be frightening and goes hurriedly
back into his hole. People say this means there will be six more
of weeks of winter to expect. However, if he can't see his shadow
this day and stay out of his hole, it means whether spring is
coming soon.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

【答案与解析】

- (A) 1. good 改为 well。此处 well 作状语修饰谓语动词 grow, 所以不能用 good。
2. many 改为 much, 因为它修饰 rain, rain 是不可数名词。
3. ✓
4. grows 改为 grow, 因为主语不是第三人称单数。
5. Some 之后加 of。这里表示他们其中的一些植物。
6. And 改为 But 或 So。此处内容表示转折或结果。
7. its 改为 their
8. more 改为 much。此处无比较并且 as...as 结构要求形容词或副词用原级。
9. 去掉 will。此处表示自然现象“气候”, 因此动词 come 要用一般现在时表示。
10. grow 之前加 will。此处错误同上。

- (B) 1. how 改为 what。此处表示天气状况而不是天气程度。
 2. that 改为 which。此处为非限定性定语从句的主语，指代前面的 the groundhog。
 3. calling 改为 called。过去分词作定语修饰 day。
 4. In 改为 On。On 用于“某一日”的时间前。
 5. comes 之后加 out。come out of...为固定短语，意思为“从...出来”。
 6. frightening 改为 frightened。Frightened 为过去分词，表示自身恐惧的状态。
 7. goes 改为 go。go 与 be 并列共用 will。
 8. 去掉第一个 of。此处 of 多余。
 9. ✓
 10. whether 改为 that。whether 之后的表语从句意思完整，不缺任何成分，因此要用 that 来作其从属连词。

形成性训练题

(1)

Mrs. Brown was walking near a playground. She was a hurry to visit her four grandchildren. She missed them very much, because she had seen them for quite a long time. She was walking while she saw a ball coming in her direction. She was already in her seventy. Should she kick the ball to send it back and should she just go past leaving the ball where it was? Finally with greatly care, she gave it a kick. The ball went straight into the goal. How wonderful it was! And she happen to have helped to win the match. And all his four grandchildren were on team of the winners.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(2)

Both my parent were musicians. Neither of them played a musical instrument, but they all sang, and there was lots of music at home. There was old piano at school and I can't keep my hands off it! Finally an old teacher in the school recognized that I want to learn, and she gave me some lessons. When I was nine, I played in the end-of-term concert at school. At the age of thirteen, my music teacher said to me, —Ther is nothing more that I can teach myself. From now on, you need a world-class teacher or a top-class piano.” So I went to a school for music student. Then at the age of twenty-two I went to Paris to study piano.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(3)

Like most of my schoolmates, I have either brothers nor sisters in any other words, I am an only child. My parents love me dearly of course and will do

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

all they can to make sure that I get good education. They do not want me to do any work at family—they want me to devote all my time to my study so that I can get good marks in all my subject. We may be one family and live in the same roof, but we do not seem to get much time to talk about together. It looks as if my parents treat me as a visitor and a guest. Do they really understand their own daughter? I wonder what the things in other homes are.

4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(4)

Uncle Dick sent John and Rose a big vase (花瓶). Their room was very big that they didn't have enough room for it. So they give it to a friend of them. The vase went from one house to another. At the end a woman sold it to Mr. Hill. One day John and Rose heard a letter from Uncle Dick. He was came to visit them. Of course, he is going to see his own present in their house. They went to the shop, and Mr. Hill had already sold the vase. When they got home, they found the same vase again, because Uncle Dick had bought it from Mr. Hill and sent it them.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(5)

People have different opinion about food. Some love some kinds meat or fish. Some like vegetables, when others have a taste for cakes or ice creams.

Many people has a real love for food and are good on cooking. These people spend much money on eat at home or in restaurants. Many people also eat too many food, perhaps two or three times more that they need. The result is that they get overweight. However, about six hundreds million people in the world eat too few, and many of them are children.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(6)

It was very cold in the morning of a Monday. A math teacher was standing by the teacher's desk, explaining the exercises to

1. _____
2. _____

the students had done the day ago. A few minutes went by. He was shivering (发抖) all over with cold. His nose was running. Suddenly he noticed that one of the windows facing north was open. And the cold wind through them was blowing straight to him. He got a bit anger, but he asked kindly, ~~Who~~ has let the window open?" ~~I~~ did, Sir," said one of the students, standing up. The teacher asked again calmly! ~~When~~?" The student answered with an apologizing smile, ~~I~~ only wanted you to breathe some fresh air. I am sorry, Sir." with these words, the student sat down, and the teacher stood at the desk without saying single word.

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

(7)

One Friday afternoon Mrs. Brown went to the supermarket with her four-years-old little son. She paid no attention to the flashing beacon (信号灯) when they acrossed the street, and the beacon happened to be red. A policeman stopped them. Mrs. Brown knew that she would be fine (罚款), but she at once put something into the little boy's ears and went up to a policeman, ~~Hello~~, Officer." she said, ~~The~~ boy is lost can't find his way home. Will you please to help him home?" ~~Yes~~, Madam," says the policeman. ~~Well~~, little one." Mrs. Brown turned to her son, ~~Go~~ with this gentleman and soon you are home." ~~OK~~, bye, Mum!" said the boy.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

(8)

Today I visited the Greens-my first time visit to a American family. They lived in a small town. It was very kind for them to meet me at the railway station and drove me to their home. The Greens did his best to make me feel at home. They offered me coffee and other drinks. We have a good time talking and laughing together. They eager to know everything about China and asked me a lot of question. In fact, they are planning to visit China in next year.

1. _____

2. _____

3. _____

4. _____

5. _____

6. _____

7. _____

8. _____

9. _____

10. _____

(9)

My favorite sport was football. I am a member of our school football team. We practise for three times every week and often watches football match on TV together. Playing football not only makes us to grow up tall and strong but also give us a sense of fair play and team spirit. We must keep in mind that we play for the team instead of us. Also, the sport teaches us the important of obedience (服从). Each player must obey captain, who is the leader of the team. And they must not break the rules too often if we want to win the game.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(10)

Now I can't watch much TV, but a few years ago, I was used to watch it every night. I was often a few tired after a day's work and watching TV demands very little effort. Unlucky, there are too many people among my family. Some wanted to see the program while the others preferred another. I am happy with any program but the others spent plenty time arguing and there was no way of setting the matter except by selling the set. Now someone at home reads instead.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(11)

Welcome to our city. Now let me to introduce our city to you. Our city is a new modern city. It set up in the early 1980. But it has been developing very rapid. From here you can travel everywhere by the sea, by air or by land. Recently another freeway connects with Beijing started being used, The places around our city is rich in natural resources. And we have enough supply electricity and energy resources. The public order is nice. The government will support investors with many ways. We wish more foreign friend to invest in our city.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(12)

Most slang word are used more in speaking than in writing. As this reason, few can be found in dictionaries. Most Americans know

1. _____
2. _____

about 10 000 to 20 000 words. About 1 000 to 2 000 of these words
are slang. However, slang words are in those used very often.
Slang words are made of special groups such as workers, and musicians.
They are used to describing a new subject, experience or idea. At first,
only the member of such special groups understand words they have made up.
Later, some of the slang words are used by other peoples, too. Slang words
can be popular for a time, but then forget and not used any more. Students
studying a foreign language should be very careful about what words to use
and what not. General, it is better not to use slang (俚语) words.

3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(13)

I'm a middle school student naming Li Ming.
I'm writing to tell you something. Recently I noticed many
of my classmates often to go to the cyber cafe (网吧) near
our school. The other day I went here, too. I was surprised
to see many students doing computer games, seeing films
or chatting. Some students were even talking about love affairs
online. On my opinion, cyber cafes should be a place
where we can find much useful information. Internet should
be a window to the outside world rather than place for games.
Internet is good if we make good use it. Otherwise, it will do
us great harm. So the local government should take measure
to make sure that students use cyber cafes positively.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(14)

It was very nice day on July 15th. We students were organized
to have a short journey in Saturday. We took the school bus that
started at 7:20 a.m.. About 9:30 we reached in Beidaihe, a
very beautiful place. This is one of the famous spots in Hebei Province.
Many people spent their holidays there because it is cool in summer.
Some are relaxing and swimming in the sea; some are laying on the
beach to have the sun bath. In the morning, we swam in the sea, rowed
small boats together, and so we had lunch in a snack bar. In the afternoon,
we walked along the beach, and arrived at Nandaihe. We took some photoes
there. We had a good time and everyone is very excited. We returned on the
bus at 4:30p.m. and got home safe and sound.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(15)

Hong Kong lies in southeast of China.
It covers a area of one thousand and
ninety-two square kilometer. It has a

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

population of over six million. Hong Kong belong to China all the time in history. In the early nineteen century, China was weak, and Hong Kong was so a good place that many foreign countries want to have it. In the end, the British imperialists took Hong Kong with force, so ruled it for one and a half centuries.

4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

强化训练题

(1)

We had guests last night who have not stayed in a B&B hotel ago. They did not want breakfast because that they were going out early in the morning. They came back lately and had some tea. I came into the living room and saw one of them just go through the kitchen door but turn on the light. He was looking for a glass the cupboard. He had no ideas that the kitchen was not for guests. I just smiled to me and thought, —What can I do ? We are guests after all.”

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(2)

I'm writing to ask you come to our class for a visit. I've heard that you have been to Greece. In our Greece unit, we have been learning about it's rich culture and long history. Since you have visited Greece several times, so I would like to know whether you have seen the old buildings here. We have learned a lot from the textbook, but I believe you personal experience will be a lot better. Your knowledges of Greece can help the whole class. Could you share your experiences for us? It will be surely exciting and rewarding (有益的). I hoped you can think about my request and visit us as soon as possibly.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(3)

As is known to all of us, the Internet is playing more and more important part in our everyday life. On it, we can only read news at home and abroad but also get so much information as possible. We are often send e-mails or make telephone call to our families as well as our friends. However, we can go to school on the net , read different kinds

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____

of books and even teach myself English. We can also enjoy music, watch sports and playing computer games on the net. We can do shopping even with leaving our homes.

8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(4)

Helen is one of my best friends. She had taught us English when I attended training course two years ago. Helen always made good preparations for the lessens, and she tried her best to make his classes lively. I used to being poor in English, especially in written English. And now I am able to write English letters and reports correct. I still remember how she helped me for my English patiently. When Teachers' Day will come, I'm going to send to her a card and give her best wishes.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(5)

Early one morning in May, 2014, it was raining hard, I was sitting in my classroom myself. ~~We~~ shall soon leave Beijing and go to Hanzhong. You will say goodbye to your new classmates." That my father told me the other day sounded more again in my ears. Although I had studied at the school for only two months, but I really loved everything here. What's more, the teaching conditions here are much more better than those in Hanzhong. As child who was born in countryside, I knew almost everything about the world outside. However, after I went to Beijing, I saw many things I had never seen before and tasted much delicious snacks (小吃). It was quite regrettable (遗憾) that I had to leave Beijing so soon.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(6)

Now most of the families in the world has TV sets. People would like watch TV and they think it's very interested to watch TV. People can know what has been happened in our country or in the world by watch TV. TV can help people open their eyes and their minds. They can also help people to learn newer and better ways of doing things. We can say that watching TV can give us lots of benefit but watching TV for long time can do much harm to people's healthy and affect the students' learning.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

So people must control themselves and watch TV properly.

(7)

This afternoon, on my way back home from school, the north wind was blowing hard, and soon it begun to snow. It was rather cold and I thought I must hurry up. The road was such wet that I suddenly hit a roadside tree. When I knew it, I fall off my bike and down into the river. I was struggling for life in the cold water. All of a sudden, I felt myself pulling up by a strong hand. That was a PLA man who saved me from being drowned(淹死). Tears coming into her eyes, I said, —Thank you, uncle! I really don't know how to say. Without your help, what would have happened to me?"

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(8)

Dear Brown:

We are so glad that you're coming to join us in Saturday. Here is what you can find us. We'll have our gathering party in the Central Park. Maybe you have gone there before, haven't you? Go straight on when you get out of the school gate but come to the street. Then turn right at the second crossing and you find a hospital. Just opposite it are a No2. bus stop. Take a bus and get off at the three stop. The Central Park is just in front of it. We will have our gathering party in a boat on the lake. What a interesting thing! Do come on time. We'll wait you at the park gate.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(9)

An American and a Frenchman decided to cross the sea among France and England in a balloon in 1784. High over the water, they discover a hole in the balloon. The hole became bigger and bigger. The air keeps the balloon up was escaping quickly and the balloon was coming up. The two men threw all their equipment into the water to make the balloon light. It started to rise higher again. So it was still too close to the water. Finally, the men threw away most of his clothes to save themselves. The crowd waiting for to greet them in England was very surprised see this when the balloon landed in front of them.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(10)

There is a public library in every town in Britain.

1. _____

Anyone can borrow books if he or she wish. In some places you may borrow as more books as you need, but in others you are limited to a certain number of book. You may keep the books for several weeks so as you can have enough time to finish it. If the book you want is out, you may ask it to be kept for you. Most public libraries also have a reading-room, that you can sit at the desk and read the daily newspapers, magazines and the other books, but you are not permit to take them out.

2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(11)

I am very excited to have accepted an e-mail from you. I'm pleased you have made such a great progress that you can write your e-mail good Chinese. I read your e-mail to my parents and show them the photo you sent it to me. How time flies! Our friendship has lasted for several months. We have got to know but learned a lot from each other. Yes, it is clearly that your life in your country is quite different from me. Thanks again for writing to me. I'm looking forward to hear from you soon. Best wishes to you and your family.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(12)

My hometown is a pretty city, so people there are kind and polite. With coming of spring, grass and trees turn green, and flowers grew in many colors. In summer, the sea under the blue skies is even more beautiful. After autumn arrives, the city looks as an old man with leaves fallen from the trees. In winter a lot of white birds come to my city for food. I can wait more patiently above the sea for quite a long time. While they find fish come to the surface, they fly down immediately to catch them without delay.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(13)

Last summer I took a part-time work in the International camp for children. I have been told that one more worker will be needed this year and I think you are fit it. How about join us? The camp is at the foot of a small hill close to a river. It is so a beautiful place! We can hear birds sing happily all around. Everyone sleeps in tents,

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

that is very exciting. We usually work only five hours a day, so we will have plenty of spare time visit the area and have a fun. I am sure it will be an unforgettable experience. If you have interests in it, rely to me soon.

7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(14)

Many students feel it that a popular teacher must be kind and easy-going. He and she should make the class very active for joking with the students. However, the popular teacher is at same time the one who should be strict with students. Last year, my English teacher proved to be the more popular in our school. She was usual patient with her students and never made them disappointed. She always stays in full control of the situations. She always made sure that our homework was finished on time, but she marked strictly on student's actual performance.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(15)

Like many places, my hometown is either facing the problem of pollution. Unfortunately, people there have realized the importance of protection the natural environment. Factories have taken measures to stop pouring polluting water into the rivers. The citizens no longer put waste, such as rubbish or human waste into the rivers. Every year, a great number trees are planted. As a result, the water in the rivers are becoming cleaner and cleaner. The hills around the city were covered with green trees and the air there is too fresher than before.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

高考真题实战体验

(1)

2009 年高等职业教育单独招生英语考试短文改错试题

Coffee houses can be seen anywhere in America. People from European brought the idea with them. Soon coffee became the leading drink. Today people in United States drink more coffee than people in any country. People who drink coffee at breakfast, at lunch, and between meals. They drink them at work and at home.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____

Coffee is drunk by people around the world. Some 7. _____
 people like coffee what is very black and very strong. 8. _____
 Another people like coffee with cream or sugar, or cream 9. _____
 and sugar with it. Now coffee has become a world-wide 10. _____
 drink.

(2)

2010 年高等职业教育单独招生英语考试短文改错试题

One day Mark Twain meets a young man. He was one of Mark 1. _____
 Twain's old friends. They talked with each other for a long time. The 2. _____
 young man told he that he had an uncle. And his uncle never laughed or 3. _____
 smiled. Mark Twain didn't believe him. He said for his friend, ~~Well~~, I'm 4. _____
 going to give a lecture in this evening. Will you bring your uncle to my lecture? 5. _____
 I'm sure I can make him laughing." That evening, the young man and his 6. _____
 uncle sat in the first row. Mark Twain told a few funny story. All the 7. _____
 people there laughed happy, but the old man never laughed. Then he 8. _____
 told the funniest stories, but the old man face was still blank. Later on, 9. _____
 Mark Twain told this to a friend. ~~Oh!~~" said friend, ~~I~~ know that old man. 10. _____
 He is deaf."

(3)

2011 年高等职业教育单独招生英语考试短文改错试题

If someone asks me, ~~Do~~ you like music?" I'm surely 1. _____
 I'll answer him or her, ~~Of~~ course, I am." I think music is 2. _____
 a important part of our lives. 3. _____
 Different people have the different ideas about it. For me, 4. _____
 I like rock music because it's so excited. And my favorite 5. _____
 music is ~~Foxing~~ ladies", that is one of the most famous 6. _____
 rock band in the world. I also like pop music. My friend 7. _____
 Li Hong likes dance music, because he enjoys dance. My 8. _____
 best friend, Jane, likes jazz music. She thinks jazz is really 9. _____
 cool. ~~I~~ like dance music and rock much," says my brother, 10. _____
~~because~~ they are amazing." But my mother thinks rock is
 boring. She likes country music.

(4)

2012 年高等职业教育单独招生英语考试短文改错试题

Once there was a boy who he liked reading books very 1. _____
 much. Because the boy was so poor to buy any books, 2. _____

he had no books of him own. But that could not stop
him from reading. He decided borrow books from a friend
of his, who was living far away to the boy's home. The
boy always tried his best to finish read the books
and then returned it to the owner within the given time.
That was the reason why his friend was glad to lend him
any of his books. The many books the boy read, the more
knowledge he learned. And late he became a great writer.

3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

(5)

2013 年高等职业教育单独招生英语考试短文改错题

Miss Evans taught physics in school in London. Last
month after she had explained to one of her class about
sound, she decide to check whether the students had understood
it. She said to them, ~~You~~ see, I has a sister
in Washington. If I called she on the phone, and
you were on the other side of the street. Who would hear
me first, my sister and you? And why?"
~~You~~ sister, Miss Evans," A clever boy answered immediately,
~~because~~ electricity travels more faster than sound waves."
~~Very~~ well," Miss Evans praised.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____
4. _____
5. _____
6. _____
7. _____
8. _____
9. _____
10. _____

【答案与解析】

形成性训练题部分

(1)

1. 第二个 was 之后加 in。in a hurry 为固定短语。
2. ✓
3. had 之后加 not。根据上文的 "She missed them very much." 的结果, 此处为 "她很久没有看到她的四个孙子。"
4. while 改为 when。when 此处为 at that time(moment)或 suddenly 的意思。
5. seventy 改为 seventies。此处为固定短语 in one's seventies "在某人七十几岁时"。
6. and 改为 or。此处为选择关系。
7. greatly 改为 great。greatly 不能修饰名词 care, 而 great 可以修饰名词 care。
8. happen 改为 happened。此处表达的是过去发生的事情。
9. his 改为 her。此处指的是 Mrs. Brown's 的意思。
10. team 之前加 the。此处 the 表示特指。

(2)

1. parent 改为 parents。此处为名词的复数 "我的父母亲"。
2. all 改为 both。both "表示两个", 而 all 表示 "三个或三个以上"。

3. old 之前加 an。此处为“一架旧钢琴”的意思，它之后的 old 首音为元音。
4. can't 改为 couldn't。此处表示过去的事情。
5. want 改为 wanted。此处为过去时。
6. ✓
7. myself 改为 you。根据上下文的逻辑，此处为作者的音乐老师再也没有什么可教他的了。
8. or 改为 and。此处为平行并列关系。
9. student 改为 students。此处泛指学音乐的学生们。
10. piano 之前加 the。琴类名词前要用定冠词 the。

(3)

1. either 改为 neither。根据下文 I am an only child. 可知，此处要用 neither。
2. 去掉 any。此处为固定短语 in other words “换句话说”。
3. ✓
4. good 之前加 a。此处为固定短语 get a good education “接受良好教育”。
5. family 改为 home。此处 home 符合本句的逻辑。
6. study 改为 studies learning。此处为“学习”的意思，如果 study 之前有形容词性物主代词修饰，study 要用 studies 形式。
7. subject 改为 subjects。此处 subject 既被 my 修饰又被 all 修饰。
8. in 改为 under。此处为“在同一个屋檐下”的意思。
9. 去掉 about。about 与本句的意思不相符，此处不能理解为“谈论”，而要理解为“交谈”。
10. what 改为 how。此处为“如何或怎样”的意思。

(4)

1. very 改为 so。此处之后是一个结果状语从句，so...that... “如此……以至于……”的意思。
2. give 改为 gave。此处为过去发生的事情，要用一般过去时来表示。
3. them 改为 theirs。此处为“他们的所有朋友们”，theirs= their friends。
4. At 改为 In。此处意思为“最后”，因此，此处为 In the end。
5. heard 改为 got 或 received。此处为固定短语 get(receive) a letter from...，其意思为“收到……的一封信”。
6. 去掉 came; came 改为 going。此处为“将要或打算”的意思，be to 和 be going to 都表示“将要或打算”的意思。
7. is 改为 was。此处为过去的情况。
8. and 改为 but。此处为转折关系。
9. ✓
10. 第二个 it 之后加 to。及物动词之后的双宾语，如果表“事或物”的直接宾语在表“人”的间接宾语之前，那么直接宾语之后一般要加“to”。

(5)

1. opinion 改为 opinions。根据本句的逻辑此处名词为复数。
2. kinds 之后加 of。此处为固定短语 some kinds of...。
3. ✓
4. has 改为 have。因为它之前的主语为复数。
5. 第一个 on 改为 at。此处为固定短语 be good at...。
6. eat 改为 eating。介词之后的动词要用动名词形式。

7. many 改为 much。因为 many 不能修饰不可数名词，而 much 则可以。
8. 第一个 that 改为 than。此处为比较级，意思为“也许比他们需要的多两三倍”。
9. hundreds 改为 hundred。此处表示具体数字，因此 hundred 之后不能加“s”。
10. few 改为 little。此处指代很少的食物，因此它为“little food”。

(6)

1. in 改为 on。表示“在”某日的早上、下午或晚上时，“在”要用 on 来表示。
2. 去掉 to; to 改为 which 或 that。此处为限定性定语从句的关系代词指代 the exercises，同时，它又在定语从句中作 done 的宾语。
3. ago 改为 before。此处 ago 与本句的逻辑时间节点不相符，应该为那天之前的时间，并且 ago 不能与过去完成时搭配使用。
4. them 改为 it。此处指的是面朝北开着的那扇窗户。
5. anger 改为 angry。此处为“生气”的意思，get 与它构成系表结构 get angry 表示主语的情绪状态。
6. let 改为 left。此处为固定表达 leave...open “让……开着”的意思。
7. did 改为 have。此处为“I have left the window open.”的省略形式。因为，如果把上面的话重复一遍，那么，此话就显得啰嗦。
8. When 改为 Why。根据下文可知这里问的是原因。
9. ✓
10. saying 之后加 a。此处为“没有说一句话”。

(7)

1. four-years-old 改为 four-year-old。
2. ✓
3. acrossed 改为 crossed。across 是介词，而 cross 是动词。
4. fine 改为 fined。此处为情态动词的被动语态。
5. but 改为 so。此处表示结果。
6. a 改为 the。此处为特指的（前面提到的）那位警察。
7. boy 之后加 who 或 that。can't 之前是个定语从句，定语从句 is lost 缺少主语和关系词。
8. 去掉 to。此处多余。
9. says 改为 said。此处间接引语为过去发生的事。
10. are 改为 will be。此处为将来要发生的事情。

(8)

1. 去掉 time。此处 time 多余。
2. a 改为 an。此处为“一个”的意思，而之后的 American 的首音又是元音。
3. for 改为 of。此处 very kind 修饰的是 them，而不是 to meet me at the railway station。
4. drove 改为 drive。此处 drive 与 meet 为并列的不定式。
5. his 改为 their。此处是指“格林全家人”的意思。
6. ✓
7. have 改为 had。此处表示过去发生的事情。
8. eager 之前加 were。此处缺少一个表示过去的谓语系动词 be，另外 eager 又是形容词。
9. question 改为 questions。question 是个可数名词，它之前有 a lot of 短语修饰语。
10. 去掉 in。next year 之前不需要加 in。

(9)

1. was 改为 is。全文用的都是一般现在时。
2. 去掉 for。次数前面不能用 for。
3. matches 改为 match。主语是复数。
4. 去掉 to。grow 之前的动词是主动的使役动词 makes。
5. give 改为 gives。give 和 makes 是并列谓语。
6. ✓
7. us 改为 ourselves。此处强调我们自己本身。
8. important 改为 importance。此处为名词“重要性”的意思。
9. captain 前加 the。此处特指一个球队的队长。
10. they 改为 we。此处指的是作者自己和自己的同伴们。

(10)

1. 去掉 much。此处 much 多余，与本句的逻辑不相容。
2. 去掉 was。此处为“过去常常(看电视)”的意思，而 was used to do sth.意思是“被用来做某事”。
3. few 改为 little。此处表示抽象的意义，来修饰 tired 的程度。
4. Unlucky 改为 Unluckily。此处为承上启下的转折副词作状语。
5. among 改为 in。此处不表示“家庭成员之间”而是表示“在家庭成员中”。
6. 第一个 the 改为 one。此处为“一个节目”，并且强调“一个节目”。
7. am 改为 was。此处表示过去的情况。
8. plenty 之后加 of。固定短语。
9. ✓
10. someone 改为 everyone 或 everybody。根据全文逻辑，此处强调家庭的每个人都看书。

(11)

1. 去掉 me 之后的 to。此处作宾语补足语的不定式要去掉 to，因为 let 是主动的使役动词。
2. set 之前加 was。此处为一般过去时的被动语态。
3. 1980 改为 1980s。此处意思为“早在二十世纪八十年代初期”。
4. rapid 改为 rapidly。此处为副词作状语，修饰谓语 has been developing。
5. 去掉 the。此处意思为“乘船”，而不是“在海边”。by sea = by ship。
6. connects 改为 connected。此处表达过去发生的事情。
7. is 改为 are，因为本句的主语是 places。
8. ✓
9. with 改为 in。此处意思为“在……方面”。
10. friend 改为 friends，因为它之前的修饰语是 more。

(12)

1. word 改为 words。因为它之前的主饰语是 most “大部分的”。
2. As 改为 For。此处为固定搭配，意思为“因为”。
3. ✓
4. in 改为 among。此处意义为“在那些俚语当中”。
5. made 之后加 up。此处为固定短语 be made up of “由……组成”。
6. describing 改为 describe。此处为不定式，表“目的”。

7. member 改为 members。此处意思为“成员们”，而不是“数目、数额或人数”的意思。
8. peoples 改为 people。此处意思为“人们”，而不是“民族”的意思。
9. forget 改为 forgotten。此处为被动，即：can be forgotten。
10. General 改为 Generally。此处为插入语，意思为“一般来说”。Generally=In general=Generally speaking。

(13)

1. naming 改为 named。此处为过去分词作定语修饰 student。
2. noticed 前加 have。根据全文逻辑和 recently 的限制，此处为现在完成时。
3. 去掉 often 后的 to。此处不定式作宾语补足语，它之前的谓语动词 noticed 是“表主动的感官动词”。
4. here 改为 there。此处 here 与 went 的逻辑不一致。
5. doing 改为 playing。此处为固定短语 play computer games。
6. On 改为 In。此处为固定搭配 in one's opinion。
7. ✓
8. place 之前加 a。此处为“一个平台”。
9. use 之后加 of。此处为固定短语 make good use of...“利用好……”的意思。
10. measure 改为 measures。此处 measure 为可数名词，并且表示“一些措施”。

(14)

1. very 之前加 a。此处遗漏了“一”，以至于本句前后逻辑不一致。
2. in 改为 on。“在”某一日，“在”要用 on。
3. 去掉 in，因为 in 之前的动词 reach 是及物动词，它之后直接跟地点名词或地点副词。
4. famous 之前加 most。此处为最高级，one of the + 形容词最高级 + 复数可数名词。
5. spent 改为 spend。此处为一般现在时，表示“许多人夏天常在那里度假”。
6. laying 改为 lying。此处动词用错，与本句逻辑不符。lying 是 lie “躺”的现在分词形式，而 laying 是 lay “放、搁置、或摆放”的现在分词形式。
7. ✓
8. 去掉 so。此处 so 多余，它与本句的逻辑不相符，此处与前文为并列关系。
9. photoes 改为 photos。此处名词 photo 的复数错误，这个词的原词是“photograph”，photo 是 photograph 的缩略形式。
10. is 改为 was。此处表示过去的情况。

(15)

1. southeast 前加 the。方位名词之前要用定冠词 the。
2. a 改为 an。此处为固定短语，并且它之后 area 首音为元音。an area of...是“……的面积”。
3. kilometer 改为 kilometers，因为它前面的为 ninety-two。
4. ✓
5. belong 改为 belongs。此处为一般现在时，并且主语是第三人称单数。
6. nineteen 改为 nineteenth。此处意思为“第十九”。
7. so 改为 such。so 不能修饰 a good + 单数可数名词，而 such 能修饰 a good + 单数可数名词。
8. want 改为 wanted。此处表示过去的事。
9. with 改为 by。固定搭配，by force 意思是“靠武力”。
10. so 改为 and。此处为并列平行关系。

强化训练题部分

(1)

1. have 改为 had, 因为它被 last night 修饰。
2. ago 改为 before, 因为 ago 不能与过去完成时连用。
3. 去掉 that。此处之后是原因状语从句, that 是多余的。
4. lately 改为 late。此处意思是“迟或晚”, lately 意思是“最近”, 而 late 意思是“迟或晚”。
5. ✓
6. but 改为 and。此处是并列平行关系。
7. glass 后加 in。此处逻辑上缺少 in。
8. ideas 改为 idea。此处为固定短语, have no idea = don't know。
9. me 改为 myself。此处强调我自己。
10. We 改为 They。根据全文逻辑, 此处指“客人们”。

(2)

1. come 之前加 to。此处为作宾语补足语的不定式, 并且它之前的 ask 既不是使役动词, 也不是感官动词。
2. ✓
3. it's 改为 its, 因为此处意思为“希腊的”。
4. 去掉 so, 因为 so 之后的句子是主句。
5. here 改为 there。此处意思为“在希腊国家那里”。
6. you 改为 your。根据后文此处应该用形容词性物主代词。
7. knowledges 改为 knowledge, 因为 knowledge 是不可数名词。
8. for 改为 with。此处为固定搭配 share...with sb. “与某人分享……”。
9. hoped 改为 hope。根据上下文, 此处为一般现在时。
10. possibly 改为 possible, 因为此处为固定短语。

(3)

1. ✓
2. playing 后加 a。此处为“play a...part in...”。
3. only 前加 not。根据后文, 此处为 not only。
4. so 改为 as。此处为固定结构“as...as possible”。
5. 去掉 are, 因为本句的谓语是一般现在时的主动语态。
6. call 改为 calls。根据前后文, 此处泛指“打电话”。
7. However 改为 Besides。根据前后文, 此处为“递进关系”。
8. myself 改为 ourselves。此处与主语 we 是同一人。
9. playing 改为 play, 因为此处 and 之前的 enjoy 和 watch 是并列关系。
10. with 改为 without。此处 with 与本句逻辑不符, 此处介词短语为背景状语, 意思为“不用离开我们的家”。

(4)

1. 去掉 had, 因为此处不表示过去的过去, 而表示过去发生的事情。
2. training 前加 a。根据前后文, 此处遗漏了个不定冠词。
3. ✓
4. his 改为 her。此处指的是“Helen's”的意思。

5. being 改为 be。此处指的是“过去的情况”的意思，而不是“习惯了或适应了”的意思。
6. And 改为 But。根据前后文，此处为转折关系。
7. correct 改为 correctly，因为此处作状语，修饰 write。
8. for 改为 with。此处为固定短语 help sb. with sth.
9. will come 改为 comes，因为本句为时间状语，并且主语是第三人称单数。
10. 去掉 to，因为 send 是及物动词，它之后直接接宾语。

(5)

1. myself 前加 by。此处为固定短语“我独自一人”。
2. go 后加 back。根据前文，此处意思是“返回”。
3. That 改为 What，因为 sounded 之前部分是个主语从句，它缺少直接宾语 sth.
4. more 改为 once。此处意思是“再次”。
5. 去掉 but。此处之后的句子是主句。由 although 或 though 引导的让步状语从句，主句前不能加 but。
6. 去掉 better 前的 more。此处 better 是 good 的比较级，它之前不能加 more。
7. child 前加 a。此处为“as a child”，它的意思是“作为一个孩子”。
8. everything 改为 nothing，因为此处与前文的了解相悖。
9. ✓
10. much 改为 many，因为此处修饰后面的复数可数名词 snacks。

(6)

1. has 改为 have。本句的主语是 most “大部分的家庭”。
2. like 后加 to，因为此处是固定短语。
3. interested 改为 interesting。此处描述主语 sth. “to watch TV”，interesting 表示“令人感兴趣的”的意思。
4. 去掉 been。因为本宾语从句的谓语动词 happen 是不及物动词，所以它不能用被动语态。
5. watch 改为 watching，因为介词之后的动词要用动名词形式。
6. They 改为 It。此处指“通过看电视这种途径”。
7. ✓
8. benefit 改为 benefits。此处 benefit 可数名词被 lots of 限制。
9. long 之前加 a，因为此处指“一段时间”。
10. healthy 改为 health，因为此处为“健康”的意思。

(7)

1. ✓
2. begun 改为 began，因为此处是一般过去时。
3. such 改为 so。本句是一个含有结果状语从句的主从复合句，并且它修饰的词是形容词 wet。
4. When 改为 Before。根据后文逻辑，此处只能用 before，本句意思是“我还没反应过来，就……”。
5. fall 改为 fell，因为此处过去发生的事情。
6. pulling 改为 pulled。此处 pull 修饰 myself 作定语，它们之间是被动关系。
7. That 改为 It，因为此处是强调句的主语。
8. her 改为 my。根据后文，此处与 I 是同一个人。
9. uncle 改为 Uncle，因为此处为“称呼语”。
10. how 改为 what，因为此处是 say 的内容。

(8)

1. ✓
2. in 改为 on, 因为此处表示“在”某一日。
3. what 改为 how, 因为表语从句里缺少方式状语。
4. gone 改为 been。根据前后文, 此处表示“去过那儿了”。
5. but 改为 and。此处后文与前文是并列关系。
6. find 前加 will 或 can, 因为此处表示“将要看到的”。
7. are 改为 is。本句为倒装句, 其主语是 a No2. bus stop。
8. three 改为 third, 因为此处为“第个三汽车站”。
9. a 改为 an, 因为它之后单词的首音为元音。
10. wait 之后加 for。此处是固定短语 wait for sb。

(9)

1. among 改为 between, 因为此处指二者之间。
2. discover 改为 discovered, 因为全文描述的都是过去发生的事情。
3. keeps 改为 keeping。此处现在分词短语作短语, 修饰 air, 并且它们之间是主动关系。
4. ✓
5. up 改为 down。根据前文逻辑, 此处指“气球不断下降”。
6. light 改为 lighter。根据前文逻辑, 此处 light 应该用比较级。
7. So 改为 But。此处为转折关系, 而非因果关系。
8. his 改为 their。此处指的是“the men's”的意思。
9. 去掉 for。根据后文, for 是多余的。此处意思为“在英国正等候迎接他们的”。
10. see 之前加 to。此处不定式短语作原因状语。

(10)

1. ✓
2. wish 改为 wishes, 因为主语是第三人称单数。
3. more 改为 many。在 as...as 等级比较结构中, 形容词或副词不能用比较级, 而要用原级。
4. book 改为 books, 因为 book 之前的修饰语是 a (certain) number of... “许多的”。
5. as 改为 that。此后为结果状语从句, so that 意思是“以至于”。
6. it 改为 them。此处指的是前文的“the books”。
7. ask 后加 for。此处 ask for 表示“要求得到或借回”的意思。
8. that 改为 where。此处是非限定性定语从句作状语, 它代指的是“in a reading-room”。
9. 去掉 other 前的 the。此处意思是“其他的”, 而不是“另外的”。
10. permit 改为 permitted, 因为此处为被动语态。

(11)

1. accepted 改为 got 或 received。根据本句前后文的逻辑, 此处意思为“收到”而不是“接受”。
2. 去掉 a, 因为不定冠词不能直接修饰不可数名词。
3. good 前加 in。根据本句的逻辑, 此处为“用”的含义。
4. show 改为 showed, 因为此处表示过去所发生的动作。
5. 去掉 it, 因为它与限定性定语从句中省略的关系词重复。

6. but 改为 and, 因为此处之后的部分与其之前的部分是平行、并列关系。
7. clearly 改为 clear, 因为此处为表语。
8. me 改为 mine。根据前文的逻辑, 此处意思是“my country”, 为了避免重复, 此处要用名词性物主代词来代替它们。
9. hear 改为 hearing, 因为它之前的词是介词。
10. ✓

(12)

1. so 改为 and。此处前后句是并列句, 而不是主从关系。
2. with 后加 the, 因为此处特指春天的到来。
3. grew 改为 grow。此处动词时态要与上下文保持一致。
4. skies 改为 sky。根据本句逻辑, 此处 sky 应该为单数。
5. as 改为 like。根据本句逻辑, 此处 look 应该与 like 搭配, 其意思为“看起来象”。
6. fallen 改为 falling。此处 falling from the trees 现在分词短语作定语, 修饰 leaves, 它们之间是主动关系。
7. I 改为 They, 因为此处指代前文提到的“a lot of white birds”。
8. 去掉 more, 因为本句没有比较的意思。
9. While 改为 When。根据后文的逻辑, 此处用“when”比较合适。
10. ✓

(13)

1. work 改为 job, 因为此处表示“一份临时工作”。
2. ✓
3. fit 后加 for。此处为固定短语 be fit for “适合”。
4. join 改为 joining, 因为介词之后的动词要用动名词形式。
5. so 改为 such。此处为固定搭配用法, such + a(an) + 单数可数名词。
6. sing 改为 singing。根据前后文逻辑, 此处应该用现在分词作宾语补足语, 意思为“一直鸣叫着”。
7. that 改为 which。此处为非限定性定语从句, which 指代前文内容。
8. visit 前加 to。此处不定式短语作定语, 修饰 time。
9. 去掉 a, 因为 fun 是不可数名词, 并且 have fun 是个短语“玩得开心”。
10. interests 改为 interest。此处为“兴趣”的意思, 它为不可数名词。而 interest 作可数名词用时, 它的意思为“利益或利润”。

(14)

1. 去掉 it。根据本句逻辑此处的 it 多余。
2. and 改为 or。此处前后部分是选择关系。
3. for 改为 by。根据本句前后逻辑, 此处之后部分(介词短语)作方式状语。
4. same 前加 the。此处为固定搭配。
5. more 改为 most。因为 popular 受 in our school 限制, 所以 popular 应该用最高级形式。
6. usual 改为 usually, 因为此处为时间副词, 作时间状语。
7. stays 改为 stayed, 因为此处表示过去发生的动作。
8. ✓
9. but 改为 and。此处之后部分与之前部分是平行关系。

10. student's 改为 students' 或 our, 因为此处指的是依作者为代表的学生一方。

(15)

1. either 改为 also, 因为本句是陈述句肯定形式。
2. Unfortunately 改为 Fortunately 或 Luckily。根据上下文的逻辑, 此处意思为“幸运的是”。
3. protection 改为 protecting。根据此处之前的介词以及它与后文的逻辑关系, 此处要用 protect 的动名词形式。
4. polluting 改为 polluted。此处过去分词作定语, 表示已发生且完成的动作以及与被修饰的名词是被动关系。
5. ✓
6. or 改为 and。此处为平行并列关系。
7. number 后加 of。此处为固定短语“许多的”。
8. are 改为 is, 因为前面的主语是 water。
9. were 改为 are。此处表示过去逐渐发生的情况。
10. too 改为 much; 去掉 too, 因为比较级之前不能用 too 作修饰语。

高考真题实战体验部分

(1)

1. anywhere 改为 everywhere, 因为本句是肯定陈述句。
2. European 改为 Europe。根据上下文, 此处指的是“欧洲”。
3. in 后加 the, 因为此处指的是“美国国家名称”的专有名词。
4. any 后加 other。此处为特定用法, 凡是把自己排除之外的情况, 一般都要用 than...any other + 单数可数名词。
5. who 去掉, 因为此处之后部分不是定语从句。
6. them 改为 it, 因为此处指的是“coffee”。
7. ✓
8. what 改为 that 或 which, 因为此处是限定性定语从句的主语, 它指代的是 coffee。
9. Another 改为 Other。根据上下文的逻辑, 此处意思为“其他的”。
10. with 改为 in。根据本句逻辑, 此处意思是“在(咖啡)里”。

(2)

1. meets 改为 met, 因为本句的主语是第三人称单数。
2. ✓
3. told 后的 he 改为 him, 因为此处该人称代词作宾语。
4. for 改为 to 因为此处意思为“对……说”。
5. 去掉 in, 因为 evening 之前有 this 修饰语。
6. laughing 改为 laugh, 因为此处的宾语补足语表示“要发生的事”, 并且动词 make 是主动的使役动词, 以及与宾语 him 之间是主动关系。
7. story 改为 stories, 因为它被 a few 修饰。
8. happy 改为 happily。此处该词作状语, 修饰全句。
9. man 改为 man's。根据前后文的逻辑, 此处要用名词所有格来修饰 face。
10. said 和 friend 之间加 the。此处为“特指”, 此处 friend 是第二次提到。

(3)

1. surely 改为 sure, 因为此处该词与 am 构成系表结构, 意思为“肯定或确保”。
2. am 改为 do。此处是对上文 Do you like music? 问句的回答。
3. a 改为 an, 因为它之后单词的首音是元音。
4. 去掉 have 和 different 间的 the。根据前后逻辑, 此处是“泛指”, 而不是“特指”。
5. excited 改为 exciting。根据前文, 此处形容词化的现在分词表示“对人产生影响”。
6. that 改为 which。此处之后部分为非限定性定语从句, 其主语指代的是前文的“Foxing Ladies”。
7. band 改为 bands。根据句意, 此处名词为复数。
8. dance 改为 dancing。Like 表示“爱好”时, 它之后的动词要用动名词形式。
9. ✓
10. rock 和 much 间加 very。此处为固定短语, 作状语, 修饰动词 like。

(4)

1. 去掉 who 后的 he, 因为 he 与作限定性定语从句主语的 who 重复。
2. so 改为 too。此处是个固定结构...too...to... “太……而不能……”。
3. him 改为 his。此处为固定搭配...of one's own, 意思为“某人自己的……”。
4. decided 后加 to。此处不定式短语作宾语, 表示“将要做的事情”。
5. to 改为 from。此处为固定搭配, 表示“离……遥远”的意思。
6. read 改为 reading。finish 之后的动词要用动名词形式。
7. it 改为 them。此处指代上文的 the books。
8. ✓
9. many 改为 more。根据前后文逻辑, 此处要用比较级, 它与后文 the more 构成一个特定结构来表达递进关系。
10. late 改为 later。此处的时间与上文的时间暗含了一种“比较”含义。

(5)

1. school 前加 a。根据下文, 此处指某一所学校。
2. class 改为 classes。根据全文的 one of 可知, 此处名词要用复数形式表达。
3. decide 改为 decided。根据前后文, 此处动词要用一般过去时表示过去发生的动作。
4. has 改为 have, 因为主语是 I。
5. she 改为 her, 因为此处它作宾语。
6. ✓
7. 第一个 and 改为 or。根据本句逻辑, 此处为“选择关系”。
8. You 改为 Your, 因为人称代词不能作定语修饰名词, 而形容词性物主代词能修饰名词。
9. 去掉 more。比较级词之前的修饰语不能用“more”。
10. well 改为 good。根据上下文, 此处表示“夸奖对方回答问题回答得好”。

第五单元 书面表达部分

I. 《高职单招考试说明》要求

根据所给情景或汉语提示,在30分钟内写出一篇80~100词的书面材料或简单应用文。情景包括目的、对象、时间、地点及内容等;提供情景的形式有提纲、表格、图画、短文等。所写书面材料的要求是:①切中题意;②语言准确、得当;③条理清楚。书写技能的要求是:能够基本正确拼写所学过的单词,能够基本正确地运用标点符号。

II. 近5年书面表达真题概况

年 份	文 体	主 题	形 式	人 称	基本时态
2009	书 信	向加拿大笔友 Steve 推荐两本学中文的词典	汉语提示 表 格	第三人称 第二人称 第一人称	现在时
2010	电子邮件书信	向美方接待人员介绍己方人员的外貌、衣着等识别信息	汉语提示	第一人称	现在时、将来时
2011	书 信	向外国朋友介绍自己的暑假生活	汉语提示	第一人称	过去时
2012	报 道	“青少年该不该在周末与朋友外出”讨论的报道	提 纲	第三人称	现在时
2013	报 道	学校英语歌曲演唱会报道	汉语提示	第一人称	过去时、现在时

III. 书面表达的命题形式和特点

从近几年陕西省高职单招高考英语试题来看,书面表达题都采用控制性写作或指导性写作的形式。即通过要点提示、提纲、表格等来限制文体、内容、人称、时态和字数。《高职单招考试说明》把英语作文定义为80~100词的书信或报道。提供书信或报道的形式有表格、要点提示、提纲等。写作内容全部与学生的学习生活或学习生活热点密切相关,现实感强,情景逼真,让学生易于动笔。写作任务突出考查学生实际运用语言的能力。因此,今年考生在书面表达备考时,宜把写作训练重点放在应用文——书信、报道和发言稿上;在素材方面,多积累与学生学习和生活相关的材料。

IV. 书面表达备考知识

一、应用文写作

1. 应用文格式

①英文书信格式

Dear 收信人称呼或姓名,

May27, 2015

写信时间

①Yours,

②Truly yours,

③Sincerely yours,

写信人姓名(Zhang Dawei)

②电子邮件格式

假如你叫赵飞，你与另外一位同学应邀去美国的一所学校交流学习，对方要派 Professor John 去机场接你们。由于未曾谋面，现请你写一封电子邮件（100 词左右），告诉你们的外貌、衣着等相关信息。

你的电子邮箱地址：ZhaoFei@yahoo.com

对方的电子邮箱地址：23457666@hotmail.com

(1)

From: ZhaoFei@yahoo.com

To: 23457666@hotmail.com

Dear Professor John,

Yours,
Zhao Fei

(2)

From: ZhaoFei@yahoo.com

To: 23457666@hotmail.com

Subject: Zhao Fei from China

Dear Professor John,

Yours,
Zhao Fei

③日记格式

Friday, February 2nd

Sunny

④通知格式

Notice

Boys and girls:

Attention, please? (May I have your attention, please?)-----

January 5th, 2012

The Students' Union

2. 写好应用文要注意的问题

①写应用文时，考生必须注意应用文格式。英语与汉语的应用文格式有很大的区别，如英文书信的信头和信尾的写法与汉语书信的信头和信尾的写法差别很大。

②写应用文的开头和结尾时，考生必须用好特定的开头语和结尾语。

③考生写应用文的内容时，必须把握内容的准确清楚，前后逻辑通顺连贯。对写作提示，既不能简单地翻译，又不能漫无边际地瞎谈，而是要灵活运用所学的词汇、语法和句型来组织语言，进行表述。

④写应用文时，考生要用准时态和人称。

二、报道和发言稿写作

1. 报道与发言稿的写作特点。

报道和发言稿都属于记叙文和议论文写作。它们的写作既有记叙又有议论。报道和发言稿都是通过摆事实、讲道理、辨是非来表达作者见解和主张的常见文体。

2. 写好报道和发言稿要注意的问题。

中学英语书面表达所要求的议论文，是一种限定写作，其论点、论据和论证都比较明确。因此，考生写报道和发言稿时，一定要注意开头、主体和结尾的写法：①开头——引论：直接写出令人关注的问题或话题，千万不要绕弯子，要开门见山，开宗明义；②主体——本论：这是全文的主要部分，对提出问题或话题进行事实论证。因此考生要充分运用所给的论据材料对观点进行论证，使论点得到足够的支持；③结尾——结论：对主体部分内容作出概括，明确论点所要解决、论证的问题。因此考生要用精练、准确的语言表明作者的观点，一般三句话就可以了。写报道和发言稿时，考生一定要注意时态和人称，一般多用一般现在时和一般过去时、第一人称或第三人称。

三、书面表达技巧以及需要注意的问题

1. 把握好书面表达的审题关。

书面表达审题是考生高质量、顺利完成书面表达任务的前提。如果考生不审题或审题马虎，那么他（她）百分之百完不成书面表达任务，也会浪费掉很多宝贵的考试时间。因此考

生在动笔之前，必须认真做好书面表达的审题工作。在审题过程中，考生必须认真阅读书面表达的任务信息、提示信息、参考词语信息、图表信息以及写作要求信息。之后，考生必须弄清文章应采用的题材是应用文、记叙文、说明文还是议论文，文章所用的人称是第一人称、第三人称还是第二人称，文章要用的基准时态是现在时态还是过去时态，文章如何开头、如何结尾、如何表述主要内容，文章需要使用的关键词、短语和句型等。总之，动笔之前，考生要做到心中有数，防止写作过程中偏离主题和要求，杜绝无意识地浪费时间的现象发生。

2. 列出要点。

阅卷老师给书面表达试卷评分标准的一个重要依据之一就是：按照写作内容的信息点打分。因此，写作前，考生必须列出要写的信息要点，避免遗漏信息要点被扣分现象的发生。

3. 要把握好语言关。

要用自己最熟悉的词、短语和句型，不用把握不大的词语、句型；准确地选用不同的时态、语态，注意人称、数的变化；力求文理通顺，语言准确。另外，文章以叙述清楚为主，不要在考场上炫耀自己，专挑复合句和高级词汇写。一旦写错了结果会适得其反。当然，在有把握的情况下，灵活使用各种句子和词语，漂亮优美的句子会增添文章的色彩，从而取得好成绩。一句话，用适合自己英语水平的语言来完成书面表达任务。

4. 确保文章逻辑通顺。

文章逻辑通顺是高考书面表达评分的第一个标准。其规定：如果读者看不懂文章，那么此书面表达可不给分，可见文章的逻辑通顺是多么的重要。所以，考生务必在动笔前对要写的文章进行构思，以确保文章通顺而得到应得的分。

5. 用好过渡词语，确保语篇结构的连贯性。

评分标准把衔接和连贯作为核心标准来要求。之所以如此强调衔接和连贯，是因为这是构成语篇的最基本的条件。语句间的连接部份是衡量语句是否连贯的很重要的标准之一。构成语篇连接部分的过渡词，被称为“篇章纽带”，其语篇衔接作用是不言而喻的。因此，考生一定要用好过渡词语，从而保证语篇结构的连贯性。

6. 对于与要求无关的内容不可随意发挥，加进一些不着边际、无关紧要的内容，更不能为了表现自己的英语水平，增加文不对题的句子。

7. 把握好语言表述的灵活性。

在完成书面表达内容过程中，考生会遇到自己不会的词语、难以表达的词语或一时想不起来的词语。这时，考生要学会用别的同义或近义词语来代替它，或者用别的语句把它的意思表述出来。因为写作不是翻译，如果一个考生把书面表达当成翻译来做的话，那么他（她）很难完成写作任务。即使任务完成了，结果也不会好。其实，书面表达就是写作，而写作具有很强的灵活性。所以，在完成书面表达任务过程的中，考生把握好语言表述的灵活性很重要。

四、书面表达写作程序

1. 看清题，认真审题——弄清楚书面表达任务、内容和要求。

2. 列要素，确定好要表达的“全部信息要素”以及与之相关的重点词语和句型。

3. 确定文章要采用的文体、格式、时态和人称。

4. 构思：怎样开好头，详述好内容（注意前后逻辑的通顺），结好尾。

5. 在草稿纸上迅速一气呵成文章。

6. 细读已写成的文章，更正文中的语言错误和自己的笔下之误。

7. 整齐地誊写出成型文章。

审题→列提纲→构思→打草稿→修改→誊写

五、书面表达实用词语

(A) 实用写作句型

1. It is necessary (important, impossible) to do sth. 做某事有必要(重要、不可能)。
2. It is necessary (possible) for sb. to do sth. 某人做某事有必要(有可能)。
3. It is very kind of sb. to do sth. 某人做某事真是太好了。
4. I am glad (pleased) to hear from you. 很高兴收到你的来信。
5. Thank you for your letter. 谢谢你的来信。
6. I am looking forward to your answer (your letter). 我期待着你的回信。
7. As far as we know, ... 据我们所知……
8. As far as I am concerned, ... 就我个人而言, ……
9. As is known to us, ... 我们都知道, ……
10. With the development of the society (economy), 随着社会(经济)的发展……
11. As the society (economy) develops, ... 随着社会(经济)的发展, ……
12. With one's help, ... 在某人的帮助下, ……
Without one's help, ... 如果没有某人的帮助, ……
13. Great changes have taken place in China since 1978. 1978 年以来, 中国发生了巨大变化。
14. If so, ... 如果这样, ……
If not, 如果不这样,
If necessary (possible), ... 如有必要(可能), ……
15. It takes (has taken, took) sb. some time (money) to do sth. 某人做某事需要(用)一些时间(钱)。
16. We had better (not) do sth.. 我们最好做某事。
17. It is better to do sth.. 最好做某事。
18. What is more (worse), ... 况且(而且), ……
19. It is no use doing sth.= There is no use doing sth. 做某事没用。
20. It is waste doing sth. 做某事白浪费精力。
21. It is a waste of time(money) doing sth. 做某事是浪费时间(金钱)的。
22. There is no need to do sth.=It is no need doing sth. 没有必要做某事。
23. There is need for us to do sth.. 我们有必要做某事。
24. Where there is no water, there is no life. 没有水, 就没有生命。
25. Where there is a will, there is a way. 有志者, 事竟成。
26. This problem is well worth considering (discussing). 这个问题很值得思考(讨论)。
27. sb.<sth.> is to blame. 某人(某物)应受到谴责。
28. We can do all <everything> we can to do sth. 我们会尽其所能做某事。
29. We think it adj. to do sth. 我们认为做某事……

30. We think (that) it is adj. for sb. to do sth. 我们认为某人做某事……
 31. One coin has two sides. 事物都有两面性。
 32. On one hand on the other hand 一方面……, 另一方面……
 33. We have spent much time in doing sth. 我们已用了许多时间做某事。
 34. There was a heated discussion about environmental protection in our class yesterday. 昨天我们班上就环境保护话题展开了热烈讨论。
 35. There has been a heated discussion in our class about whether middle school students can use mobile phones or not at school. 我们班就中学生上学时能否使用手机展开了热烈讨论。
 36. We have had a heated discussion about whether we middle school students should surf on the Internet or not. 我们就我们中学生是否应该上网的问题展开了热烈讨论。
 37. Their views (ideas) are as follows. 他们的看法(观点)如下。
 38. Some think that 一些人认为……
The others don't think so. 其他人不这么看。
The others go against that. 其他人反对那样。
 39. Its advantages are ... 其优点是……;
Its disadvantages are... 其缺点(不足)是……
 40. Seeing this ,what do we think of it ? We should do... 至此, 我们应该做……
 41. to do sth, we should take some measures to do sth.. 为了做某事, 我们应该采取措施去做某事。
 42. As long as we do sth, there will be a good result (success) . 只要我们做某事, 就会有好的结果(就会成功)。
 43. We think it our duty (responsibility) to do sth. 我们认为做某事是我们的职责(责任)。
 44. It's a pity that we couldn't do sth. 遗憾的是我们没能做某事。
 45. They show us how to do sth. 他们教我们怎样做某事。
 46. May I have your attention, please? 请注意!
Here is an announcement for you. 请注意!
 47. Now let me introduce sth.< myself> to you. 让我向你介绍某事(让我向你做个自我介绍)。
 48. It is very necessary that sb. do sth. 某人做某事是很有必要的。
 49. It's said that sb. has done sth. 据说某人做了某事。
 50. sb. is said to do sth. 据说她做某事。
 51. It is a long time since sb. did sth. 自从某人做某事以来已有很长时间了。
 52. That's all. 好了, 别的就不多说(写)了。
 53. I'm sorry to write this letter to you now. 很抱歉, 我现在才给你写这封信。
 54. Instead of doing sth., they did sth. 他们没做某事, 而是做了某事(另外一件事)。
 55. Only in this way can we do sth. 只有用这种方法我们才能做某事。
- (B) 语篇连接词和过渡词语表示“启、承、转、合”
1. 示递进: and, also, besides, in addition, more over, once more, what's more, what's worse 等。
 2. 表示转折: but, however, yet, and yet, although ,in spite of, on the contrary, on the other hand, otherwise 等。

3. 表示结果: so, therefore, thus, as a result, luckily, unfortunately 等。
4. 表示时间: in the past, at present, now, then, afterwards, later, later on, soon, before long, after that, up till now, just now, just then, so far 等。
5. 表示举例、列举、说明: for example, for instance, such as, that is to say, actually, believe it or not, to tell you the truth, and so on 等。
6. 表示过程、顺序: first, firstly, first of all, second, secondly, far, above, below, near, beside, on one side 等。
7. 表示对比、比较: just like, just as, in the same way, on the contrary, on the other hand, more or less, sooner or later, similarly 等。
8. 表示强调: above all, after all, at least, at most, indeed, in fact, surely, certainly, without any delay, of course 等。
9. 表示结论或总结: finally, at last, in the end, in a word, in all, in general, generally speaking, in short, in conclusion 等。
10. 表示并列: both...and, neither...nor, either...or, as well as, some...some...not only...but also...等。

书面表达强化训练

日记模块

(1)

请根据以下提示, 以 Travelling to Hainan Island 为题用第一人称写一篇 100 词左右的游记。文中不可写出自己的真实地址或姓名。

提纲:

1. 近年来旅游越来越热, 你在五一长假期间去了海南岛。
2. 起初两天, 你呼吸着海边的新鲜空气, 听着涛声, 领略了自然的美景, 也交了很多朋友。
3. 那里天气多变, 接下来几天时常被困在雨中, 感到假期漫长, 有点厌倦与疲劳。
4. 你对此旅游有何感想, 下次如何打算。
5. 日记时间: 2014 年 5 月 8 日, 星期三。天气: 阴天。

(2)

今天是 2014 年大年初二 (二月初二), 你第一次坐飞机去上海看望你的爷爷。现就下面的情景写一篇日记。

你和你的家人乘出租车到了机场, 然后上了飞机。当飞机起飞时, 你有些紧张, 随后则感到兴奋。置身于高空云雾之中, 俯瞰大地、山脉和河流, 别有一番情趣。只花了一个半小时的时间就到了上海。

你过去常常坐火车去上海，通常要坐 20 多个小时。坐飞机尽管要贵一些，但是比乘坐火车和汽车要快得多，舒适得多。人们的生活水平确实确实是提高了。

注意：1) 词数：100 词左右。

2) 第一句话已写好。

It is the second day of the Chinese New Year. _____

通知模块

(1)

3 月 12 日是“植树节”(Tree-Planting Day)，校团委要组织全体学生参加植树活动。

提示：(1) 植树日期：3 月 12 日；

(2) 植树地点：西山；

(3) 集合地点、时间：学校操场，早晨 7 时；

(4) 要求：全体参加，每班带 5~6 个脸盆作浇水用，乘校车前往，3 月 11 日通知。

NOTICE

(2)

请你以学生会的名义根据下面的内容写一则去人民公园游玩的通知。

1. 参加者：高三年级全体学生。

2. 活动内容：(1) 2 月 20 日，周六去人民公园，上午游览东湖。

(2) 中午在湖边野餐。

(3) 下午参观植物园。

3. 集合时间和地点：早上 6:50 在学校门口集合，7:00 开车。

4. 注意事项：穿运动鞋；自带午餐盒饮料；如有可能，每班带上一两部相机；准时集合。

5. 要求：100 词左右。

6. 出通知时间：2 月 18 日。

NOTICE

(3)

下面是有关英语演讲比赛的信息，请据此用英语写一则通知。(100 词左右；4 月 9 日通知)

活动	英语演讲比赛 English-speaking contest
目的	提高英语口语
组织者	学生会 the Students' Union
参加范围	高中 (senior) 学生
报名时间	5 月 25 日以前
报名地点	学生会办公室
比赛时间	6 月 9 日下午 4: 00
比赛地点	教学楼五楼礼堂 (auditorium)
评奖	前五名优胜者获奖

NOTICE

(4)

你们班准备组织一次环保活动。假定你是班长，请用英语书面通知全班同学有关事宜。

1. 早上 7: 00 在学校大门口集合，步行去公园。
2. 女同学在草地和花园附近树立宣传标牌，告诉游人“爱护花木”、“禁踏小草”。
3. 男同学清捡废纸、烟头等。发放宣传资料，宣传保护环境的重要性。
4. 活动将持续一天，请同学们自带午餐。

注意：1) 词数：100 词左右。

2) 参考词汇：宣传资料 propaganda material。

NOTICE

(5)

假如你是西安市的一名导游，正在接待一个美国教育代表团，明天准备安排这个团游览秦始皇兵马俑。请根据活动计划写一则口头通知，以便今天午餐后向代表团团员宣布明天的活动计划。

活动内容如下：

时 间	活动内容	地 点
8:00	集合	西安饭店门口
9:30	到达秦始皇兵马俑	
9:30-11:30	游览兵马俑	所有展馆
11:30-12:30	午餐	兵马俑饭店
12:30-2:00	休息	兵马俑饭店一楼茶室
2:30-4:00	与西安交通大学师生交谈有关计算机工业发展情况	西安交通大学计算机中心
4:30	返回西安饭店	

注意:

1. 内容详尽。
2. 词数：100 词左右。
3. 开头部分已经写好，不计入总词数。
4. 参考词：秦始皇兵马俑博物馆 the Museum of Qin Terra-cotta Warriors and Horses
展览馆 exhibition hall
西安交通大学 Xi'an Jiao Tong University
西安饭店 Xi'an Hotel
兵马俑饭店 Hotel Terracotta Army

NOTICE

Ladies and gentlemen,

May I have your attention, please? Now I'm going to tell you our plan for tomorrow.

书信模块

(1)

你在美国的笔友来信询问你校开展课外活动情况。请根据以下内容，给他回信，介绍你校学生的课外活动情况。

1. 课外活动节数：每天下午两节（星期六，星期天除外）。
2. 活动时间：15：20—17：20
3. 活动内容：阅读，体育活动，唱歌，学电脑。
4. 最喜欢的项目：体育，歌咏，演讲比赛。
5. 希望与建议：减少作业，增加活动时间，多组织参观，旅游活动。

注意：

1. 回信应包括以上要点内容。
2. 词数：100 词左右。

(2)

假如你叫王平，现在在英国工作，你的朋友陈红写信告诉你，她打算赴英留学，想知道初到英国可能会遇到的困难。请你用英语给她写一封回信，信的内容应包括以下内容。

1. 可能遇到的困难：语言方面的障碍，如很浓的地方口音；饮食习惯差异；想家，孤独等。

2. 鼓励她并愿意帮助她。

注意：

1. 词数：100 词左右。

2. 信的开头已为你写好。

Dear Chen Hong,

I'm glad to hear from you. You asked me about the difficulties you may meet with when you arrive here in UK. _____

(3)

假定你是某中学的学生，请根据下表所提供的情况，于 2014 年 3 月 26 日，向市长写信反映你校门前地摊的问题。

情况	许多小商贩在校门前摆摊
危害	1. 使本来狭窄的校前街道变得拥挤不堪，影响了学生出入学校，存在发生交通事故的隐患。 2. 地摊上的东西不卫生，影响了学生的身体健康。 3. 地摊上纸饭盒、塑料袋随处可见，严重污染了环境
建议	请有关部门禁止小商贩在门前摆摊

1. 词数：100 词左右。

2. 参考词汇：商贩 vendor

摆摊 set up a stall

妨碍交通 block traffic

取缔 ban

(4)

某外国公司招聘外语人才，要求应聘者提供英文简历。假定你是李刚，请按下列提示写一份简历。

1. 职业大专毕业后，一直在一家公司工作。
2. 喜欢英语，坚持在业余时间自学英语。
3. 能够流利地用英语与国外朋友交谈。
4. 曾翻译过数篇英语文章，并经常向中国日报投稿。
5. 若被录用，有信心把工作做好。

要求：

1. 按书信格式写简历。
2. 词数：100 词左右。

(5)

假如你是魏敏，请你根据下面的信息向你的本国笔友张娜写一封介绍你的英语学习方法的书信。

1. 学习方法：
 - 1) 广泛阅读英语小说、报纸、杂志等。
 - 2) 每天收听英语广播。
 - 3) 写英语日记。
 - 4) 每周去学校的英语角。
2. 目的与效果：
 - 1) 提高了英语阅读能力、写作能力。
 - 2) 听力进步快。
 - 3) 练习英语口语，口语水平有了提高。

注意：

- 1) 词数：100 词左右。
- 2) 参考词汇：英语角 English corner。
- 3) 开头已为你写好。

Dear Zhang Na,

Now I'd like to tell you how I learn English. _____

报道模块

(1)

根据下面的提示, 请以“A Man of Independence(自立)”为题写一篇短文, 报道王刚服务社会的事迹。王刚事迹如下:

1. 20 岁生病, 双目失明。
2. 自强自立: 做家务; 以养鸡、养猪赚钱; 办广播站。
3. 播放节目: 内容有农业知识、故事、音乐等。
4. 结果: 村民富了; 村子发生了很大的变化; 王刚觉得很有满足感。

注意: 1. 词数: 100 词左右。

2. 可适当增加细节。

参考词汇: 1. 办广播站 set up a broadcasting station

2. 决心 determination

3. 农业 agriculture

4. 尊敬 respect

A Man of Independence

(2)

肥胖已成为危害人们健康的严重问题, 中小学生的肥胖趋势更为明显。你们班对此展开讨论。根据不同的观点, 写一篇 100 词左右的英语报道, 并发表自己的看法。

内容有:

1. 赞成的一方认为: 肥胖危害健康; 肥胖学生应该节食、锻炼; 已经超重的学生, 应该采取措施减肥。

2. 反对的一方认为: 中学生正是长身体的时候, 减肥不仅会影响他们的身体发育, 也会影响他们的学习。因此, 应该顺其自然。

注意:

1. 词数: 100 词左右。

2. 参考词: 肥胖 fatness 节食 on a diet 锻炼 exercise 超重 overweight 顺其自然 leave it as it is

(3)

今天，你校组织了一次“知识下乡活动”，到一所小学指导小学生使用电脑。请根据下列表格中的信息，写一篇报道刊登在校报上。可适当增加细节，使文章意思连贯。文章词数100 词左右。

参加人数	40 名会电脑的高一、高二学生
设 备	自带 80 台电脑
出发时间	上午 7:30
地点和指导对象	30 公里外的山区红庙小学的学生
指导内容	上网查询信息，发电子邮件
效 果	活动受到热烈欢迎，小学生已经会使用电脑了

- 注意：
- 词数：100 词左右。
 - 参考词：指导 instruct

(4)

某报记者收到一组 2014 年你市火灾事故调查数据表。假如你是该记者，请根据所提供的信息为电视台写一篇简短的报道，呼吁人们重视火灾事故。报道内容如下：

火灾情况统计	原因分析	采取措施
1. 本市共 907 起灾害事故，其中火灾 103 起。	1. 冬季干燥；夏季高温；冬夏季为火灾多发季节。	1. 谨慎用火。
2. 经济损失达 5 亿元人民币。		2. 提高防火意识。
3. 伤亡情况：25 人丧生，304 人受伤	2. 人为因素：大意，乱接电线	3. 不乱接电线

- 注意：
- 词数：100 词左右。
 - 参考词：火灾 fire accident 受伤 injure 接电线 join electric wire 经济损失 economic loss

(5)

假如你校与国外某职业高中是友好学校，对方校刊来信想了解你校选修课的开设情况，

请根据下面提供的学生问卷调查，以“Students Like Optional Courses”为题，写一篇 100 词左右的英文报道。

- 1. 课程门类：6 余种（学生可任选）
- 2. 上课时间：每周三下午 3:30-5:00
- 3. 最受欢迎的课：计算机、艺术、汽车维修等。
- 4. 对课程的看法：①十分感兴趣；②学到很多课外知识；③有大量的实践机会。
- 5. 建议：①增加选修课；②减少作业量；③多组织参观，多了解社会。
- 6. 参考词：选修课 optional course 汽车维修课 car maintenance

Students Like Optional Courses

发言稿模块

(1)

今年 6 月 5 日世界环境日的主题是倡导“低碳生活”，老师就“节能减排”问题组织了一场主题讨论，在讨论中，你就“日常生活中，我们能为保护环境、减少污染做些什么？”的话题做了简短发言。

- 1. 请用英语写一篇 100 词左右的发言稿。发言稿的内容不得提及自己的姓名、住址和校名。
- 2. 参考词汇：

be caused by ordinary people instead of driving cars

plastic bags cut down on recycle

save energy reduce pollution

(2)

你班就“中学生是否能上网”的话题展开了讨论。有赞同的，也有反对的。现在讨论已接近尾声。你是班长，向全班做综合发言。请根据下表提供的信息，用英语客观地向全班同学总结讨论情况。

赞成的人认为	反对的人认为
1. 能得到很多信息，如国内外新闻。	1. 很多同学在网上玩电子游戏，浪费了很多宝贵的时间。
2. 电子邮件快捷、便利。	2. 近视的同学增多。
3. 网上可以学英语。	3. 影响学业
4. 欣赏音乐，观看体育比赛，玩棋牌游戏，交朋友	

注意:

1. 词数: 100 词左右。
2. 参考词汇: 上网 surf on the Internet。
3. 发言的开头已写好。

Now we are having a heated discussion about whether we middle school students should surf on the Internet or not. _____

(3)

陕西省将举行中学生英语演讲比赛, 主题是“如何建立节约型社会?”, 请你写一篇英文演讲稿。

- 演讲要点是: 1. 节约水电。2. 不浪费粮食。3. 充分利用纸张。
4. 出门尽量步行、骑车或乘坐公交。

注意:

1. 词数: 100 词左右。
2. 演讲稿的开头已经写好, 不计入总词数。
3. 参考词: 节约型社会 a resources economical society 循环利用 recycle

Good morning, ladies and gentlemen,

Nowadays natural resources are becoming less and less on the earth. What can we do to build a resources economical society? _____

(4)

建设平安校园是我们每个人的责任与义务。作为一名学生, 我们更应该珍惜自己的生命, 更应该注意自己的人身安全。假如你是 Dong Shi, 并担任校学生会主席, 请你就安全问题, 向全校学生发出倡议。

- 内容提示: (1) 不带管制刀具到学校。
(2) 不私自下河洗澡。
(3) 不打架。
(4) 上学放学的途中应该注意安全。
(5) 遇紧急情况, 立即报告警察或老师。

参考词汇: 管制刀具 restricted knives or things 紧急情况 emergency
注意交通安全 pay attention to the traffic

写作要求：(1) 用词恰当，要点全面，层次清晰，书写规范。

(2) 可适当发挥，100 词左右，开头、结尾已给出，不计入总词数。

(3) 严禁出现自己的真实姓名和学校等相关信息。

Dear all our schoolmates,

As far as we know, safety is the most important thing in our everyday life. So we should try our best to make sure we are in safety.

Yours,

Dong Shi

短文模块

(1)

请你根据下表内容，写一篇短文描述中国改革前后人们在穿着和饮食方面所发生的变化。

	改革前	改革后
服装	1. 衣服由手工制作。 2. 多人轮穿一件衣服。 3. 颜色单调，款式单一	1. 买现成衣服。 2. 品种、款式多样，颜色鲜艳。 3. 大多数人穿上了西服、羊毛衫和皮衣
饮食	1. 粮食不够吃，经常挨饿。 2. 很少吃鱼和肉	1. 粮食丰富，完全解决了吃饭问题。 2. 吃上了水果，喝上了牛奶。 3. 外国食品也随处可见，如麦当劳、肯德基

注意：

1. 短文必须包括表中所有内容。

2. 词数：100 词左右。

3. 参考词汇： 麦当劳 McDonald 肯德基 Kentucky 现成的 ready-made
单调的 monotonous 时尚 fashion 羊毛衫 wool sweater
手工 by hand 皮衣 fur coat 西服 suit

4. 文章的第一句已经写好。

Great changes have taken place in our country since the opening-up and reform(改革). _____

(2)

请你根据所给材料、提纲以及要求写一篇英文稿件。

背景材料：

编者按：本刊刊出 Lara 的来信，欢迎读者就来信中谈到的问题进行分析并提出意见。

Dear Editor,

I'm a senior high school student. And I want to work part-time this summer. I think it is good to do so. But my parents don't agree with me. I just can't understand them. I need your advice.

要求： 1. 短文词数不少于 80 词。（不含已写好的部分）

2. 内容充实，结构完整，语意连贯。

3. 书写须清晰、工整。

提纲： 1. 第一段：Lara 利用暑假打工的理由。

2. 第二段：Lara 父母不同意的理由。

3. 第三段：你给 Lara 的具体建议。

I think that Lara wants to work part-time for these reasons. _____

(3)

最近，某中学生英文报开设了“After-class Activities”的栏目，请你根据以下提示，为该栏目写一篇英文稿件，并鼓励同学们积极参加课外活动。

1. 你校开展课外活动情况。

2. 你参加过的课外活动以及给你带来的益处。

3. 为同学选择课外活动提出建议。

4. 为学校开展课外活动提出建议。

注意：

1. 词数：100 词左右。

2. 文中不得提及个人姓名、校名和地名。

3. 稿件的开头已为你写好。

Nowadays, after-class activities are becoming more and more popular in high schools. _____

(4)

随着人们生活水平的提高，越来越多的家庭拥有了自己的小汽车，但同时也给交通和环

境带来了一定的影响。请你针对这一情况写一篇 100 词左右的文章，并谈谈你的看法。

参考词：限制 restrict 环保的 environmentally-friendly 汽油 petrol

参考译文：

日记模块

(1)

Wednesday May 8th, 2014

Cloudy

In recent years travel is getting more and more popular. I also went to Hainan Island for holiday during the May1st Vacation.

During the first two days, I breathed fresh air and enjoyed the beauty of nature, listening to the sound of waves. To my great joy, I made quite a lot of friends.

But the weather changed a lot during the next a few days and I was often caught in the rain, which made it impossible to enjoy the travel. It was really a little boring.

Next time it is quite necessary for me to spend my holidays in a nearer place and do more preparations.

(2)

Sunday January2, 2014

Sunny

It is the second day of the Chinese New Year. Today I travelled by air for the first time in my life to visit my grandpa who lives in Shanghai. At first my family went to the airport by taxi, then we got on the plane. When the plane took off, I felt a little nervous. But very soon I became excited when I found myself high up in the sky among the clouds and looked down the mountains, fields and rivers below. It took us only one and a half hours to arrive in Shanghai.

We used to go to Shanghai by train and it used to take us more than 20 hours to get there. Although it is a little more expensive to travel by air than by train, it is much faster and much more comfortable to take a plane than take a bus or train. The people's living standard has indeed been greatly improved.

通知模块

(1)

NOTICE

All our schoolmates,

Attention, Please?

All the students are requested to join in a tree-planting activity on West Hill on March 12th, Tree-Planting Day. Please meet on the school playground at seven o'clock, and take school buses to get there. Attention: First, every student must take part; Second, please take five to six basins for each class for watering trees.

March11th.

The School League Union

(2)

NOTICE

May I have your attention, please?

All the students of Senior3, we are going to go to the People's Park for an outing on February 20th, Saturday. In the morning, we will visit the East Lake. We'll have a picnic by the lake at noon.

After that, we are to pay a visit to the botanical garden. I suggest you should wear your sports shoes and take your food and drinks for lunch along with you. If possible, each class had better take one or two cameras so that you can take some photos of the beautiful sights there.

Don't be late. Please meet at the school gate at 6:50. The buses will start at 7:00 am.

February 18th.

The Student's Union

(3)

NOTICE

We are going to have an English-speaking contest for senior students so as to improve our oral English. The contest will be held in the auditorium on the 5th floor in the teaching building at 4 p.m. June 9th. Those who want to take part in the contest are supposed to come to sign up at the Students' Union before May 25th. All the senior students are welcome to join the contest. The first five winners will be given prizes. Please try your best and get ready in time.

Wish you success!

April 9th.

The Students' Union

(4)

NOTICE

Boys and girls,

Attention please? I have an announcement to make.

Tomorrow morning we're going to the park to carry out an environment protection activity. All the students are required to gather at the school gate at 7:00 am and then go to the park on foot.

In the park, girls are going to set up some propaganda boards near the gardens and meadows, which are used to warn the visitors to take care of flowers and trees and keep off the green grass. Some boys will pick up the rubbish, such as the waste paper, cigarette ends, and so on, others will hand out the propaganda materials which tell the visitors the importance of protecting environment.

The activity will last a whole day. Please take your lunch with you.

That's all, thank you.

(5)

NOTICE

Ladies and gentlemen,

May I have your attention, please? Now I'm going to tell you our plan for tomorrow's visit. We'll meet outside the gate of Xi'an Hotel at 8:00 tomorrow morning. We're going to reach the Museum of Qin Terra-cotta Warriors and Horses at about 9:30 and begin to visit the every exhibition there. From 11:30 to 12:30 we will have our lunch in Hotel Terracotta Army, and then will take a rest in the tea room on its first floor. Between 14:30 and 16:00, we'll have a talk about the development of computers with some teachers and students in the computer centre of Xi'an Jiao Tong University. We can come back to Xi'an Hotel at about 4:00 in the afternoon.

That's all! Thank you.

书信模块

(1)

Dear David,

In your last letter, you asked about our out-of-class activities in our school. Now I would like to talk about them.

The students in our school have two periods for out-of-class activities every day except on Saturday and Sunday. They are between 3:20 and 5:20 pm. During that time we do some reading, have sports, do some singing or learn to run computers. Our favorite activities are sports matches, singing contests and speech contests. We enjoy out-of-class activities.

We hope that we'll be given less homework to do and more time to spare. We suggest that more visits and tour trips should be organized so that we can learn what is going on outside our school.

Yours,

Li Feng

(2)

Dear Chen Hong,

I'm glad to hear from you. You asked me about the difficulties you may meet with when you arrive here in UK. Now I'd like to tell you something about it.

First you may have the problem about the language although you think you are well prepared. You may find it hard to communicate with the natives, because many of them have a strong local accent. Besides, you may not get used to the western food here or even hate to eat it. What's worse, you may feel lonely and miss your family and friends, especially in the very beginning.

However, you needn't worry about it. Several weeks later, you will become used to everything here and love the place, and I'll also try my best to help you if necessary. That's all here.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Wang Ping

(3)

March 26th, 2014

Dear Mayor,

I am a student of No.2 Middle School. I am writing to tell you something about the small market near our school gate.

Some vendors set up stalls on the street in front of our school gate, selling foods and other things. As a result, the street is becoming narrower and narrower. The vendors block the traffic and traffic accidents might happen here. The food sold on the stalls is also unhealthy, which has a bad effect on the students' health. What's worse, the environment is seriously polluted by the waste paper boxes and plastic bags thrown away by the students. We suggest that the government take some effective measures to ban the stalls so that we students can have a healthful environment.

That's all. We are looking forward to the good result. Thank you!

Truly yours,

Wang Dali

(4)

Dear Madam,

It is said that your company is going to employ an English gift. Now I offer my qualifications in the hope that

you can consider me for the job.

I am a Chinese citizen by birth. After graduating from a vocational college, I have been working in a company. I like English very much. I often keep learning it in my free time. At present I can communicate with foreign friends fluently. Besides I have translated several English articles into Chinese, and I usually write some articles to China Daily, which is one of the most famous English newspapers in China.

If I were accepted by your company, I could prove myself competent. I am looking forward to your reply. Thanks!

Yours sincerely,

Li Gang

(5)

Dear Zhang Na,

Now I'd like to tell you how I learn English. I often read English books, including English novels and newspapers. It helps to improve my reading ability. Every day I spend some time in listening to English broadcast. So my English listening has improved greatly. I keep a diary every day and my written English is becoming better and better. Once a week I go to the English corner in our school, where we can talk with foreign teachers in English. In this way I have improved my spoken English. I hope that my way of learning English can be of great use to you.

That's all. Thank you.

Yours,

Wei Min

报道模块

(1)

A Man of Independence

Wang Gang, a man of great determination and independence, has won great respect of the villagers who are getting richer and richer.

At the age of 20, Wang Gang became blind as a result of a serious disease. He couldn't do anything but learn to do some housework and began to keep pigs and chickens determining to depend on himself. One year later, he sold his chickens and pigs and earned a large amount of money. With the money, he set up a broadcasting station, from which different programs such as agriculture knowledge, stories, music and so on are broadcast. The new information which he introduced has benefited the villagers, and music has enriched their life as well.

His efforts have brought great changes and development to the village, and Wang Gang is enjoying his life by working hard.

(2)

Fatness is one of the serious problems which have a bad effect on our students' health. At present the situation in the teenagers is even worse. As a result of that, a discussion was carried out in our class.

Some students think that fatness does harm to our health. So it is necessary to be on a diet and take some suitable exercise to prevent it. Those who are overweight should take effective measures to lose weight to be healthy.

But others have a different opinion about it. They say that losing weight will be bad for the teenagers during their growth course, as well as their studies. Therefore, there is no doubt to leave it as it is.

In my opinion, their ideas are not all right. On one hand, the students who have been fat ought to lose weight by taking more exercise rather than eating medicine. On the other hand, the others should take more exercise to prevent it as often as possible.

(3)

Today, at half past seven in the morning, a group of 40 my schoolmates from Senior1 and Senior2, who had a good knowledge of computer, went to a primary school called Hongmiao School which was 30 kilometers away from our school. We helped the pupils there to learn how to use our 80 computers correctly. We were warmly welcomed when we arrived there. The pupils were very interested in this activity. We quickly made the computers ready to use and instructed the pupils to operate them right. Soon they learned to get on the Internet and could look for the information they wanted and learned to send their e-mails to one another. The rich knowledge on the Internet surprised each pupils. This advanced technology brought great pleasure to them. It is certain that this experience has a good effect on their future.

(4)

In recent years accidents actually are becoming more and more serious, especially in fires. It's said that 907 accidents happened in our city in 2014, of which 103 fire accidents did. The fire accidents caused an economic loss of 5 hundred million RMB. What's worse, 25 people lost their lives and 304 were injured in the fires. Generally speaking, fires break out more often in summer and in winter than in spring and fall, for it is hot in summer and dry in winter. However, some fires are caused by people's carelessness and the use of electric wires. So we should be careful of using fire, pay great attention to preventing a fire accident and mustn't join any electric wires freely.

(5)

Students Like Optional Courses

This term our school has offered over 6 optional courses, from which students can choose. The courses begin from 3:30 to 5:00 on Wednesday afternoons.

The students here take great interest in the optional courses. Their favorites are computer, arts, car maintenance and so on. They say they have learned a lot that is not taught in textbooks and they have got a great deal of practice. However, our students are not satisfied with that. They hope that more optional courses will be offered while their homework should be less. They suggest that more trips and visits be organized so that they can learn more about what is happening outside school.

发言稿模块

(1)

Hello! everyone. A moment ago, we had a hot discussion about how we can protect our environment well. Here is my idea about it.

I think that the environment problem is the biggest one in the world. It is found out that a lot of air pollution is actually caused by ordinary people, not just by big factories. What should we do then to deal with the problem? As ordinary people, there are so many things each one of us can do in our daily life. It's best for people to take buses, ride bikes or walk instead of driving cars. We should stop using plastic bags for shopping. We must cut down on waste, recycle trash and eat more natural food. In these ways, we can save energy and reduce more pollution. That's all. Do you agree with me? Thank you for enjoying my idea.

(2)

Now we are having a heated discussion about whether we middle school students should surf on the Internet or not. The opinions are as follows. Some students agree to the idea. On the Internet, in their opinions, we can get a lot of information, such as reading news at home and abroad. Many people send E-mails by the means of the net, which is cheap and quick. We can also improve our English on the Internet. Besides, we enjoy music, watch ball matches, make friends on the Internet.

On the other hand, some students don't think so. Some students surf on the Internet with the purpose of playing the computer games, which wastes a lot of precious time. Because of the Internet, more and more students are getting near-sighted and some even fall behind the others in study.

(3)

Good morning, ladies and gentlemen,

Nowadays natural resources are becoming less and less on the earth. What can we do to build a resources economical society? As senior school students, we have many things to do to contribute such a society.

Firstly, we should save on water. Don't leave the water running after we use it. If there is nobody in the classroom, we must turn off the lights in time. Limit the time to use electrical equipment. Secondly, we mustn't waste any food because food is the fundamental need for human beings. Thirdly, we ought to make full use of paper by writing on both sides of it. Waste paper can be recycled and shouldn't be thrown away. Lastly, we had better walk, cycle or take a bus if possible when we go out or go to school.

I think that if we all make every effort, we may make our society more and more harmonious and comfortable to live.

That's all. Thank you.

(4)

Dear all our schoolmates,

As far as we know, safety is the most important thing in our everyday life. So we should try our best to make sure we are in safety. We mustn't bring restricted knives or things to our school because these things may cause serious problems. Do not have a bath in rivers or ponds by ourselves without our parents' permission. Besides, we should be friendly to others so that fighting is strongly banned. Make sure that we should always pay attention to the traffic on our way to school or home. Furthermore, if we meet some emergency, we must call for help from the police or our teachers. In a word, following these safety rules above can make us live peacefully.

Yours,

Dong Shi

短文模块

(1)

Great changes have taken place in our country since the opening-up and reform. Before the reform, people seldom had new clothes. The clothes used to be made by hand. In a family, younger brothers often had to wear the old clothes the elder brothers had worn. The colors of the clothes were also monotonous, and the clothes were almost of the same designs. People often went hungry due to lack of enough food. Seldom did people eat meat and fish. At present, however, the things have been greatly changed. People often buy ready-made clothes, which are of many kinds, designs and colors. Many people wear suits, wool sweaters, fur coats and so on. People are no longer

worried about the food. Many families can afford to drink milk and eat fresh fruit every day. Foreign foods, such as McDonald and Kentucky are also very common in the cities.

(2)

I think that Lara wants to work part-time for these reasons. First, she can make some pocket money to meet pet daily needs and thus develop a sense of independence. Second, she can learn how to deal with various problems in the workplace. Third, she can build up new friendships and improve best skills.

But her parents may regard learning as an increasingly important task for Lara. This holiday should be catch-up time for independent study. Besides, personal safety may also be one of their major considerations.

My advice for Lara is this: make a detailed plan for her study and Work; ask her friends to work together with her, and tell her parents that she can manage things properly. I wish Lara a pleasant summer.

(3)

After-class Activities

Nowadays, after-class activities are becoming more and more popular in high schools. In our school, there are various kinds of activities, such as, arts and sports. We enjoy them very much. Playing football and reading stories are my favorites, which do me a lot of good. Besides, building my body and enriching my knowledge, they also free me from the heavy work of study.

Here are my suggestions. To students, you had better choose the activities which interest you and suit you. To schools, they should organize more activities for students and leave students more time for activities by giving them less homework.

Dear friends, please take actively part in after-class activities, which will not only make your school life colorful but also can improve your learning.

(4)

With the improvement of our living standard, more and more families have bought their cars. On one hand, it is convenient for our transportation. In the car you are protected from weather, have comfortable seats and plenty of room. On the other hand, it also causes much more serious traffic problems and environmental pollution.

In my opinion, some measures should be taken to improve this situation. First of all, the number of cars should be restricted. Secondly, I suggest that we should go outside or go to work by bus, by bike or on foot in order to reduce air pollution. Thirdly, the drivers can use environmentally-friendly fuel instead off petrol.

In a word, we ought to spare no effort to keep our environment clean while making full use of the convenience of the private cars.